We Trip The Light
FANTASTIC

VISIT…

BASIC CONCEPTS IN BIOCHEMISTRY

A STUDENT'S SURVIVAL GUIDE

Second Edition

HIRAM F. GILBERT, Ph.D.
Professor of Biochemistry
Baylor College of Medicine
Houston, Texas

McGraw-Hill
Health Professions Division
New York St. Louis San Francisco
Auckland Bogotá Caracas Lisbon London Madrid
Mexico City Milan Montreal New Delhi San Juan
Singapore Sydney Tokyo Toronto

McGraw-Hill

A Division of The McGraw-Hill Companies

BASIC CONCEPTS IN BIOCHEMISTRY, 2/E

Copyright © 2000, 1992 by the McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc. All rights reserved. Printed in the United States of America. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a data base or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

1234567890 DOCDOC 99

ISBN 0-07-135657-6

This book was set in Times Roman by Better Graphics, Inc. The editors were Steve Zollo and Barbara Holton; the production supervisor was Richard Ruzycka; the index was prepared by Jerry Ralya. R. R. Donnelley and Sons was the printer and binder.

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

Cataloging-in-Publication Data is on file for this book at the Library of Congress.

· P R O L O G U E ·

Basic Concepts in Biochemistry: A Student's Survival Guide is not a conventional book: It is not a review book or a textbook or a problem book. It is a book that offers help in two different ways—help in understanding the concepts of biochemistry and help in organizing your attack on the subject and minimizing the subject's attack on you.

This book presents what are often viewed as the more difficult concepts in an introductory biochemistry course and describes them in enough detail and in simple enough language to make them understandable. We surveyed first- and second-year medical students at a national student meeting asking them to list, in order, the parts of biochemistry they found most difficult to understand. The winner (or loser), by far, was integration of metabolism. Metabolic control, pH, and enzyme kinetics ran closely behind, with notable mention given to molecular biology and proteins.

Biochemistry texts and biochemistry professors are burdened with the task of presenting facts, and the enormity of this task can get in the way of explaining concepts. Since I don't feel burdened by that necessity, I've only outlined most of the facts and concentrated on concepts. My rationale is that concepts are considerably easier to remember than facts and that concepts, if appropriately mastered, can minimize the amount of material that has to be memorized—you can just figure everything out when required. In *Basic Concepts in Biochemistry*, central concepts are developed in a stepwise fashion. The simplest concepts provide a review of what might have been forgotten, and the more complex concepts present what might not have been realized.

· C O N T E N T S ·

Preface xiii
Prologue xv

CHAPTER 1 WHERE TO START 1
Instructions 1
What Do I Need to Know? 2
Instructions for Use 2
Studying and Exams 2
Trivia Sorter 4

CHAPTER 2 PROTEIN STRUCTURE 6
Amino Acid Structure 6
Interactions 8
Water 9
Hydrophobic Interaction 9
van der Waals Interactions and London Dispersion Forces 11
Hydrogen Bonds 11
Secondary Structure 12
Protein Stability 15
Favorable (Good) Interactions 17
Unfavorable (Bad) Interactions 17
Temperature-Sensitive Mutations 19
Ligand-Binding Specificity 20
Global Conclusion 21

CHAPTER 3 MEMBRANES AND MEMBRANE PROTEINS 22
General Membrane Function 22
Membrane Composition 23
Phospholipid Bilayer 24
Membrane Structure 25
Posttranslational Modification 26
Membrane Fluidity 27
Diffusion in Membranes 28
Movement of Ions and Molecules Across Membranes 28

Transport Across Membranes 29
The Nernst Equation 31

CHAPTER 4 DNA-RNA STRUCTURE 35
DNA Structure 35
DNA Stability 37
RNA Secondary Structure 38

CHAPTER 5 EXPRESSION OF GENETIC INFORMATION 40
Information Metabolism 40
Directions and Conventions 41
DNA Replication 42
Types of DNA Polymerase 45
Recombination 47
Regulation of Information Metabolism 49
Transcription 53
Regulation of Transcription 55
Translation 57
Use of High-Energy Phosphate Bonds During Translation 60

CHAPTER 6 RECOMBINANT-DNA METHODOLOGY 61
Restriction Analysis 61
Gels and Electrophoresis 65
Blotting 67
Restriction Fragment-Length Polymorphism 69
Cloning 70
Sequencing 73
Mutagenesis 75
Polymerase Chain Reaction 76

CHAPTER 7 ENZYME MECHANISM 80
Active Site 81
Transition State 81
Catalysis 83
Lock and Key 83
Induced Fit 83
Nonproductive Binding 85
Entropy 87
Strain and Distortion 88

Transition-State Stabilization 88
Transition-State Analogs 91
Chemical Catalysis 93

CHAPTER 8 ENZYME KINETICS 95
S, P, and E (Substrate, Product, Enzyme) 96
Amounts and Concentrations 96
Active Site 97
Assay 98
Velocity 98
Initial Velocity 100
Mechanism 101
Little k's 102
Michaelis-Menten Equation 103
V_{max} 106
k_{cat} 106
K_m 107
Special Points 107
k_{cat}/K_m 107
Rate Accelerations 108
Steady-State Approximation 109
Transformations and Graphs 111
Inhibition 112
Allosterism and Cooperativity 117
The Monod-Wyman-Changeaux Model 119

CHAPTER 9 SIGNAL TRANSDUCTION PATHWAYS 123
Signal Transduction Pathways 123
Organization 124
Signals 125
Receptors 126
Soluble Receptors 126
Transmembrane Receptors 128
Enzyme Coupled Receptors 128
G-Protein Coupled Receptors 131
Ion-Channel Coupled Receptors 132
Second Messengers 133
Amplifiers 136
Integrators 137
Inhibitors 138

CHAPTER 10 GLYCOLYSIS AND GLUCONEOGENESIS **141**
Glycolysis Function 143
Glycolysis Location 143
Glycolysis Connections 143
Glycolysis Regulation 143
Glycolysis ATP Yields 144
Glycolysis Equations 144
Effect of Arsenate 144
Lactate or Pyruvate 145
Gluconeogenesis Function 145
Gluconeogenesis Location 145
Gluconeogenesis Connections 145
Gluconeogenesis Regulation 146
Gluconeogenesis ATP Costs 146
Gluconeogenesis Equations 146

CHAPTER 11 GLYCOGEN SYNTHESIS AND DEGRADATION **147**
Function 147
Location 147
Connections 148
Regulation 148
ATP Yield 150
ATP Cost 150
Molecular Features 150

CHAPTER 12 TCA CYCLE **153**
TCA Cycle 153

CHAPTER 13 FAT SYNTHESIS AND DEGRADATION **155**
Fatty Acid Synthesis Function 156
Fatty Acid Synthesis Location 156
Fatty Acid Synthesis Connections 157
Fatty Acid Synthesis Regulation 157
Fatty Acid Synthesis ATP Costs (for C_{16}) 157
Fatty Acid Synthesis Equation 159
Elongation and Desaturation 160
Triglyceride and Phospholipid Synthesis 162

β-Oxidation Function 164
β-Oxidation Location 164
Carnitine Shuttle 164
β-Oxidation Connections 164
β-Oxidation Regulation 164
β-Oxidation ATP Yield 166
β-Oxidation Equation 167
β-Oxidation of Unsaturated Fatty Acids 168
β-Oxidation of Odd-Chain-Length Fatty Acids 172

CHAPTER 14 ELECTRON TRANSPORT AND OXIDATIVE PHOSPHORYLATION 173
Oxidation and Reduction 173
The Electron Transport Chain 174
Connections 176
Regulation 178
P/O Ratios 178
Uncouplers 179
Inhibitors 180

CHAPTER 15 PENTOSE PHOSPHATE PATHWAY 183
Pentose Phosphate Pathway 183

CHAPTER 16 AMINO ACID METABOLISM 186
Nonessential Amino Acid Synthesis 186
Essential Amino Acids 187
Amino Acid Degradation 187
Generalities of Amino Acid Catabolism 187
Products of Amino Acid Degradation 188

CHAPTER 17 INTEGRATION OF ENERGY METABOLISM 190
Integrating Metabolic Pathways 191
ATP 192
Glucose 192
Storage Molecules 193
Metabolic States and Signals 194
Insulin 195

Glucagon 196
Epinephrine 197
Secondary Signals 198
Generalities of Metabolism 199
Phosphorylation 202
Glycogen 204
Metabolic Movements of Glycogen 205
Fat 207
Metabolic Movements of Fat 207
Protein 209
Metabolic Movements of Protein 209
Tissue Cooperation 211
Liver 212
Muscle 212
Adipose 212
Brain 213
Connection of Storage Pools 213
Feeding 214
Fasting 214
Starvation 217
Excitement 219
Interorgan Cycles 221
Cori Cycle 221
Alanine Cycle 222
Ketone Bodies 223

CHAPTER 18 UREA CYCLE 225
Urea Cycle 225

CHAPTER 19 PURINE METABOLISM 227
Purine Synthesis 227
Purine Salvage 228
Deoxynucleotides 228
Purine Degradation 229

CHAPTER 20 PYRIMIDINE METABOLISM 230
Pyrimidine Synthesis 230
Pyrimidine Salvage 231
Pyrimidine Degradation 232

CHAPTER 21 ONE-CARBON METABOLISM 233
One-Carbon Metabolism 233
Oxidation States of Carbon 233

CHAPTER 22 TRACKING CARBONS 236
Glucose to Pyruvate 236
TCA Cycle 238

CHAPTER 23 ph, pK_A, pROBLEMS 241
Proton: H^+ or H_3O^+ 242
Acid 242
Base 242
Not All Acids and Bases Are Created Equal 243
p$K_a = -\log(K_a)$ 244
Weak Acids Make Strong Bases (and Vice Versa) 244
Who Gets the Proton? 245
Don't Forget Stoichiometry 245
The Sadistic Little *p* 246
Taking $\log_{10}(x)$ 247
Taking $-\log_{10}(x)$ 247
pH $= -\log_{10}[H^+]$ 248
p$K_a = -\log_{10}(K_a)$ 248
Buffers 248
Henderson-Hasselbalch Equation 249
Titration Curves 250
p*I*—Isoelectric Point 254
The Bicarbonate Buffer 255
Imbalance in Blood pH 257
Acidosis and Alkalosis 258

CHAPTER 24 THERMODYNAMICS AND KINETICS 261
Thermodynamics 261
Free Energy 263
Adding Free-Energy Changes 268
Coupling Free Energies 268
Thermodynamic Cycles 269
$\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S$ 272
Driving Force 273

Kinetics 275
Velocity 275
Transition State Theory 276
Rate Constants 277
Rate Constants and Mechanism 283

Appendix 284

Glossary 287

Index 319

· P R E F A C E ·

Since the first edition of this series, we have witnessed the birth of "molecular medicine," using biochemistry, cell biology, and genetics to diagnose and treat disease. Consequently, the basic sciences are becoming more important to the practice of medicine. This puts a new pressure on the student—to understand the basis of molecular medicine and the molecular sciences. I still think that it's easier to remember things that you understand, things that make sense. That's the idea behind the Basic Concepts series and that's why I have been so pleased with the expansion of the Basic Concepts series beyond Biochemistry.

The revisions in the second edition include two new chapters, "Membranes and Membrane Proteins" and "Signal Transduction Pathways." These topics are related to the explosion of new information about cell signaling and signal transduction pathways. In addition, I've added some tables of information that I think will be helpful in seeing the big picture (and remembering some of the more important details). As before, the major topics and things to remember are set off in boxes so that if you already know everything in the box, you can skip the rest of the section.

· C H A P T E R · 1 ·

WHERE TO START

Instructions

What Do I Need to Know?

Instructions for Use

Studying and Exams

Trivia Sorter

INSTRUCTIONS

Read for understanding. Read only what you don't know. Organize, organize, organize.

The first page of each chapter presents an index. A title-summary box for each section presents a short summary and memory jogger intended to be helpful for review. If you already know what the boxed terms mean and feel comfortable with them, don't bother to read the text section that follows—proceed until you find a heading you don't understand, and then read till you understand. The first rule (it may not really be the first rule, but it is a rule) is not to waste time reading things you already know.

Keep on not reading the text until you find something you don't understand—then read the text till you do. The sections are generally arranged in order of increasing complexity and build on previous sections. So if you screwed up and jumped in over your head, back up a section or two. Another option is just to look at the pictures. Pictures and diagrams, if extensively annotated and carefully designed (by you), can be an enormous review aid.

WHAT DO I NEED TO KNOW?

You need to know only the things you will need later.

Medicine and biology are becoming increasingly molecular in nature, so one answer to the question is that you need to know things down to the last atom. *Everything* is not the right answer. You can't possibly learn it all. Therefore, you will have to be selective.

Another answer is that you just need to know the things on the exam. *Later* ends at the final. In reality, later may be longer than this. Try to pick out the major concepts of biochemistry as you go along. Concepts are generally easier to remember than factual details—particularly if the concepts make sense.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR USE

Understand the concepts first. Make notes. Never use a colored highlighter.

General concepts don't need to be memorized. Once you understand them, they provide a framework to hang the rest of the material on. Since they don't need to be memorized, they can be learned (or thought about) almost anywhere. To remember something, write it down. Don't just highlight it with a colored pen or pencil. Highlighting is a great way to forget to read the material.

STUDYING AND EXAMS

Organize, understand, condense, memorize.

• 1. ALWAYS REMEMBER THAT IT IS POSSIBLE TO BE A WORTHWHILE HUMAN BEING REGARDLESS OF (OR IN SPITE OF) HOW MUCH BIOCHEMISTRY YOU KNOW. This won't necessarily help you with biochemistry, but it may help you keep your sanity.

• 2. MINIMIZE THE AMOUNT OF MATERIAL THAT YOU HAVE TO MEMORIZE. If you understand a general concept, you can often figure out the specific details rather than memorize them. For example,

does phosphorylation activate or inactivate acetyl-CoA carboxylase? You could just memorize that it inactivates the enzyme. However, this would not help when it came to the phosphorylation of glycogen synthase. Try the following line of reasoning. We store energy after eating and retrieve it between meals. Storage and retrieval of energy do not happen at the same time. Protein phosphorylation generally increases when you're hungry. Since both acetyl-CoA carboxylase and glycogen synthase are involved in energy storage (fat and glucose, respectively), they will both be inactivated by phosphorylation. For just two enzymes, it might be easier to just memorize all the regulatory behaviors—but for several hundred?

• 3. ARRANGE NOTES AND STUDY TIME IN ORDER OF DECREASING IMPORTANCE. During the first (or even second and third) pass, you can't possibly learn everything biochemistry has to offer. Be selective. Learn the important (and general) things first. If you have enough gray matter and time, then pack in the details. Organize your notes the same way. For each topic (corresponding to about a chapter in most texts) write down a *short* summary of the really important concepts (no more than one to two pages). Don't write down the things that you already know, just the things you're likely to forget. Be really cryptic to save space, and use lots of diagrams. These don't have to be publication-quality diagrams; they only have to have meaning for you. The idea is to minimize the sheer volume of paper. You can't find yourself at finals time with a yellow-highlighted 1000-page text to review 2 days before the exam. An enormous amount of information can be crammed onto a diagram, and you learn a significant amount by creating diagrams. Use them extensively.

• 4. SORT OUT THE TRIVIA AND FORGET ABOUT IT. The most difficult part may be deciding what the important things actually are. After all, if you've never had biochemistry, it all sounds important (or none of it does). Use the following trivia sorter (or one of your own invention) to help with these decisions. To use this sorter, you must first set your trivia level. Your trivia level will depend on whether you just want to pass or want to excel, whether you want to devote a lot of time or a whole lot of time to biochemistry, and your prior experience. Once you set this level, make sure you know *almost everything* above this level and ignore almost everything below it. Setting your trivia level is not irreversible; the setting can be moved at any time. You should consider levels 7 to 10 as the minimal acceptable trivia level (passing). The trivia sorter shown here is generic. You can make your own depending on the exact demands of the course you're taking. Levels 21 and 22 might be too trivial for anybody to spend time learning (again, this is opinion).

TRIVIA SORTER

1. Purpose of a pathway—what's the overall function?
2. Names of molecules going into and coming out of the pathway
3. How the pathway fits in with other pathways
4. General metabolic conditions under which the pathway is stimulated or inhibited
5. Identity (by name) of control points—which steps of the pathway are regulated?
6. Identity (by name) of general regulatory molecules and the direction in which they push the metabolic pathway
7. Names of reactants and products for each regulated enzyme and each enzyme making or using ATP equivalents
8. Names of molecules in the pathway and how they're connected
9. Structural features that are important for the function of specific molecules in the pathway (this includes DNA and proteins)
10. Techniques in biochemistry, the way they work, and what they tell you
11. Molecular basis for the interactions between molecules
12. Genetic diseases and/or specific drugs that affect the pathway
13. Essential vitamins and cofactors involved in the pathway
14. pH
15. Enzyme kinetics
16. Specific molecules that inhibit or activate specific enzymes
17. Names of individual reactants and products for nonregulated steps
18. Chemical structures (ability to recognize, not draw)
19. Structures of individual reactants and products for all enzymes in pathway
20. Reaction mechanism (chemistry) for a specific enzyme
21. Cleavage specificity for proteases or restriction endonucleases
22. Molecular weights and quaternary structures

• 5. DON'T WASTE TIME ON ABSOLUTE TRIVIA UNLESS YOU HAVE THE TIME TO WASTE. It is possible to decide that something is just not worth remembering; for example, cleavage specificities of proteases or restriction endonucleases, and protein molecular weights, are

obvious choices. You can set the "too trivial to bear" level anywhere you want. You could decide that glycolysis is just not worth knowing. However, if you set your limits totally in the wrong place, you will get another chance to figure this out when you repeat the course. The trivia line is an important line to draw, so think about your specific situation and the requirements of the course before you draw it.

• C H A P T E R • 2 •

PROTEIN STRUCTURE

•

Amino Acid Structure

Interactions

Water

Hydrophobic Interaction

Van der Waals Interactions and London Dispersion Forces

Hydrogen Bonds

Secondary Structure

Protein Stability

Favorable (Good) Interactions

Unfavorable (Bad) Interactions

Temperature-Sensitive Mutations

Ligand-Binding Specificity

Global Conclusion

• • • • • • • • • • • •

Proteins start out life as a bunch of amino acids linked together in a head-to-tail fashion—the primary sequence. The one-dimensional information contained in the primary amino acid sequence of cellular proteins is enough to guide a protein into its three-dimensional structure, to determine its specificity for interaction with other molecules, to determine its ability to function as an enzyme, and to set its stability and lifetime.

AMINO ACID STRUCTURE

Remember a few of the amino acids by functional groups. The rest are hydrophobic.

Remembering something about the structures of the amino acids is just one to those basic language things that must be dealt with since it crops up over and over again—not only in protein structure but later in metabolism. You need to get to the point that when you see Asp you don't think snake but see a negative charge. Don't memorize the amino acids down to the last atom, and don't spend too much time worrying about whether glycine is polar or nonpolar. Methylene groups ($-CH_2-$) may be important, but keeping track of them on an individual basis is just too much to ask. Organize the amino acids based on the functional group of the side chain. Having an idea about functional groups of amino acids will also help when you get to the biosynthesis and catabolism of amino acids. Might as well bite the bullet early.

HYDROPHILIC (POLAR)

• **CHARGED POLAR** *Acidic* ($-COO^-$) and *basic* ($-NH_3^+$) amino acid side chains have a charge at neutral pH and strongly "prefer" to be on the exterior, exposed to water, rather than in the interior of the protein. The terms *acidic* and *basic* for residues may seem a little strange. Asp and Glu are called acidic amino acids, although at neutral pH in most proteins, Asp and Glu are not present in the acidic form (–COOH) but are present in the basic form ($-COO^-$). So the acidic amino acids, Asp and Glu, are really bases (proton acceptors). The reason that Asp and Glu are called acidic residues is that they are such strong acids (proton donors) they have already lost their protons. Lys, Arg, and His are considered basic amino acids, even though they have a proton at neutral pH. The same argument applies: Lys, Arg, and His are such good bases (proton acceptors) that they have already picked up a proton at neutral pH.

	FUNCTIONAL GROUP		AMINO ACID
		Hydrophilic, Polar	
Acidic	Carboxylates	$—COO^-$	Asp, Glu
Basic	Amines	$—NH_3^+$	Lys, Arg, His
Neutral	Amides	$—CONH_2$	Asn, Gln
	Alcohols	—OH	Ser, Thr, Tyr
	Thiol	—SH	Cys
		Hydrophobic, Apolar	
Aliphatic		$—CH_2—$	Ala, Val, Leu, Ile, Met
Aromatic		C Rings	Phe, Trp, Tyr
Whatever			Pro, Gly

Charged groups are usually found on the surface of proteins. It is very difficult to remove a charged residue from the surface of a protein and place it in the hydrophobic interior, where the dielectric constant is low. On the surface of the protein, a charged residue can be solvated by water, and it is easy to separate oppositely charged ions because of the high dielectric constant of water.[1] If a charged group is found in the interior of the protein, it is usually paired with a residue of the opposite charge. This is termed a *salt bridge*.

• **NEUTRAL POLAR** These side chains are uncharged, but they have groups (–OH, –SH, NH, C═O) that can hydrogen-bond to water. In an unfolded protein, these residues are hydrogen-bonded to water. They prefer to be exposed to water, but if they are found in the protein interior they are hydrogen-bonded to other polar groups.

HYDROPHOBIC (APOLAR)

Hydrocarbons (both aromatic and aliphatic) do not have many (or any) groups that can participate in the hydrogen-bonding network of water. They're greasy and prefer to be on the interior of proteins (away from water). Note that a couple of the aromatics, Tyr and Trp, have O and N, and Met has an S, but these amino acids are still pretty hydrophobic. The hydrophobic nature usually dominates; however, the O, N, and S atoms often participate in hydrogen bonds in the interior of the protein.

INTERACTIONS

A few basic interactions are responsible for holding proteins together. The properties of water are intimately involved in these interactions.

[1] The dielectric constant is a fundamental and obscure property of matter that puts a number on how hard it is to separate charged particles or groups when they're in this material. In water, charge is easy to separate (water has a high dielectric constant). The charge distribution on water is uneven. It has a more positive end (H) and a more negative end (O) that can surround the charged group and align to balance the charge of an ion in water. This dipolar nature of water makes it easy for it to dissolve ionic material. Organic solvents like benzene or octane have a low dielectric constant and a more uniform distribution of electrons. They do not have polar regions to interact with ions. In these types of solvents, just as in the interior of a protein, it is very difficult to separate two oppositely charged residues.

WATER

Water's important. Polar amino acid chains can participate in hydrogen bonding to water, or hydrophobic side chains can interfere with it.

The properties of water dominate the way we think about the interactions of biological molecules. That's why many texts start with a lengthy, but boring, discussion of water structure, and that's why you probably do need to read it.

Basically, water is a polar molecule. The H—O bond is polarized—the H end is more positive than the O end. This polarity is reinforced by the other H—O bond. Because of the polarity difference, water is both a hydrogen-bond donor and a hydrogen-bond acceptor. The two hydrogens can each enter into hydrogen bonds with an appropriate acceptor, and the two lone pairs of electrons on oxygen can act as hydrogen-bond acceptors. Because of the multiple hydrogen-bond donor and acceptor sites, water interacts with itself. Water does two important things: It squeezes out oily stuff because the oily stuff interferes with the interaction of water with itself, and it interacts favorably with anything that can enter into its hydrogen-bonding network.

HYDROPHOBIC INTERACTION

Proteins fold in order to put as much of the greasy stuff out of contact with water as possible. This provides much of the "driving force" for protein folding, protein–protein interactions, and protein–ligand interactions (Fig. 2-1).

The *driving force* for a chemical reaction is what makes it happen. It's the interaction that contributes the most to the decrease in free energy. For protein (and DNA) folding, it's the hydrophobic interaction that provides most of the driving force. As water squeezes out the hydrophobic side chains, distant parts of the protein are brought together into a compact structure. The hydrophobic core of most globular proteins is very compact, and the pieces of the hydrophobic core must fit together rather precisely.

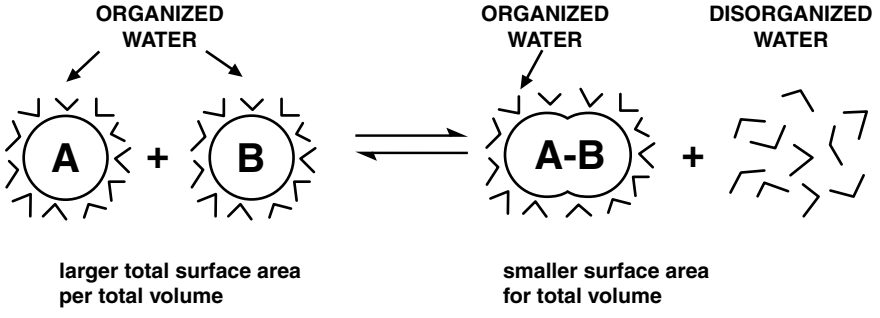


Figure 2-1 The Hydrophobic Interaction
As hydrophobic surfaces contact each other, the ordered water molecules that occupied the surfaces are liberated to go about their normal business. The increased entropy (disorder) of the water is favorable and drives (causes) the association of the hydrophobic surfaces.

Putting a hydrophobic group into water is difficult to do (unfavorable). Normally, water forms an extensive hydrogen-bonding network with itself. The water molecules are constantly on the move, breaking and making new hydrogen bonds with neighboring water molecules. Water has two hydrogen bond donors (the two H—O bonds) and two hydrogen bond acceptors (the two lone electron pairs on oxygen), so a given water molecule can make hydrogen bonds with neighboring water molecules in a large number of different ways and in a large number of different directions. When a hydrophobic molecule is dissolved in water, the water molecules next to the hydrophobic molecule can interact with other water molecules only in a direction away from the hydrophobic molecule. The water molecules in contact with the hydrophobic group become more organized. In this case, organization means restricting the number of ways that the water molecules can be arranged in space. The increased organization (restricted freedom) of water that occurs around a hydrophobic molecule represents an unfavorable decrease in the entropy of water.[2] In the absence of other factors, this increased organization (decreased entropy) of water causes hydrophobic molecules to be insoluble.

The surface area of a hydrophobic molecule determines how unfavorable the interaction between the molecule and water will be. The big-

[2] As with most desks and notebooks, disorder is the natural state. Order requires the input of energy. Reactions in which there is an increasing disorder are more favorable. Physical chemists (and sometimes others) use the word *entropy* instead of *disorder*. There's a discussion of entropy at the end of this book.

ger the surface area, the larger the number of ordered water molecules and the more unfavorable the interaction between water and the hydrophobic molecule. Bringing hydrophobic residues together minimizes the surface area directly exposed to water. Surface area depends on the square of the radius of a hydrophobic "droplet," while volume depends on the cube of the radius. By bringing two droplets together and combining their volume into a single droplet of larger radius, the surface area of the combined, larger droplet is less than that of the original two droplets. When the two droplets are joined together, some of the organized water molecules are freed to become "normal." This increased disorder (entropy) of the liberated water molecules tends to force hydrophobic molecules to associate with one another. The hydrophobic interaction provides most of the favorable interactions that hold proteins (and DNA) together. For proteins, the consequence of the hydrophobic interaction is a compact, hydrophobic core where hydrophobic side chains are in contact with each other.

VAN DER WAALS INTERACTIONS AND LONDON DISPERSION FORCES

These are very short-range interactions between atoms that occur when atoms are packed very closely to each other.

When the hydrophobic effect brings atoms very close together, van der Waals interactions and London dispersion forces, which work only over very short distances, come into play. This brings things even closer together and squeezes out the holes. The bottom line is a very compact, hydrophobic core in a protein with few holes.

HYDROGEN BONDS

Hydrogen bonding means sharing a hydrogen atom between one atom that has a hydrogen atom (donor) and another atom that has a lone pair of electrons (acceptor):

The secondary structure observed in proteins is there to keep from losing hydrogen bonds.

A hydrogen bond is an interaction between two groups in which a weakly acidic proton is shared (not totally donated) between a group that has a proton (the donor) and a group that can accept a proton (the acceptor). Water can be both a hydrogen-bond donor and a hydrogen-bond acceptor. In an unfolded protein, the hydrogen-bond donors and acceptors make hydrogen bonds with water. Remember that the polar amino acids have groups that can form hydrogen bonds with each other and with water. The peptide bond [–C(═O)–NH–] that connects all the amino acids of a protein has a hydrogen-bond donor (NH) and a hydrogen-bond acceptor (═O). The peptide bond will form hydrogen bonds with itself (secondary structure) or with water.

Everything is just great until the hydrophobic interaction takes over. Polar peptide bonds that can form hydrogen bonds connect the amino acid side chains. Consequently, when hydrophobic residues aggregate into the interior core, they must drag the peptide bonds with them. This requires losing the hydrogen bonds that these peptide bonds have made with water. If they are not replaced by equivalent hydrogen bonds in the folded structure, this costs the protein stability. The regular structures (helix, sheet, turn) that have become known as *secondary structure* provide a way to preserve hydrogen bonding of the peptide backbone in the hydrophobic environment of the protein core by forming regular, repeating structures.

SECONDARY STRUCTURE

Secondary structure is not just hydrogen bonds.

α Helix: Right-handed helix with 3.6 amino acid residues per turn. Hydrogen bonds are formed parallel to the helix axis.

β Sheet: A parallel or antiparallel arrangement of the polypeptide chain. Hydrogen bonds are formed between the two (or more) polypeptide strands.

β Turn: A structure in which the polypeptide backbone folds back on itself. Turns are useful for connecting helices and sheets.

Secondary structure exists to provide a way to form hydrogen bonds in the interior of a protein. These structures (helix, sheet, turn) provide ways to form regular hydrogen bonds. These hydrogen bonds are just replacing those originally made with water.

As a protein folds, many hydrogen bonds to water must be broken. If these broken hydrogen bonds are replaced by hydrogen bonds within

the protein, there is no net change in the number of hydrogen bonds (Fig. 2-2). Because the actual number of hydrogen bonds does not change as the secondary structure is formed, it is often argued that hydrogen bonds don't contribute much to the stability of a protein. However, hydrogen bonds that form after the protein is already organized into the correct structure may form more stable hydrogen bonds than the ones to water. Hydrogen bonding does contribute somewhat to the overall stability of a protein; however, the hydrophobic interaction usually dominates the overall stability.

Small peptides generally do not form significant secondary structure in water (there are some that do). For small peptides that do not form stable secondary structure, there are often other favorable interactions within the peptide that stabilize the formation of the helix or sheet structure.

The stability of secondary structure is also influenced by surrounding structures (Fig. 2-3). Secondary structure may be stabilized by interactions between the side chains and by interactions of the side chains with other structures in the protein. For example, it is possible to arrange the amino acid sequence of a protein or peptide into a helix that has one face that is hydrophobic and one that is hydrophilic. The helix wheel shown in Fig. 2-3 illustrates how this is possible. View the helix as a long cylinder. The peptide backbone spirals up and around the cylinder. The

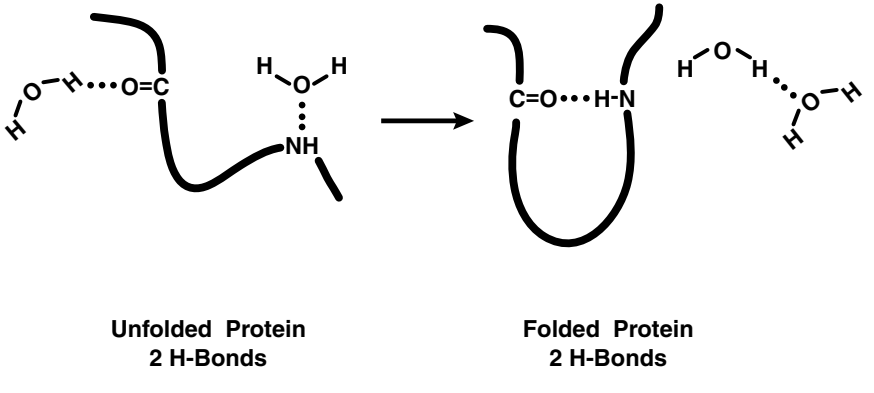
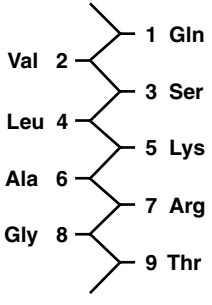
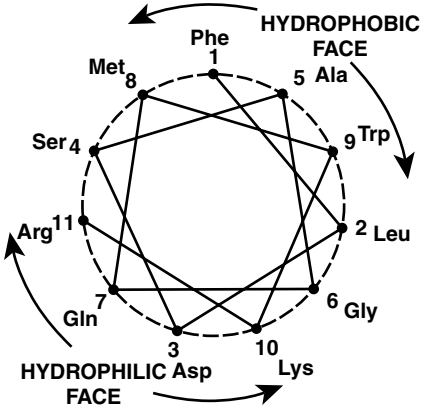


Figure 2-2 Solvation in Protein Folding
In an unfolded protein, water makes hydrogen bonds to all the donors and acceptors. As the protein folds and some polar groups find themselves inside, many of the hydrogen bonds with the solvent are replaced by hydrogen bonds between the different donors and acceptors in the protein. Because hydrogen bonds are being replaced rather than gained or lost as the protein folds, there is not a large net stabilization of the protein by the hydrogen bonds.



Looking at the side of a β-sheet. Every other residue is on the same face of the sheet.



Looking down the axis of an α-helix. Residue sequence is numbered. The angle between residues is 360°/3.6 residues or 100°.

Figure 2-3
SECONDARY-STRUCTURE STABILIZATION is not provided by just the hydrogen bonds. On the left, you're looking at a representation of a β sheet in which the amino acid side chains alternately stick up and down. If every other side chain is hydrophobic, one side of the sheet will be hydrophobic and the other side will be hydrophilic. Interaction of the hydrophobic side with a hydrophobic region on the protein will add stability to the β sheet. On the right an α helix is shown with a hydrophobic and a hydrophilic face. Again, putting the hydrophobic face (or surface) up against another hydrophobic region of the protein will stabilize the helix. In the helix representation, there is a 100° angle (360°/3.6 residues) between residues. Side chains would stick out from the side of the cylinder defined by the helix.

side chains of the amino acid residues point out from the helix. Each amino acid residue moves up the helix and around the helix at an angle of 100° (360°/turn = 3.6 residues/turn = 100°/residue). What you see in Fig. 2-3 is a view looking down the helix axis. The side chains are on the side of the circle (cylinder). One surface of the helix has only hydrophobic side chains, while the other side has hydrophilic side chains. This is termed an *amphipathic* helix (or *amphiphilic*, depending on whether you're a lover or a hater). With these kinds of helices, the hydrophobic face is buried in the interior while the hydrophilic face is exposed to water on the surface. There are two ways to look at this. The formation of the helix allows it to interact in a very specific way with

the rest of the protein. Alternatively, you could suppose that the interaction with the rest of the protein allows the helix to form. These are equivalent ways to view things, and energetically it doesn't make any difference (see linked thermodynamic functions in Chap. 24 if you dare)—the result is that the presence of a hydrophobic and a hydrophilic side of a helix and a complementary hydrophobic region in the interior of the protein makes it more favorable to form a helix. Secondary structure can be stabilized by interactions with other parts of the protein.

β Sheets can also have a hydrophobic face and a hydrophilic face. The backbone of the β sheet is arranged so that every other side chain points to the same side of the sheet. If the primary sequence alternates hydrophobic–hydrophilic, one surface of the sheet will be hydrophobic and the other will be hydrophilic.

PROTEIN STABILITY

Protein stability is proportional to the free-energy difference between an unfolded protein and the native structure (Fig. 2-4).

It's a miracle that we're here at all. Most proteins are not very stable even though there are a large number of very favorable interactions that can be seen in the three-dimensional structure. The reason is that the favorable interactions are almost completely balanced by unfavorable interactions that occur when the protein folds. A reasonably small net protein stability results from a small net difference between two large numbers. There are lots of favorable interactions but also lots of unfavorable interactions.

Protein stability is just the difference in free energy between the correctly folded structure of a protein and the unfolded, denatured form. In the denatured form, the protein is unfolded, side chains and the peptide backbone are exposed to water, and the protein is conformationally mobile (moving around between a lot of different, random structures). The more stable the protein, the larger the free energy difference between the unfolded form and the native structure.

You can think about the energy difference in terms of an equilibrium constant if you want. For the folding reaction, the equilibrium constant K_{eq} = [native]/[denatured] is large if the protein is stable. Proteins can be denatured (unfolded) by increasing the temperature, lowering the pH, or adding detergents, urea, or guanidine hydrochloride. Urea and guanidine hydrochloride denature proteins by increasing the solubility of the hydrophobic side chains in water. Presumably these compounds, which

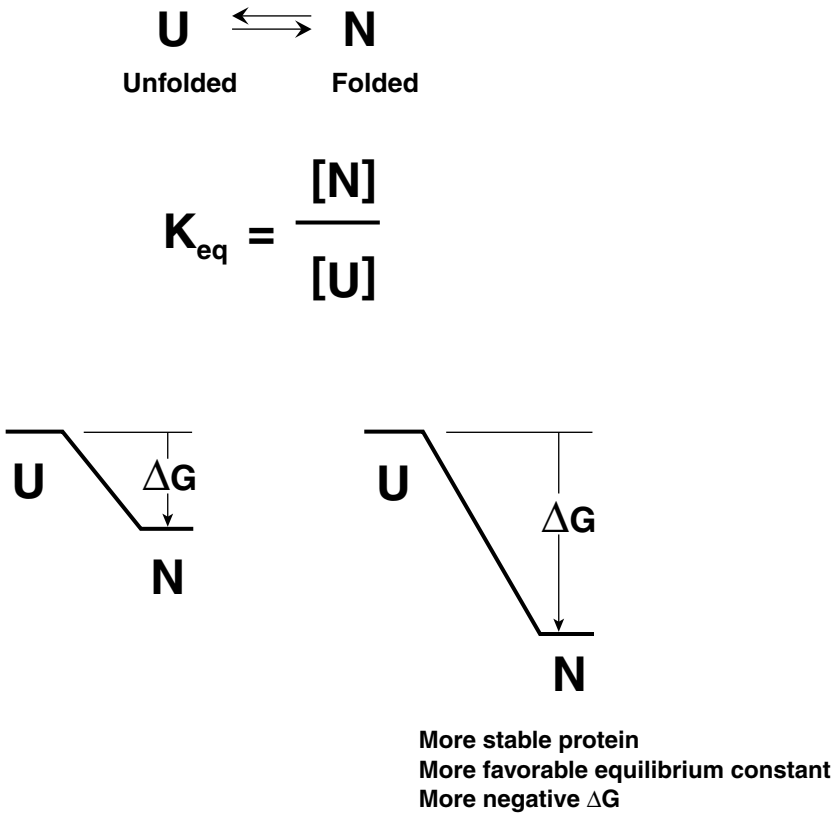


Figure 2-4
The **FREE-ENERGY CHANGE** during a reaction such as the folding of a protein is related to how big the equilibrium constant is. For reactions that are downhill and favorable, the free energy of the product is lower than that of the reactant. The change in free energy (products − reactants) is less than zero (negative). Very downhill reactions have very large equilibrium constants.

are polar, alter water structure in some way to make it easier to dissolve hydrophobic molecules.[3]

Protein structure (and also the interactions between proteins and small molecules) is a compromise. It may be necessary to sacrifice a hydrogen bond or two in order to gain two or three hydrophobic interactions. In contrast, it may be necessary to place a hydrophobic residue in contact with water in order to pick up a few more hydrogen bonds in

[3] You may have figured out from this sentence that it's not exactly known how urea and guanidine denature proteins.

secondary structure. So it's all a compromise—a constant game of give and take. The game involves getting as many favorable interactions as you can while doing as few of the unfavorable things as possible.

FAVORABLE (GOOD) INTERACTIONS

Try to get as many of these as possible:

1. Hydrophobic interactions
2. van der Waals interactions
3. London dispersion forces
4. Hydrogen bonds
5. Charge–charge interactions

These are the favorable interactions that were discussed above. They work together to provide stabilizing interactions that hold the structure together.

UNFAVORABLE (BAD) INTERACTIONS

Avoid as many of these as possible:

1. Organizing anything into a structure (decreasing entropy)
2. Removing a polar group from water without forming a new hydrogen bond to it
3. Removing a charged group from water without putting an opposite charge nearby or putting two like charges close together
4. Leaving a hydrophobic residue in contact with water
5. Putting two atoms in the same place (steric exclusion)

There are numerous bad things (energetically speaking) that can happen when proteins fold into a three-dimensional structure. The worst thing that has to happen is that lots of covalent bonds in the protein must assume relatively fixed angles. They're no longer free to rotate as they were in the unfolded form. Protein folding requires a large loss in the conformational entropy (disorder) of the molecule. Restriction of the conformational freedom is probably the biggest unfavorable factor opposing the folding of proteins.

When a protein folds, most of the hydrophobic side chains pack into the interior. As they move into the interior, they must drag the polar amides of the polypeptide backbone with them. These backbone amides must lose contact with water and break hydrogen bonds to the solvent.[4] If these hydrogen bonds that were formed with the solvent aren't replaced by new hydrogen bonds between the different polar groups that now find themselves in the interior, there will be a net loss in the number of hydrogen bonds upon folding—this is not good. Secondary structure provides a way to allow much of the polypeptide backbone to participate in hydrogen bonds that replace the ones made with water. But then there's the odd residue that just may not be able to find a suitable hydrogen-bonding partner in the folded protein. This costs energy and costs the protein stability. The same thing happens with charged residues (although they're almost always ion-paired). By the same token, it may occasionally be necessary to leave a hydrophobic group exposed to water. It may not be possible to bury all the hydrophobic residues in the interior. If not, this is also unfavorable and destabilizes the protein. All these unfavorable interactions sum up to make the protein less stable.

Don't get the impression that proteins need to be as stable as possible and that the unfavorable interactions are necessarily bad. Proteins shouldn't live forever. A good bit of metabolism is regulated by increasing and decreasing the amount of a specific enzyme or protein that is available to catalyze a specific reaction. If a protein were too stable, it might not be possible to get rid of it when necessary.

The net result of all the favorable and unfavorable interactions is that they're almost balanced. For a 100-residue protein, it is possible to estimate roughly that the sum of all the favorable interactions that stabilize the three-dimensional, native structure is on the order of -500 kcal/mol. This comes from all the favorable hydrophobic, van der Waals, hydrogen-bonding, and electrostatic interactions in the native protein. In contrast, the sum of all the unfavorable interactions that destabilize the structure is probably near $+490$ kcal/mol. These come from conformational entropy losses (organization of the protein into a structure) and other unfavorable effects such as leaving a hydrophobic group exposed to water or not forming a hydrogen bond in the interior after having lost one that was made to water in the unfolded state. The net result is that the three-dimensional structure of a typical protein is only about -5 to -15 kcal/mol more stable than the denatured, structureless state.

[4] The same argument applies to polar groups on the side chains of the amino acids.

TEMPERATURE-SENSITIVE MUTATIONS

These are mutations that decrease the stability of a protein so that the denaturation temperature is near 40°C.

A single methylene group (–CH_2–) involved in a hydrophobic interaction may contribute as much as −1.5 to −2 kcal/mol to the stability of a protein that is only stable by −10 kcal/mol. A single hydrogen bond might contribute as much as −1.5 to −3.5 kcal/mol. If a mutation disrupts interactions that stabilize the protein, the protein may be made just unstable enough to denature near body (or culture) temperature. It might strike you as strange that we were talking earlier about how hydrogen bonds didn't contribute much to the net stability of proteins and now I'm telling you they contribute −1.5 to −3.5 kcal/mol. Both statements are more or less right. In the first case we were considering the folding process in which a hydrogen bond to solvent is replaced by a hydrogen bond in the folded protein—the result is a small contribution of a hydrogen bond to stability. What we're talking about now is messing up a protein by changing one amino acid for another by mutation. Here we're destroying an interaction that's present in the intact, folded protein. For any hydrogen-bonded group in the folded protein, there must be a complementary group. A donor must have an acceptor, and vice versa. Making a mutation that removes the donor of a hydrogen bond leaves the acceptor high and dry, missing a hydrogen bond. In the unfolded protein, the deserted acceptor can be accommodated by water; however, in the folded protein the loss of the donor by mutation hurts. It costs a hydrogen bond when the protein folds. The result: a loss in stability for the protein. Loss in stability means that the protein will denature at a lower temperature than before.

Temperature-sensitive mutations usually arise from a single mutation's effect on the stability of the protein. Temperature-sensitive mutations make the protein just unstable enough to unfold when the normal temperature is raised a few degrees. At normal temperatures (usually 37°C), the protein folds and is stable and active. However, at a slightly higher temperature (usually 40 to 50°C) the protein denatures (melts) and becomes inactive. The reason proteins unfold over such a narrow temperature range is that the folding process is very cooperative—each interaction depends on other interactions that depend on other interactions.

For a number of temperature-sensitive mutations it is possible to find (or make) a seond mutation in the protein that will suppress the effects

of the first mutation. For example, if the first mutation decreased the protein stability by removing a hydrogen-bond donor, a second mutation that changes the acceptor may result in a protein with two mutations that is just as stable as the native protein. The second mutation is called a *suppressor mutation*.

LIGAND-BINDING SPECIFICITY

This is also a compromise (Fig. 2-5).

The specificity of the interaction between a protein and a small molecule or another protein is also a compromise. We've just said that charge–charge and hydrogen-bond interactions don't contribute a lot to the stability of a protein because their interaction in the folded protein simply replaces their individual interaction with water. The same may be said of the interaction between an enzyme and its substrate or one protein and another. However, there is a huge amount of specificity to be gained in these kinds of interactions. For tight binding, the protein and its ligand must be complementary in every way—size, shape, charge, and hydrogen-bond donor and acceptor sites.

Both the protein and the ligand are solvated by water when they are separated. As the two surfaces interact, water is excluded, hydrogen bonds are broken and formed, hydrophobic interactions occur, and the protein and ligand stick to each other. As in protein folding and for the same reasons, the hydrophobic interaction provides much of the free energy for the association reaction, but polar groups that are removed

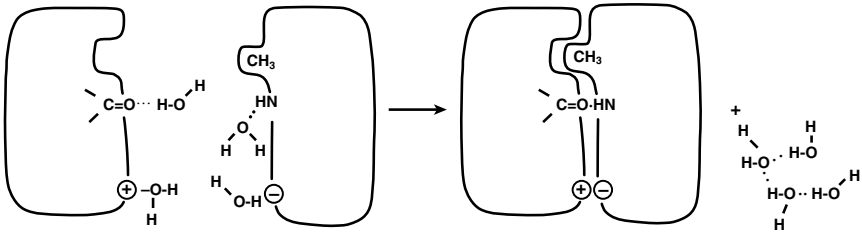


Figure 2-5
The **ASSOCIATION** of two molecules uses the same interactions that stabilize a protein's structure: hydrophobic interactions, van der Waals interactions, hydrogen bonds, and ionic interactions. To get the most out of the interaction, the two molecules must be complementary.

from water by the interaction must find suitable partners in the associated state.

Consider what happens when a nonoptimal ligand binds to the protein. The binding of this modified ligand is much weaker not because it's not the right size to fit into the protein-binding site, but because the complementary group on the protein loses a favorable interaction with water that is not replaced by an equally favorable interaction with the ligand (Fig. 2-6).

As with the formation of secondary structure, the multiple, cooperative hydrogen bonds that can be formed between the ligand and the protein may be stronger and more favorable than hydrogen bonds that the ligand might make to water. Hydrogen bonding may, in fact, make some contribution to the favorable free energy of binding of ligands to proteins.

GLOBAL CONCLUSION

Now that you understand the basis for the interactions between functional groups in water, you also understand the basis for most interactions: DNA–DNA, DNA–RNA, DNA–protein, RNA–protein, protein–protein, protein–ligand, enzyme–substrate (Get the picture?), antibody–antigen, protein–chromatography column—it's all the same stuff.

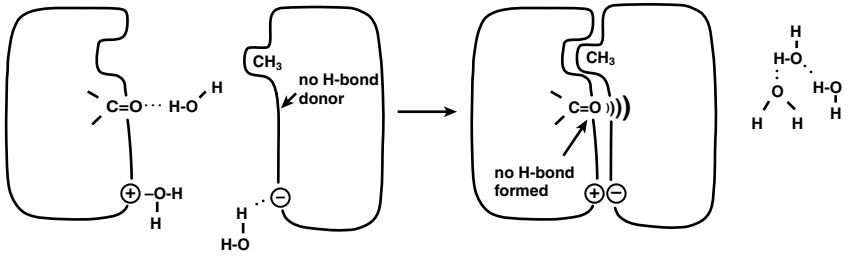


Figure 2-6
SPECIFICITY in the association of two proteins or a protein and a small molecule results from the requirement that the two interacting molecules must be complementary—complementary in charge, hydrogen bonding, and hydrophobic patches as well as shape. If any of the possible interactions are not satisfied, the strength of the interaction suffers.

· C H A P T E R · 3 ·

MEMBRANES AND MEMBRANE PROTEINS

General Membrane Function

Membrane Composition

Phospholipid Bilayer

Membrane Structure

Posttranslational Modification

Membrane Fluidity

Diffusion in Membranes

Movement of Ions and Molecules Across Membranes

Transport Across Membranes

The Nernst Equation

GENERAL MEMBRANE FUNCTION

1. Separates one area of the cell from another
2. Provides a diffusion barrier
3. Concentrates membrane-associated molecules
4. Enables ion and concentration gradients

Membranes separate one part of the cell from the other. Proteins and other molecules can be localized in the membrane. Membrane localization concentrates the molecules and makes it easier for them to find each other (two-dimensional diffusion) than it is for two molecules in solution (three-dimensional diffusion). Because most molecules can't pass through the membrane by themselves, the cell machinery can create con-

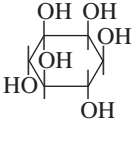
centration gradients across membranes by pumping specific molecules out of the cell and/or by allowing specific molecules into the cell. As we'll see later, these gradients are a source of energy for the cell and can be used for signaling.

MEMBRANE COMPOSITION

This includes negative phospholipids (PG, PS, PI), neutral phospholipids (PC, PE, sphingolipids), cholesterol, and asymmetric structure.

Lipids are biological molecules that are soluble in certain organic solvents (whether or not something is a lipid is operationally defined by the solubility). Lipids include a variety of molecules such as triglycerides, phospholipids, and cholesterol. The major type of lipid in membranes is the phospholipid. They're called phospholipids because they all contain a phosphate diester.

COMMON PHOSPHOLIPIDS

HEAD GROUP	STRUCTURE	LIPID NAME	ABBREVIATION
	Neutral Lipids		
Ethanolamine	$HOCH_2CH_2NH_3^+$	Phosphatidylethanolamine	**PE**
Choline	$HOCH_2CH_2N^+(CH_3)_3$	Phosphatidylcholine also called Lecithin	**PC**
	Acidic Lipids (negatively charged—remember the negative charge on the phosphate group)		
Serine	$HOCH_2CH(CO_2^-)NH_3^+$	Phosphatidylserine	**PS**
Inositol		Phosphatidylinositol	**PI**
Glycerol	$HOCH_2CH(OH)CH_2OH$	Phosphatidylglycerol	**PG**

The other phospholipids that you may encounter are based on sphingosine. They are derived from serine instead of glycerol but the concept is the same. They have two long, fatty acid chains, a phosphate diester, and a choline-like charged group. This is a neutral lipid.

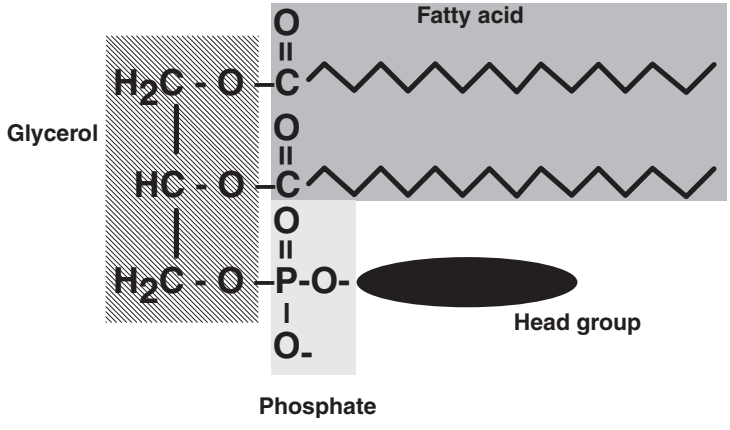
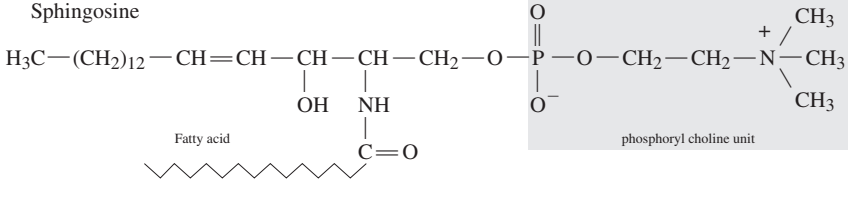


Figure 3-1 Structure of Phospholipids
The hydrophobic tail is provided by long-chain fatty acids attached to a glycerol backbone. The head group contains oxygen and may be positively charged or neutral. The name of the phospholipid is dictated by the head group. The head and tail are attached through a phosphate diester.



Sphingomyelin

Glycolipids are derived from sphingosine, but have a sugar unit, such as glucose or galactose attached instead of the choline unit. The carbohydrate can be extended to form more complex structures, including branches. The sugars point out from the cell surface and are involved in cell-cell recognition.

Cholesterol is an essential component of mammalian membranes. It is obtained from the diet or can be synthesized from acetyl-CoA.

PHOSPHOLIPID BILAYER

This consists of two layers: tails inside, heads outside. The hydrophobic part is 30 Å thick.

Phospholipids are detergents; they have a hydrophobic part (the fatty acid tail) and a hydrophilic part (the head) (Fig. 3-1). The phospholipids

associate with each other through hydrophobic interaction, forming two layers (leaflets) of phospholipid (Fig. 3-2). This buries the hydrophobic fatty acid tails and exposes the polar part (head) to water. Because of the thick layer of hydrocarbon, any molecule that may try to penetrate the bilayer must pass through this hydrophobic region. For polar molecules and ions this is very difficult because they must lose the strong interactions they make with water in order to pass through the bilayer.

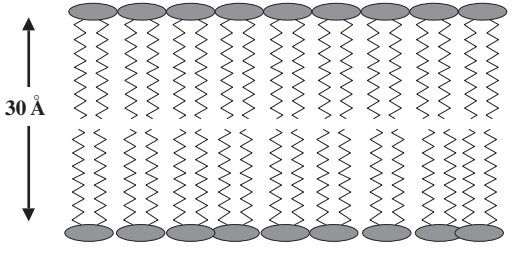


Figure 3-2
PHOSPHOLIPIDS associate to form a bilayer consisting of a hydrophobic core (phospholipid tails) and a polar surface (phospholipid heads).

MEMBRANE STRUCTURE

Membranes are asymmetric. Integral membrane proteins can't be washed off. Peripheral membrane proteins can be washed off. Membrane spanning segments and lipid modification (fatty acylation and prenylation), anchor proteins in a fluid bilayer (Singer fluid mosaic model).

The membrane establishes in and out. The membrane is asymmetric because the inner and outer leaflets can have a different lipid composition and contain different proteins (Fig. 3-3). Proteins can be associated with either side of the membrane, or they can pass through the membrane using membrane-spanning segments. The functional part of the protein can be on the cytosolic side, the external side, or even in the membrane itself. A common structure for spanning a membrane is an α-helix (but there are examples of sheets spanning a membrane). It takes about 20 amino acid residues arranged in a helix to span to a 30 Å hydrophobic interior of the bilayer.

Proteins that can be removed from membranes by washing them with salt solutions or low pH solutions (disrupts ionic interactions) are called *peripheral membrane proteins*. Proteins that cannot be removed without disrupting the membrane with detergents are called *integral*

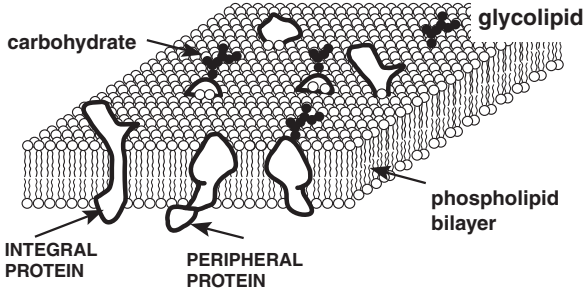


Figure 3-3
FLUID-MOSAIC MODEL of membrane structure. Proteins and lipids that are embedded in the lipid bilayer diffuse rapidly in the plane of the membrane.

membrane proteins. Remember that the distinction between integral and peripheral membrane proteins is operational rather than structural. All proteins that pass through the membrane one or more times will be integral membrane proteins, but not all integral membrane proteins will pass through the membrane—it depends on whether or not the protein can be removed by salt or low pH washes. Peripheral membrane proteins associate with the membrane or, more usually, with integral membrane proteins.

POSTTRANSLATIONAL MODIFICATION

Posttranslational modification can affect membrane association by prenylation (adding C15 or C20 unsaturated hydrocarbons) or fatty acylation (C14 or C16). Glycoproteins and glycolipids on the exterior face of the membrane have carbohydrates attached.

Some proteins can be posttranslationally modified by the addition of prenyl groups. Prenyl groups are long-chain, unsaturated hydrocarbons that are intermediates in isoprenoid synthesis. The *farnesyl* group has 15 carbons, and the *geranylgeranyl* has 20 carbons. They are attached to a cysteine residue near the end of the protein as a thiol ether (Protein-S-R). Other proteins can have a long-chain fatty acid (C14═myristoyl, C16═palmitoyl) attached to the amino terminus as an amide. These fatty acid modifications can increase the association of proteins with the membrane.

Glycoproteins and glycolipids have complex sugar residues attached. Since they are attached in the ER and Golgi compartments, the sugar

coating will point outward from the cell (will be on the outside surface of the membrane). Membrane proteins as well as phospholipids and glycolipids are embedded in the lipid bilayer and move around in the plane of the bilayer very rapidly.

MEMBRANE FLUIDITY

Increasing fluidity makes lateral diffusion faster. Fluidity increases with increased temperature, increased content of short-chain fatty acids, and increased content of *cis*-fatty acids. Cholesterol increases the fluidity of membranes that are not very fluid, but decreases the fluidity of membranes that are already fluid.

The membrane is a dynamic assembly and things are diffusing rapidly in the plane of the bilayer. The middle of the bilayer has been likened to olive oil. As with oil, cooling the lipid bilayer will cause the hydrocarbons to become more ordered (structured). The side chains pack closer to each other, and the fluidity of the membrane is lower. Things that disrupt the ability of the side chains to pack in a regular fashion make the membrane more fluid (Fig. 3-4). These include high temperature, lipids with shorter chains (<C16), and lipids with *cis*-double bonds. The shorter lipids and the *cis*-double bonds cause the occurrence of holes (packing defects).

Cholesterol has a funny effect on membrane fluidity. Because of its shape, cholesterol prevents long-chain fatty acids from packing close to each other. When cholesterol is added to a membrane composed largely

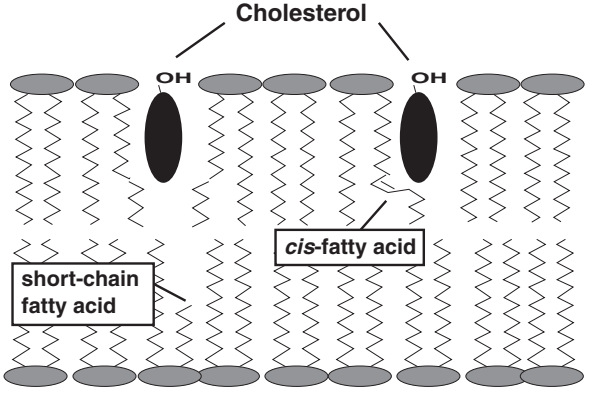


Figure 3-4
MEMBRANE FLUIDITY is regulated by altering the chain length of fatty acids, the presence of *cis*-unsaturations, and the content of cholesterol.

of saturated, long-chain fatty acids, it will cause the fluidity to increase. However, cholesterol is just the right size to pack into the defects caused by *cis*-fatty acids. In a membrane (like most mammalian membranes) that contains significant *cis*-fatty acids, adding cholesterol will cause the membrane fluidity to decrease.

DIFFUSION IN MEMBRANES

Lateral diffusion is in the plane of the membrane, and transverse (flip-flop) diffusion is perpendicular to the membrane (through the membrane). Lateral diffusion (in two dimensions) is fast, and transverse diffusion is slow (or nonexistent) except for gases (CO_2, NH_3) and hydrophobic, uncharged, small molecules (such as cholesterol)

To diffuse rapidly in the plane of the membrane (lateral diffusion), a molecule must simply move around in the lipid environment (including the polar head groups). It need not change how it interacts with phospholipids or with water since it is constantly exposed to pretty much the same environment. Lateral diffusion can be slowed (or prevented) by interactions between membrane proteins and the cellular cytoskeleton. This spatially restricts a plasma membrane protein to a localized environment.

To move through the membrane (change sides or transverse diffusion), a molecule must be able to pass through the hydrophobic portion of the lipid bilayer. For ions and proteins, this means that they must lose their interactions with water (desolvation). Because this is extremely difficult, ions and proteins do not move through membranes by themselves. Small molecules such as CO_2, NH_3 (but not NH_4^+), and water can diffuse through membranes; however, most other small molecules pass through the lipid bilayer very slowly, if at all. This permeability barrier means that cells must develop mechanisms to move molecules from one side of the membrane to the other.

MOVEMENT OF IONS AND MOLECULES ACROSS MEMBRANES

This requires the participation of a protein transporter. Molecules move spontaneously toward lower concentration (chemical gradient) and opposite charge (electrical gradient). Moving in the opposite direction requires the input of energy.

Because the cell membrane is not permeable to ions and most molecules, the cell can regulate the concentrations of things on either side of the membrane. There are two factors that influence the movement of ions and molecules through a membrane. These are the concentration gradient across the membrane (also called the "chemical potential") and the electrical potential of the membrane.

A *concentration gradient* (chemical potential) exists if the concentration of a given molecule or ion is different on the two sides of the membrane. If you punch a hole in the membrane, the concentration of the molecule will try to equalize itself on the two sides of the membrane (if it is an uncharged molecule).

Normally, cells maintain a slight excess of negative ions inside the cell. This costs energy, but you'll see it's worth it. This uneven distribution of charge across the membrane results in a *membrane potential* (or electrical potential). The membrane potential is negative, indicating that the inside of the cell is negatively charged as opposed to the outside which is positive. It has a normal value of about -0.06 V (-60 mV). As long as the membrane potential is maintained, it will affect how ions move (the movement of molecules with no charge is not sensitive to the membrane potential). Moving an ion toward the opposite charge (moving a positive ion from outside to inside the cell) will be easier than moving the ion toward the same charge.

The membrane potential and the concentration gradient can reinforce each other or they can be in opposition to each other. The total force tending to move a molecule or ion through a membrane is called the *electrochemical potential*. When the concentration gradient and the electrical potential work to oppose each other, the stronger effect wins. If someone forces you to get quantitative (this may be a physiologist rather than a biochemist), see the section on the Nernst equation at the end of the chapter.

TRANSPORT ACROSS MEMBRANES

Facilitated diffusion (channel): molecule moves down its electrochemical gradient. *Active transport (pump)*: molecule moves up its electrochemical gradient (requires energy input). Pumps use energy (usually ATP hydrolysis). Na^+ high outside/K^+ high inside.

Because membranes are impermeable to most molecules, you must have a transporter (a protein) in the membrane to help molecules or ions move through it (Fig. 3-5). They are also called *channels* because they behave like selective holes in the membrane. Transporters are selective

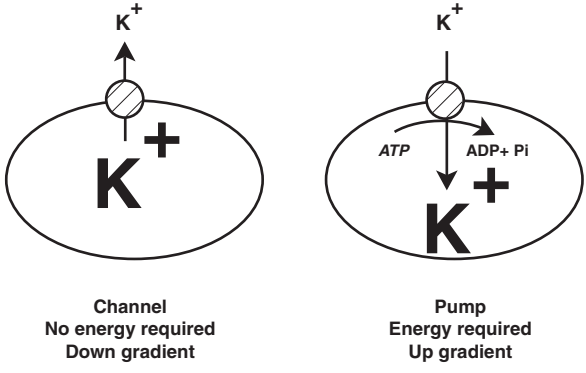


Figure 3-5
Moving from high to low concentration **(CHANNEL)** does not require the input of energy. Moving from low to high concentration **(PUMP)** does require some input of energy, usually in the form of ATP hydrolysis of another ion moving down its concentration gradient at the same time.

because they usually allow only one type of ion to pass through the membrane. For example, the calcium channel that releases calcium from the endoplasmic reticulum, releases only calcium but not other divalent cations. What distinguishes a channel from a pump is that the movement of ions through a channel does *not* require any input of energy.

Channels can be gated. This means that something causes the channel to open. For example, a ligand-gated channel opens when a specific ligand binds to a receptor in the membrane. The acetylcholine receptor is a ligand-gated sodium channel that initiates the flow of sodium into the cell (and potassium out) when the receptor binds the neurotransmitter, acetylcholine. Voltage-gated channels open and close in response to changes in the membrane potential. The acetylcholine receptor is also voltage-gated. When the membrane potential becomes positive, it opens the channel further, increasing the rate of membrane depolarization.

Pumps move ions and molecules up their electrochemical gradient. Pumps require energy, usually in the form of ATP hydrolysis. Sodium-potassium ATPase is an example of a pump. Cells maintain a higher concentration of potassium inside the cell than they do outside the cell. Sodium is maintained low inside, high outside. Sodium-potassium ATPase pumps three sodium ions from inside the cell to outside. This is the unfavorable direction—Na^+ moves from low concentration to a higher one and against the membrane potential. At the same time, it also

pumps two potassium ions from outside the cell to inside (against the concentration gradient but with the electrical gradient). Both ion movements are unfavorable so that the transport process requires energy.

Pumps work by changing their structure and binding characteristics during the cycle of ATP binding, hydrolysis, and release of ADP and Pi. Exactly when and what triggers these changes will vary from pump to pump, but the essential feature is that there must be a cycle that moves a binding site from one side of the membrane to the other while it also changes the affinity for the ligand. When it faces outside, the sodium-binding site must have a low affinity for sodium. This allows sodium to be released where the concentration is high. The potassium-binding site will have a high affinity for potassium when it faces outside. This allows potassium to be taken up outside where the concentration is low. During the movement to the other side of the membrane (this doesn't happen at the same time for the potassium and sodium sites), the affinity for substrate changes. When it faces inside, the sodium-binding site has a high affinity so that it can take up sodium at the low concentration inside. The potassium site that faces inside has a low affinity so that it can release potassium at the high concentration inside the cell.

Ion gradients can also be used to transport other molecules. During digestion, glucose is concentrated in the intestinal epithelium (moves from low concentration outside to a high concentration inside). The energy for this process comes from coupling the transport of glucose to the cotransport of sodium from outside the cell to inside (down its concentration gradient; Fig. 3-6).

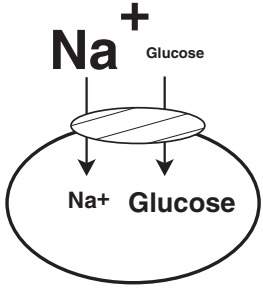


Figure 3-6
Intestinal epithelial cells concentrate **GLUCOSE** from the intestinal lumen by using the energy from moving sodium down its electrochemical gradient to provide the energy for moving glucose against (up) its concentration gradient.

THE NERNST EQUATION

$V = RT/zF \cdot \ln (C_o/C_i)$
$\Delta G_{ion} = zFV = z(23 \text{ kcal/mol/V})V$
$\Delta G_{conc} = -RT\ln (C_o/C_i) = -1.36 \log (C_o/C_i)$
$\Delta G_{total} = \Delta G_{ion} + \Delta G_{conc}$

The Nernst equation tells you quantitatively about the energetics of ions moving through membranes. There are two things you need to consider to decide which direction an ion will move spontaneously or whether an ion movement will require energy or not. The first thing to consider is the concentration difference across the membrane. There is an energy associated with maintaining this. Like other energies we've talked about, it will be a free energy. The free energy difference for having different concentrations across a membrane is the following:

$$\Delta G_{conc} = -RT\ln\left(\frac{C_{out}}{C_{in}}\right) = -1.36 \cdot \log\left(\frac{C_{out}}{C_{in}}\right)$$

Here R is the gas constant and T is the temperature (in kelvin). Like the other energetic things we've done (see Chapter 24), using R and T and converting from natural to base 10 logs, the factor in front of the concentration ratio is 1.36 kcal/mol. A concentration ratio of 10 between the outside and inside corresponds to a free energy of −1.36 kcal/mol. The sign here can be confusing—it's a convention. Having higher concentration outside than inside is considered favorable. If something moves from higher to lower concentration, that's in the favorable direction and will contribute a negative ΔG. The ΔG is independent of whether or not the molecule is charged.

If the species has a charge on it, there's another ΔG associated with moving it through a membrane.

$$\Delta G_{ion} = zFV$$

Here z is the charge, F is the faraday (23 kcal/V/mol), and V is the potential difference (voltage) across the membrane. Positive ions (z = +1) will move toward places where the charge is negative. Cells (except when they depolarize) are usually negative inside. The membrane potential is maintained by using energy (ATP hydrolysis) to move ions across the membrane. A membrane potential of −60 mV (negative inside) means that the ΔG_{ion} required to set up this gradient would be (1)*23*0.06 = −1.38 kcal/mol. This would amount to maintaining a factor of 10 difference in the concentration of one positively charged ion

(higher outside than inside). The unequal charge distribution is discussed in terms of volts and is called the *membrane potential*. In reality, multiple ions contribute to the net membrane potential.

The direction that something will move spontaneously is determined by the free energy (ΔG) for that movement, which is going to depend on direction. The ΔG for moving from out to in will be of the opposite sign of the ΔG for moving from in to out. When you're trying to decide which way something might move spontaneously (where ΔG is negative), you have to assume a direction, calculate the ΔG for that direction, and look at the sign. If it's negative (favorable), things will move in the direction you assumed. If it's positive, things will move in the opposite direction.

For any molecule distributed across a membrane at equilibrium, the overall ΔG will be the sum $\Delta G_{ion} + \Delta G_{conc}$. Thus, at equilibrium $zFV = -1.36 \log (C_{out}/C_{in})$. If C_{out}/C_{in} is 10, then V will be $-1.36(\text{kcal/mol})(1)/(1 \cdot 23\ \text{kcal/V/mol}) = -1.36/23 = -0.06$ V (or 60 mV). The conclusion is that a ratio of 10:1 for a positive ion outside the cell will create a voltage difference of −60mV (negative side). By convention, the potential difference is defined with respect to the inside—a more negative inside will have a negative membrane potential while a more positive inside will have a positive membrane potential.

There are lots of questions that can be asked about your understanding of membrane potential. One common question is to give you a membrane potential, a few concentrations of ions, and ask which way will things move spontaneously. Which way will an ion move? It will move so that the ΔG is < 0 (favorable). Let's do an example. Assume that the membrane potential of the cell is −60 mV (inside). This is near the potential that the cell normally maintains and denotes that there are more negative ions inside the cell than outside. Let's also assume that the concentration of Na^+ is 20 mM outside and 100 mM inside. Now, if we were to punch a hole in the membrane that would allow Na^+ to move (a channel), which way would it move?

The signs of ΔG are dictated by what you call inside and outside, so let's try to figure out the magnitude of ΔG and determine the sign of ΔG by intuition. Because the cell is negative inside, the membrane potential would tend to cause the Na^+ to move from outside to inside (+ likes −). If we assume that the Na^+ would move from outside to inside, this would correspond to a $\Delta G_{ion} = -(1)23(0.06) = -1.38$ kcal/mol. The sign would be negative because moving inside would be good (remember + likes −). Now you have to consider the concentration gradient. Since the Na^+ is higher inside than outside, the concentration gradient would make it harder to move the Na^+ from outside to inside (what we assumed originally). The ΔG_{conc} would be positive and equal to $-1.36*\log(20/100) = -1.36*\log(20/100) = -1.36(-0.7) = +0.95$ kcal/mol. The easiest thing to do here is to forget whether outside or inside is on top of the

ratio of concentrations. If you make a mistake here, all it will do is change the sign of ΔG, not the magnitude of the number. So be sure that you determine if each ΔG makes sense. If we had made that mistake here, the ΔG_{conc} we calculated would be -0.95 kcal/mol instead of $+0.95$ kcal/mol. But this must be wrong—we know that with a higher concentration inside, the Na^+ would like to move down its concentration gradient. Since we're calculating the ΔG for moving from outside to inside (we assumed that), then the ΔG_{conc} must be positive.

We've just found that the ΔG_{ion} is -1.38 kcal/mol for moving Na^+ from outside to inside and that ΔG_{conc} is $+0.95$ kca/mol. Since the total ΔG is negative ($-1.38 + 0.95$), the Na^+ will move in the direction we assumed (outside to inside). Even though the concentration gradient is opposing the movement, the strength of the membrane potential is sufficient to cause the ion to move up its concentration gradient. This requires energy—which in this case must come from maintaining the membrane potential. You've just seen how a pump works.

CHAPTER 4

DNA-RNA STRUCTURE

DNA Structure

DNA Stability

RNA Secondary Structure

DNA STRUCTURE

Double helix
A = Adenine = purine
T = Thymine = pyrimidine (DNA only)
G = Guanine = purine
C = Cytosine = pyrimidine
U = Uracil = pyrimidine (RNA only)
AT/GC base pairs
Antiparallel strands
Major groove–minor groove
A-, B-, and Z-DNA

The two complementary strands of the DNA double helix run in antiparallel directions (Fig. 4-1). The phosphodiester connection between individual deoxynucleotides is directional. It connects the 5′-hydroxyl group of one nucleotide with the 3′-hydroxyl group of the next nucleotide. Think of it as an arrow. If the top strand sequence is written with the 5′ end on the left (this is the conventional way), the bottom strand will have a complementary sequence, and the phosphate backbone will run in the opposite direction; the 3′ end will be on the left. The antiparallel direc-

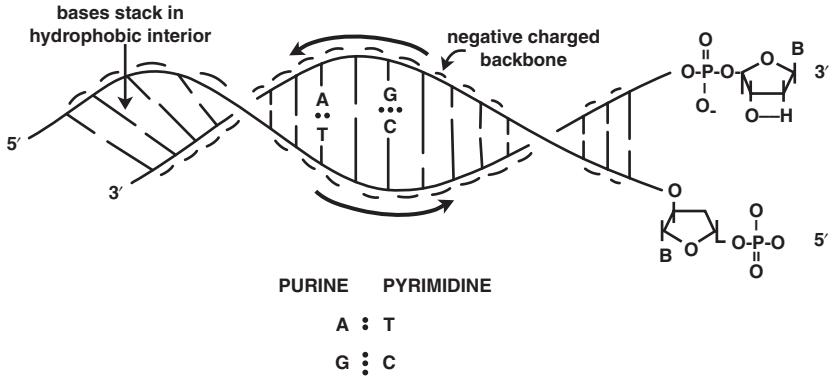


Figure 4-1 Structural Features of DNA

tionality of DNA is an important concept (i.e., it always appears on exams). Either of the two strands could be written on top (just rotate the paper by 180°), but if the DNA codes for a protein, the top strand is usually arranged so that it matches the sequence of the RNA that would be made from the DNA (see later). In Fig. 4-2, you're looking at a base pair as it would be seen from above, looking down the helix axis. The DNA double helix has two grooves—the major and the minor. If the helix were flat, the major and minor grooves would correspond to the two different flat surfaces represented by the front and back of the flat sheet. The major and minor grooves are different size because the two strands come together so that the angle between corresponding points on the phosphate backbone is not 180°. Many of the sequence-specific interactions of proteins with DNA occur along the major groove because the bases (which contain the sequence information) are more exposed along this groove.

The structures shown in Fig. 4-1 are for B-form DNA, the usual form of the molecule in solution. Different double-helical DNA structures can be formed by rotating various bonds that connect the structure. These are termed *different conformations*. The A and B conformations are both right-handed helices that differ in pitch (how much the helix rises per turn) and other molecular properties. Z-DNA is a left-handed helical form of DNA in which the phosphate backbones of the two antiparallel DNA strands are still arranged in a helix but with a more irregular appearance. The conformation of DNA (A, B, or Z) depends on the temperature and salt concentration as well as the base composition of the DNA. Z-DNA appears to be favored in certain regions of DNA in which the sequence is rich in G and C base pairs.

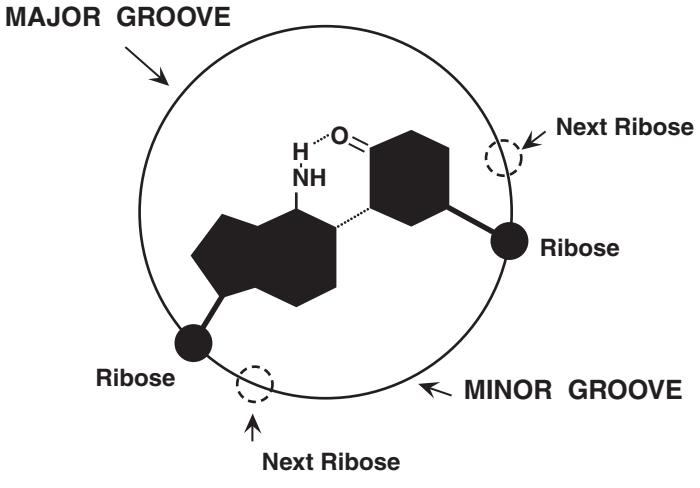


Figure 4-2
DNA has a **MAJOR AND MINOR GROOVE** because the bases attach at an angle that is not 180° apart around the axis of the helix. The major groove has more of the bases exposed. Sequence-specific interactions with DNA often occur along the major groove. Since the helix is right-handed, the next ribose shown is above the last one.

DNA STABILITY

Melting is denaturation.
Annealing is renaturation.
Hydrophobic stacking provides stability.
Intercalating agents stack between bases.

STABILITY INCREASED BY

Decreased temperature
Increased GC content (three hydrogen bonds)
Increased salt (ionic strength)

The DNA double helix is stabilized by hydrophobic interactions resulting from the individual base pairs' stacking on top of each other in the nonpolar interior of the double helix (Figs. 4-1 and 4-2). The hydrogen bonds, like the hydrogen bonds of proteins, contribute somewhat to the overall stability of the double helix but contribute greatly to the specificity for forming the correct base pairs. An incorrect base pair would not

be able to form as many hydrogen bonds as a correct base pair and would be much less stable. The hydrogen bonds of the double helix ensure that the bases are paired correctly.

The double helix can be denatured by heating (melting). Denatured DNA, like denatured protein, loses its structure, and the two strands separate. Melting of DNA is accompanied by an increase in the absorbance of UV light with a wavelength of 260 nm. This is termed *hyperchromicity* and can by used to observe DNA denaturation. DNA denaturation is reversible. When cooled under appropriate conditions, the two strands find each other, pair correctly, and reform the double helix. This is termed *annealing*.

The stability of the double helix is affected by the GC content. A GC base pair has three hydrogen bonds, while an AT base pair has only two. For this reason, sequences of DNA that are GC-rich form more stable structures than AT-rich regions.

The phosphates of the backbone, having a negative charge, tend to repel each other. This repulsion destabilizes the DNA double helix. High ionic strength (high salt concentration) shields the negatively charged phosphates from each other. This decreases the repulsion and stabilizes the double helix.

Intercalating agents are hydrophobic, planar structures that can fit between the DNA base pairs in the center of the DNA double helix. These compounds (ethidium bromide and actinomycin D are often-used examples) take up space in the helix and cause the helix to unwind a little bit by increasing the pitch. The pitch is a measure of the distance between successive base pairs.

RNA SECONDARY STRUCTURE

Stem A stretch of double-stranded RNA
Loop: A loop of RNA
Hairpin loop: A very short loop
Pseudoknot: Interaction between one secondary structure element and another part of the same RNA molecule

RNA is often depicted as a single-stranded molecule. However, in many RNA's, internal complementarity may result in secondary (and tertiary) structure in which one part of the RNA molecule forms a double-stranded region with another part of the same molecule. There are usually a number of mismatches in these structures. Names have been given to some of these structural features (Fig. 4-3).

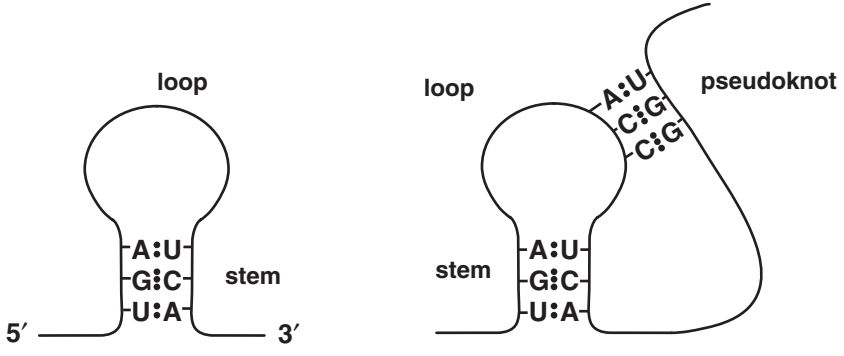


Figure 4-3 RNA Secondary Structure
A single molecule of RNA often contains segments of sequence that are complementary to each other. These complementary sequences can base-pair and form helical regions of secondary structure. Interactions between the secondary structures give RNA a significant folded, three-dimensional structure.

• C H A P T E R • 5 •

EXPRESSION OF GENETIC INFORMATION

Information Metabolism

Directions and Conventions

DNA Replication

Types of DNA Polymerase

Recombination

Regulation of Information Metabolism

Transcription

Regulation of Transcription

Translation

Use of High-Energy Phosphate Bonds During Translation

INFORMATION METABOLISM

DNA → RNA → protein → structure.

Information metabolism provides a way to store and retrieve the information that guides the development of cellular structure, communication, and regulation. Like other metabolic pathways, this process is highly regulated. Information is stored by the process of DNA replication and meiosis, in which we form our germ-line cells. These processes are limited to specific portions of the cell cycle. Information is retrieved by the transcription of DNA into RNA and the ultimate translation of the signals in the mRNA into protein.

Regulation of information metabolism occurs at each stage. The net result is that specific proteins can be made when their activities are needed.

DIRECTIONS AND CONVENTIONS

The 5′ end of the top (sense) strand is on the left.
Top strand = RNA sequence.
Decoded RNA sequence in 5′ to 3′ direction gives protein sequence in N to C direction (Fig. 5-1).

DNA is a double-stranded molecule in which the structure of the second strand can be deduced from the structure of the first strand. The second strand is complementary (A's in the first strand match T's in the

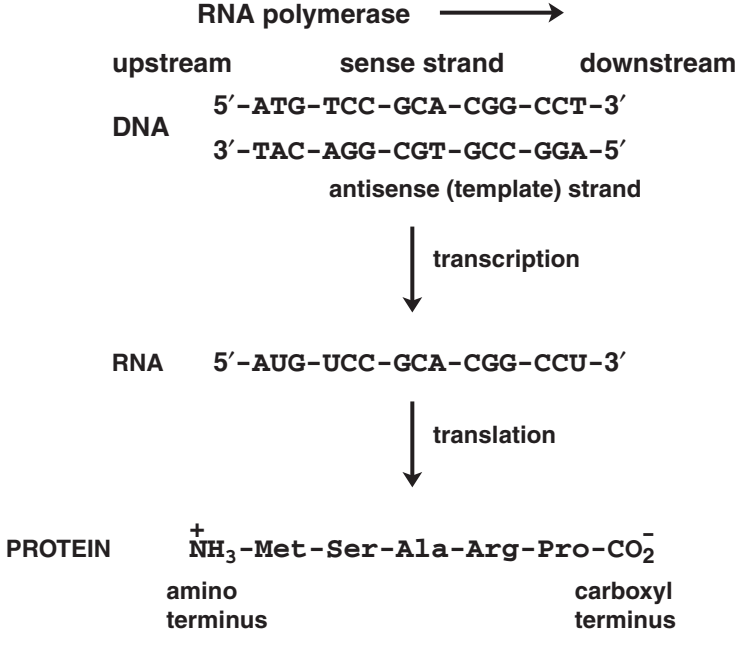


Figure 5-1
DIRECTIONALITIES in the flow of information from DNA to RNA to protein. All new DNA or RNA chains grow by adding new nucleotides to a free 3′ end so that the chain lengthens in the 5′ to 3′ direction. Protein is made by reading the RNA template starting at the 5′ end and making the protein from the N to the C terminus.

second and G's match C's) and runs in the opposite direction. This means that you don't have to write both strands to specify the structure—one will do.

When you see a sequence written with only one strand shown, the 5′ end is written on the left. Usually this sequence is also identical to that of the RNA that would be made from this piece of DNA when transcribed left to right. The DNA strand that has the same sequence (except U for T) as the RNA that is made from it is called the *sense strand*. The sense strand has the same sequence as the mRNA. The antisense strand serves as the template for RNA polymerase.

The protein synthesis machinery reads the RNA template starting from the 5′ end (the end made first) and makes proteins beginning with the amino terminus. These directionalities are set up so that in prokaryotes, protein synthesis can begin even before the RNA synthesis is complete. Simultaneous transcription-translation can't happen in eukaryotic cells because the nuclear membrane separates the ribosome from the nucleus.

When writing protein sequences, you write the amino terminus on the left. If you have to use the genetic code tables to figure out a protein sequence from the DNA sequence, it is not necessary to write down the complementary RNA sequence first; it's the same as that of the sense strand (the one on top) with the Ts replaced by Us.

DNA REPLICATION

Origin is the beginning.
New chains grow **5′ to 3′**.
Bidirectional synthesis.
Leading strand = continuous synthesis.
Lagging strand = discontinuous synthesis.
Order of action:
Unwinding proteins.
Single-strand binding proteins.
Primase makes RNA primer.
DNA polymerase makes DNA.
RNAse H removes RNA primer.
DNA polymerase fills in gaps.
DNA ligase joins gaps.

Keeping your direction in mind is never a bad idea, but with replication, transcription, and translation it's absolutely essential—these types of questions are just too easy to write, and you'll see them for certain

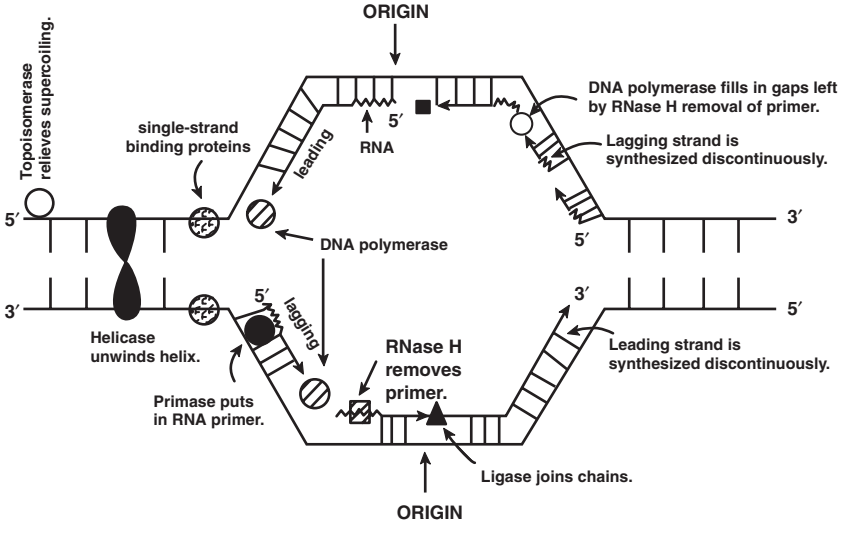


Figure 5-2
DNA REPLICATION begins at a defined origin, is bidirectional, and is semiconservative (one new chain, one old chain in daughter DNA), and chain growth occurs in the 5′ to 3′ direction.

(Fig. 5-2).

All DNA polymerases are single-minded—they can do it only one way. Each dNTP (deoxynucleoside triphosphate) is added to the 3′-OH group of the growing chain so that all chains grow from the 5′ end in the dirction 5′ to 3′. Since strands are antiparallel, the template strand is read in the 3′ to 5′ direction. This is true of both DNA and RNA synthesis. Most of what you need to know about DNA replication can be summarized in a single picture.

To remember the order in which things happen, you must understand the structure of chromosomal DNA, and directions. Then it's just a matter of developing a mechanical picture of how things must be done in order to get access to the information and make a copy. Chromosomal DNA is normally packaged around histones. At unique DNA sites called *origins of replication*, unwinding proteins (helicases) unwind the helix in an ATP-dependant manner. Single-strand binding proteins then bind to and stabilize the single-stranded and DNA regions to keep them single-stranded.

In addition to a template (a DNA sequence that specifies the order in which the nucleotides will be jointed), DNA polymerase requires a primer. A primer is a short piece of DNA or RNA that is complemen-

tary to the template and has a free 3′ end onto which the growing strand can be elongated. DNA polymerase can't prime itself—it must have a 3′ end to get started. These primers are actually RNA. A special RNA polymerase (primase) puts them in. Later the RNA primer is removed (by RNAse H in eukaryotes and DNA polymerase I in prokaryotes), and the gaps are filled in by DNA polymerase. This may be a mechanism to enhance the fidelity of DNA replication.

DNA replication proceeds in both directions from the replication origin (bidirectional), which means you need to form two sets of replication complexes. Each replication complex moves away from the origin (in opposite directions), unwinding and replicating both strands at each replication fork.

The strands of DNA are wound around each other like the strands of a rope. As the strands are pulled apart during the movement of a replication fork, this unwinding tends to make the ends of the DNA turn (imagine unwinding the strands of a rope). Since the DNA is very long, twisted, and wrapped around histones, the DNA really can't turn—its ends are rather tied down. The unwinding of one region around the replication forks introduces strain into the regions of DNA that are still double-stranded, tending to make them wind tighter. This is called *supercoiling* of the DNA. Proteins (topoisomerases) are present to relieve the strain associated with helix unwinding by nicking and rejoining the DNA in the double-stranded regions.

At each replication fork there are two DNA polymerase complexes. As the double-stranded DNA is unwound, two template strands are exposed. One of the templates can be replicated in a continuous fashion by DNA polymerase since a continuous synthesis of new strands can occur in the 5′ to 3′ direction as the template strand is exposed. Since all growing chains must be synthesized in the 5′ to 3′ direction, the lagging chain must be continuously reinitiated as new template is exposed. The lagging strand is then synthesized discontinuously, in pieces that must be joined together later.

After synthesis, the RNA primers must be removed, gaps filled in, and the strands joined to give a linear, duplex DNA. New histones are added to the lagging strand (which is now a duplex) while the old histones remain with the leading strand. As the smoke slowly clears, we have a copy of the original DNA.

Since all DNA polymerases require a primer and work only in the 5′ to 3′ direction, there's a problem with replicating the 5′ ends of the DNA. If an RNA primer has to be laid down and later removed, these ends can't get replicated. For bacteria with a circular genome, this isn't a problem. Eukaryotes have specialized structures called *telomeres* at the

ends of the chromosome to solve this problem. The exact details aren't known, but telomeres at the ends of each chromosome consist of a larger number (3000 to 12,000 base pairs) of a tandem (side by side) repeat of a G-rich sequence, $(TTAGGG)_n$, in human DNA. A specialized enzyme, telomerase, that also contains an RNA cofactor is responsible for replication of at least one strand of these telomeric sequences.

TYPES OF DNA POLYMERASE

Polymerize in 5′-3′ direction	
Proofread (check back for mistakes and remove them) exonuclease	$3' \rightarrow 5'$
Remove RNA primer or remove damaged DNA exonuclease	$5' \rightarrow 3'$

There's not just one DNA polymerase; there's a whole army. DNA replication actually occurs in large complexes containing many proteins and sometimes many polymerases. In eukaryotic cells we have to replicate both mitochondrial and nuclear DNA, and there are specific DNA polymerases for each. In addition to DNA replication, you have to make new DNA when you repair. Consequently, the function may be specialized for repair or replication. There can also be specialization for making the leading or lagging strand. Some of the activities of DNA polymerases from eukaryotes and prokaryotes are shown in the table on the next page.

DNA polymerases all synthesize new DNA using a template and make the new DNA in a $5' \rightarrow 3'$ direction (new nucleotides are added to the 3′ end). In addition to making DNA, some of the DNA polymerases can also hydrolyze it. An exonuclease works only on the ends of the DNA (or RNA), and like everything else about DNA, exonuclease activity has a direction too. The $3' \rightarrow 5'$ exonuclease activity removes nucleotides from the 3′ end (by hydrolyzing the phosophodiester bond). Since the chain grows in the $5' \rightarrow 3'$ direction, polymerases that have a $3' \rightarrow 5'$ exonuclease activity can look back over their work and remove what they just put in if it was wrong. This is the only direction that proofreading will work. The $5' \rightarrow 3'$ exonuclease activity looks forward in the same direction as the new chain is growing. Therefore, it can only remove things that it finds in front of it (such as RNA primers on the lagging strand).

DNA POLYMERASES FROM PROKARYOTES AND EUKARYOTES

DNA POLY-MERASE	SOURCE	$3' \rightarrow 5'$ EXONUCLEASE (PROOFREADING)	$5' \rightarrow 3'$ EXONUCLEASE (EXCISION)	ROLE
I	Prokaryotes	Yes	Yes	Gap repair RNA primer removal
II	Prokaryotes	Yes	No	Repair
III	Prokaryotes	Yes	No	Replication
α	Eukaryotes	No	No	Nuclear replication Continuous (lagging) strand synthesis
β	Eukaryotes	No	No	Nuclear repair
γ	Eukaryotes	Yes	No	Mitochondrial replication
δ	Eukaryotes	Yes	No	Nuclear replication Continuous (leading) strand replication
ε	Eukaryotes	Yes	No	Nuclear repair

RECOMBINATION

Recombination rearranges genetic information by breaking and joining DNA.

Homologous: Two DNA sequences that are very similar or identical. Homologous recombination occurs between two genes that have very similar or identical sequences.

Nonhomologous: Two DNA sequences that are very different. Nonhomologous recombination can occur between two unrelated genes.

Aligned: Recombination occurs between the same genes and at the same location within each gene. Gene order is not altered.

Nonaligned: Recombination occurs between two different genes. The order of genes is altered by nonaligned recombination.

There are lots of ways of moving genetic information around. All contribute to genetic diversity in the population. The result of recombination can be pictured as breaking two DNA strands into two pieces, swapping the ends, and rejoining. At the level of the individual strands, it's a little more complicated, but for our purposes it's good enough.

Recombination can occur in regions of sequence homology. If these homologous regions correspond to the same position in the same gene, this is an aligned recombination (also called "recombination with equal crossing over"). If all the genes on the two chromosomes are the same, then recombination won't have any affect. But if one of the genes contains a mutation, recombination results in two new chromosomal structures in which different genes are linked to the site of the mutation. Note that in recombination between two chromosomes, no information is actually lost—all the DNA ends up somewhere. However, each offspring receives only one of the two new chromosomes (Fig. 5-3).

If recombination occurs between two regions of homology that are in different genes (unaligned recombination or unequal crossing over), individual genes can be duplicated or lost in the resulting daughter DNA. A good example is the globin gene family. There are several α- and β-globin genes that share some sequence homology. If recombination occurs between two similar (but not identical) genes, the resulting DNA will have been rearranged so that one progeny is a gene or two short while the other offspring has a few too many. Again, no DNA has actually been lost; it's just been redistributed between offspring (Fig. 5-4).

Gene deletion may cause genetic disease if the gene product is essential, and gene duplication, which creates an extra copy of the gene, can

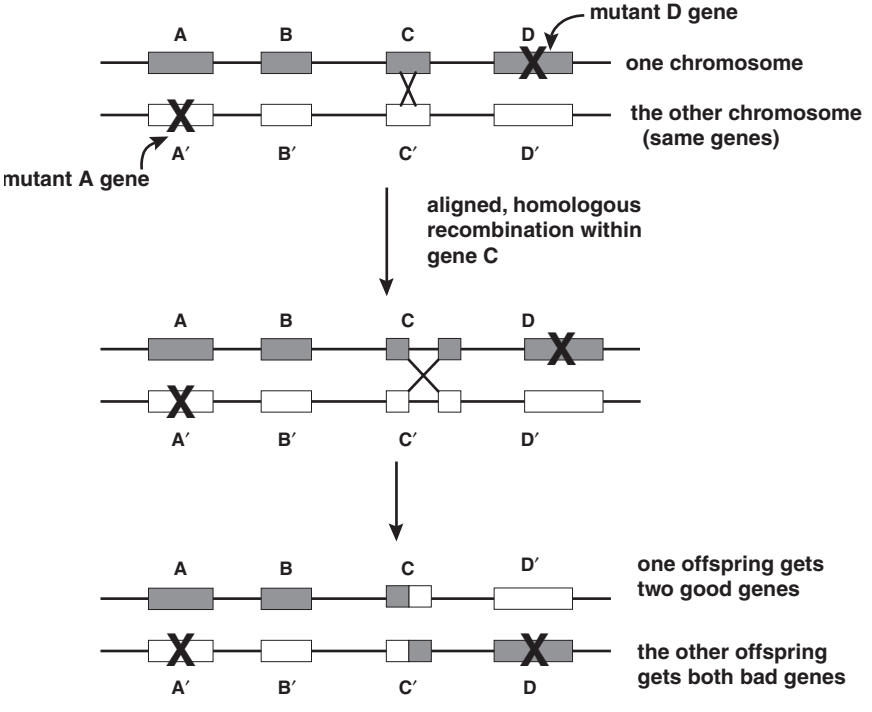


Figure 5-3
ALIGNED, HOMOLOGOUS RECOMBINATION swaps information between the same genes on two copies of the same chromosome. Genes are not lost or duplicated, nor is their order changed. Different combination of specific alleles (copies of same gene) does occur.

be used to help create new genes by mutation. If you've got two copies of a gene, you can afford to fool around changing one of them, and maybe you'll invent a new and improved gene in the process.

During the generation of genes that direct the synthesis of antibody molecules, recombination within the same chromosome is used to bring distant segments of the gene together and to generate the diversity of recognition sites that allow different antibodies to recognize different antigens. Immunoglobulins consist of two copies of a light chain and two copies of a heavy chain. The heavy and light chains combine to generate the antigen-recognition site. The genes for the different parts of the light chain are arranged in three different clusters: a large number of gene segments for the variable regions of the light chains, a series of joining genes (J), and the constant region. A given variable region is joined to the constant region by a nonaligned recombination that deletes the DNA

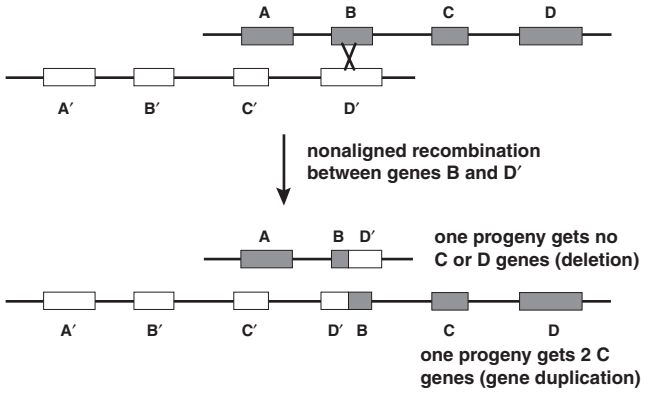


Figure 5-4 Nonaligned Homologous Recombination
Genes may be duplicated or deleted when recombination occurs between two different genes on the two copies of the same chromosome. Recombination can occur between two regions of two different genes with some sequence homology.

between the two points of recombination. A similar mechanism is used in making the heavy-chain gene [except there's another type of segment (D) and a few more types of constant regions]. These genetic rearrangements within the same piece of DNA actually cause DNA to be lost. Once the recombination is done it's done, and this cell and its offspring are committed to producing one specific light-chain protein. If the antibody made by a specific cell actually recognizes something foreign, the cell is saved and copied; if not, the cell dies. The large number of different antibody-recognition sites is made possible by the random joining of one of the many variable (V) segments to one of the joining segments by recombination (Fig. 5-5 and 5-6).

REGULATION OF INFORMATION METABOLISM

Inducible: Genes turned on by the presence of a substrate for a catabolic (degradative) pathway.

Repressible: Genes turned off by the presence of a product of a biosynthetic pathway.

Positive regulators (enhancers): Turn on transcription when a specific effector protein binds to a specific enhancer sequence in the DNA.

Negative regulators (repressors): Turn off transcription when a specific effector protein binds to a specific repressor sequence in the DNA.

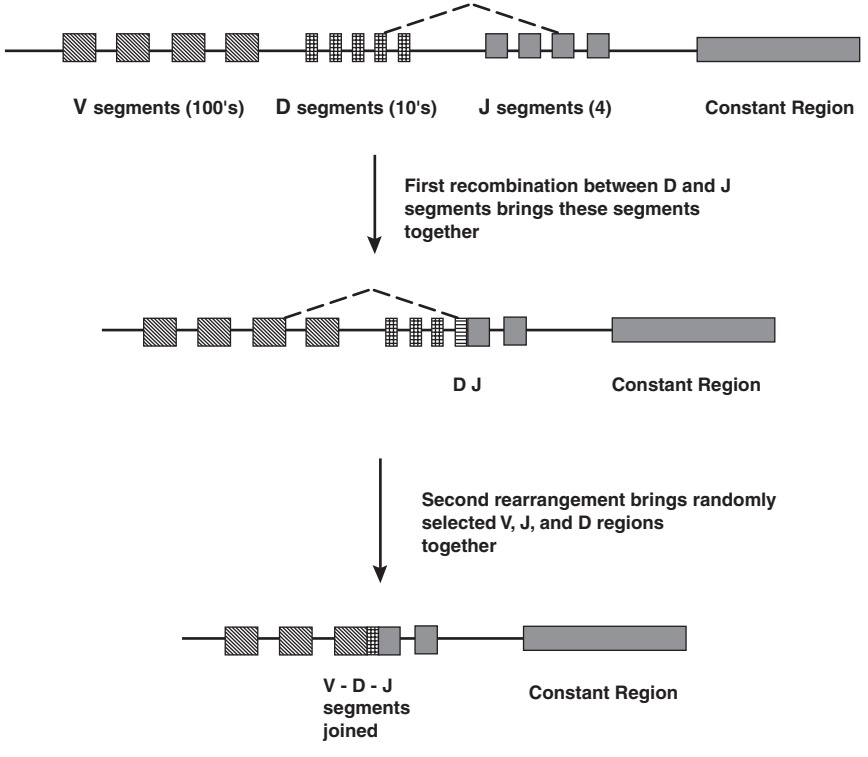

V segments (100's)
D segments (10's)
J segments (4)
Constant Region
First recombination between D and J segments brings these segments together
D J
Constant Region
Second rearrangement brings randomly selected V, J, and D regions together
V - D - J segments joined
Constant Region

Figure 5-5 Recombination in Immunoglobulin Genes
Recombination is used to randomly combine a variable and two joining segments of the immunoglobulin heavy-chain genes. These rearrangements generate a new DNA that codes for an immunoglobulin heavy chain with a single antigenic specificity. A later recombination joins the selected VDJ region to an appropriate constant-gene segment. Similar rearrangements are used to generate the light chain.

One way to control how much of something a cell uses or makes is to control the levels of the enzymes that are required to metabolize it (Fig. 5-7). Whether or not transcription happens is controlled by the binding of specific proteins to the DNA. When they bind to DNA, these proteins can either help or hinder the transcription process. *Positive* and *negative* refer only to the effect a protein has when it binds to the DNA. A positive effect is when the protein binds to the DNA and turns on the transcription of the gene. A negative effect is when the binding of the protein to the DNA turns off transcription.

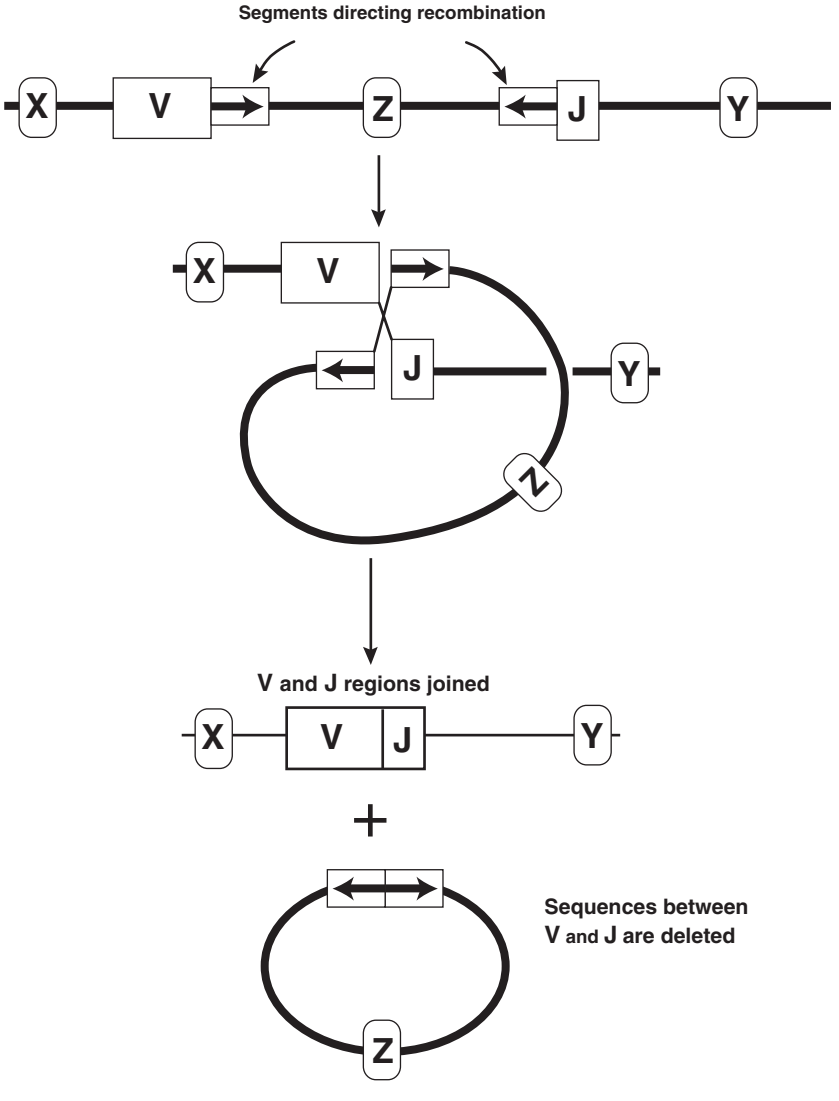


Figure 5-6
The **RECOMBINATION THAT JOINS** the V, D, and J gene segments of the immunoglobulin heavy chain occurs between specific regions that precede and follow the V, D, and J regions. Intragene recombination between these regions results in deletion of the intervening DNA and joining of the two segments.

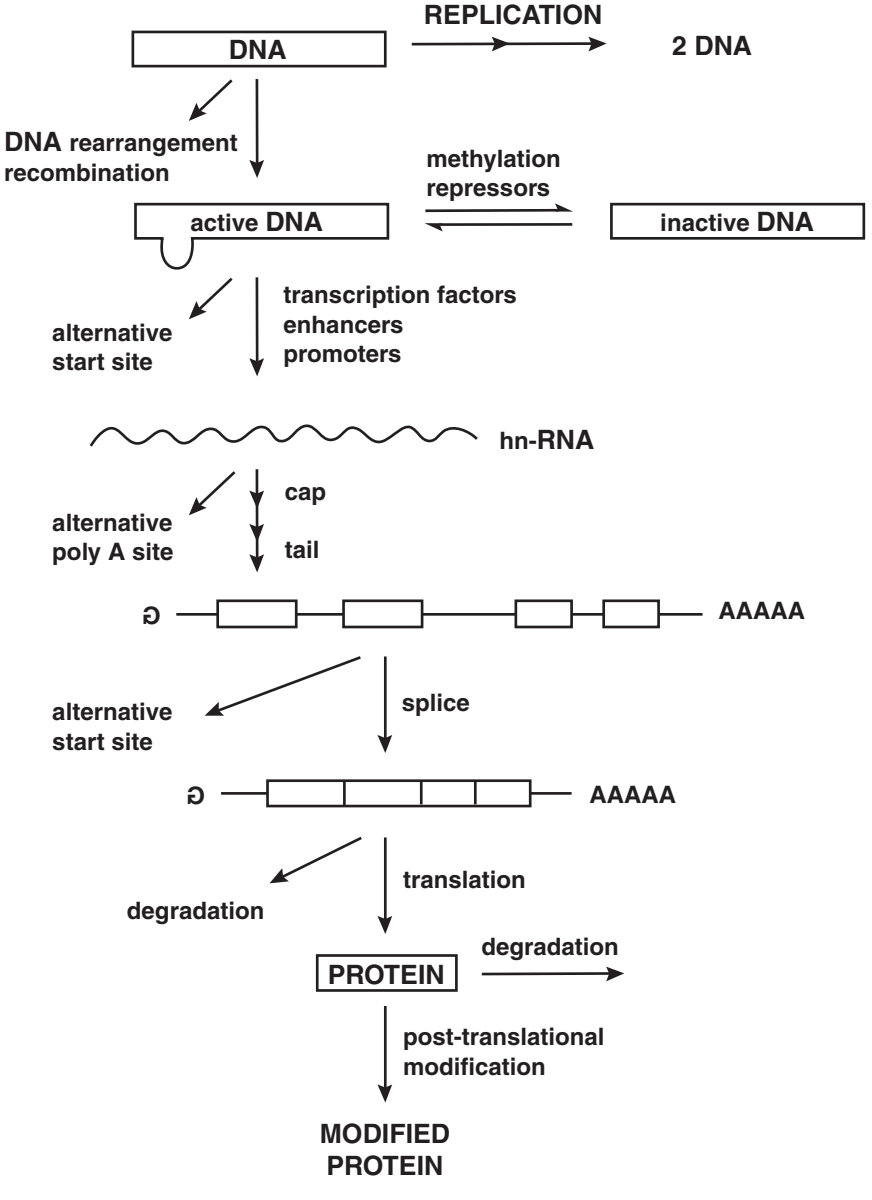


Figure 5-7
REGULATION OF INFORMATION FLOW from DNA to RNA to protein. Every aspect of the process is controlled, and alternatives are available that affect which information is expressed at what time.

Inducible or *repressible* refers to the type of response the system makes to the presence of a metabolite. Inducible genes are turned on when they sense the presence of a metabolite. Usually, this means that the metabolite is a precursor of something the cell needs. If the precusor is present, inducible genes are turned on to metabolize it. Repressible genes are turned off by the presence of a metabolite. These genes are usually involved in the synthesis of the metabolite. If the cell has enough of the metabolite, the pathway is turned off (repressed). If the metabolite is not present, the pathway is turned on.

Operons are clusters of genes located next to each other. The proteins they make are usually required at the same time and for the same overall function. The transcription of genes in an operon is regulated by a common regulatory site(s) on the DNA. Inducible or repressible operons may be created by either positive or negative regulatory elements. The concepts of inducible/repressible and positive/negative control are related but independent. There are then two possibilities for regulation of inducible pathways. If a regulatory protein binds to DNA when it senses the metabolite and then activates transcription, this is a positive way of inducing RNA synthesis. An inducible gene can also function by negative regulation. If a regulatory protein binds to DNA and shuts off transcription when the metabolite is absent, and the protein is released from the DNA when it binds the metabolite, the net effect is the same (increased transcription). Inducible genes can be regulated by either positive or negative effectors. There are also two ways to have repressible genes using positive and negative regulation.

TRANSCRIPTION

RNA polymerase uses the antisense strand of DNA as a template.
RNA is synthesized in the 5′ to 3′ direction.
The 5′ end is capped with inverted 7-methyl-G.
Poly(A) tail is added.
Introns are spliced out and exons joined.
RNA is exported from the nucleus.
RNA is translated into protein.
RNA is degraded.

RNA polymerase makes a copy of the sense strand of the DNA using the antisense strand as a template (Fig. 5-8). The sequence of the primary transcript is the same as that of the sense strand of the DNA. RNA polymerase needs no primer—only a template. Either of the two DNA strands can serve as the template strand. Which DNA strand is used as the tem-

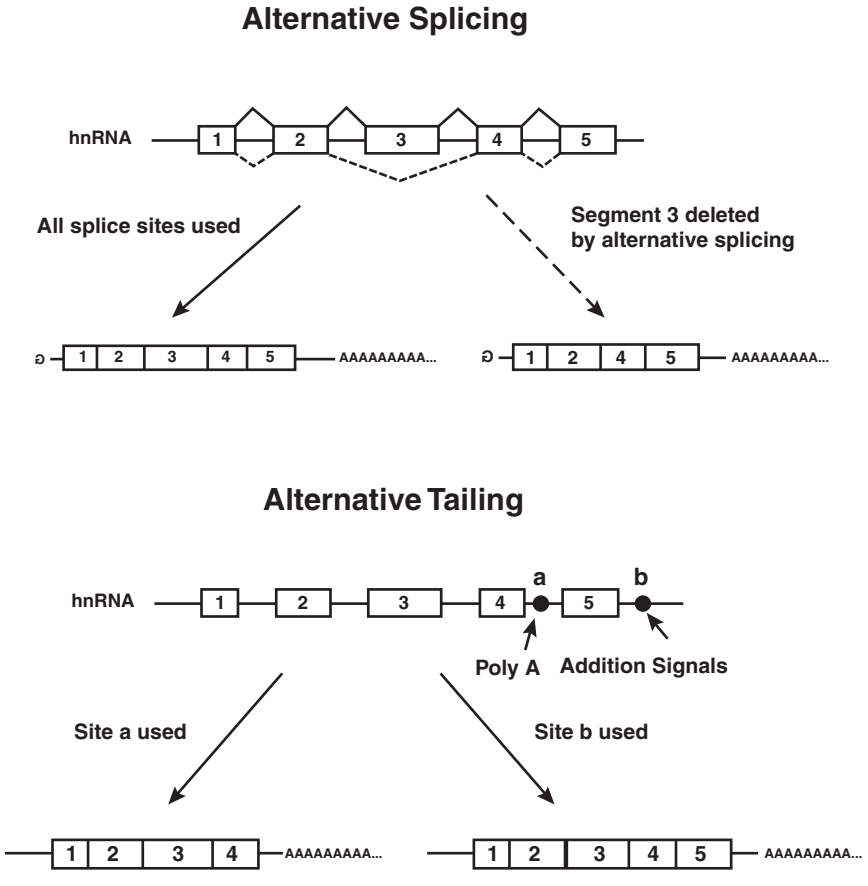


Figure 5-8
ALTERNATIVE SPLICING OR ALTERNATIVE USE OF MULTIPLE POLY(A) SITES can be used to generate an RNA (and protein) that is missing a portion of the information present in the gene. These mechanisms are useful in generating two proteins from the same gene. A soluble and a membrane-bound form of the same protein can be made from the same RNA by simply splicing out or skipping the membrane-anchor sequences during RNA processing.

plate depends on the direction in which the gene is transcribed. Within the genome, some genes are transcribed left to right while other genes in the same chromosome are transcribed right to left. The direction depends on which strand actually contains the signals that form the binding site for RNA polymerase (the *promoter*). Regardless of the direction of transcription, the new RNA strand is synthesized in the 5′ to 3′ direction and the antisense strand is read in the 3′ to 5′ direction.

After synthesis, the primary transcript (hnRNA—for *heterogeneous nuclear*) is capped on the 5′ end with an inverted G residue. The G is not actually backward or inverted; the *inverted* refers to the fact that the 5′ end is capped by forming a phosphate ester between the 5′ end of the DNA and the 5′-triphosphate of 7-methyl-GTP rather than the normal 5′—3′ bond. This stabilizes the message against degradation from exonucleases and provides a feature that is recognized by the ribosome. Next the message is tailed on the 3′ end with a stretch of A's of variable length (100 to 200 nucleotides). There is not a corresponding set of T's in the DNA template. Poly(A) addition requires a sequence (AAUAAA) in the RNA that helps direct the cleavage of the transcript and the addition of the poly(A) tail by poly(A) polymerase, an RNA polymerase that does not use a template.

To make mRNA, the primary transcript must be spliced to bring the protein-coding sequences (exons) together and to remove the intervening sequences (introns). The splice signals consist of a 5′ and a 3′ set of sequences that are always found at splice junctions. However, this is generally believed to provide too little information to recognize a splice site specifically and correctly. Some sequences in the intron are also important.

After synthesis, the mRNA exits the nucleus through a nuclear pore and proceeds to the ribosome for translation into protein. Competing with export and translation is the process of message degradation by cellular ribonucleases. The competition between degradation and translation provides another mechanism to regulate the levels of individual messages.

REGULATION OF TRANSCRIPTION

Template availability
Methylation
Exposure of DNA
Attraction for RNA polymerase
Promoter: TATA, CAT
Transcription factors
Alternative Poly(A) tailing
Alternative splicing
Alternative translation start

As goes RNA, so goes protein. Higher levels of mRNA are associated with higher levels of the encoded protein. There is a definite need to regulate the amounts of different proteins during development, differ-

entiation, and metabolism, so there are a lot of controls on the synthesis and degradation of RNA. Control of some sort is exerted at virtually every step of mRNA synthesis.

• **TEMPLATE AVAILABILITY:** The DNA template must be available. This may be controlled by DNA methylation, histone arrangement on the DNA, and interactions of the DNA with the nuclear matrix (a catch phrase for a bunch of protein that's always found in the nucleus).

• **ATTRACTION FOR RNA POLYMERASE:** RNA polymerase binds to DNA at specific sites (called *promoters*) to initiate transcription. A major site is the TATA box (named for the consensus sequence[1] that is often found there) that is located about 25 nucleotides upstream (on the 5′ side) of the translation start site. Not all genes have TATA boxes, and not all promoters have the same efficiency—some are better than others. For many genes, there are other DNA sequences that regulate transcription by binding specific proteins (transcription factors). These transcription factors (enhancers and repressors) may help or hinder transcription. The transcription factor binding sites may be located at varying distances from the transcription start site, and a given promoter region may be affected by more than one of these enhancer or repressor sites. The binding of transcription factors to a specific site on the DNA regulates the transcription by enhancing or inhibiting the formation of the complex structure that is required to initiate transcription. The rules of this regulatory game are not totally sorted out. Transcription factor binding is important in the tissue-specific expression of an mRNA, the regulation of expression during development, and who knows what else.

Eukaryotes have a specific signal for termination of transcription; however, prokaryotes seem to have lost this mechanism. Once started, RNA polymerase keeps going, making a primary transcript [pre-mRNA or hnRNA (for *heterogeneous nuclear*)] until far past the end of the final mRNA message.

• **POLY(A) TAILING:** Most RNAs that code for protein are poly(A)-tailed. Having a poly(A) tail helps direct the RNA to the cytoplasm and may increase the stability of the message. One mechanism of regulation of transcription involves the alternative use of different poly(A) addition sites. Some genes have more than one poly(A) addition signal. Which signal is used can depend on the type of cell or the stage of development,

[1] Consenus sequences are sequences that agree with each other more or less. Often there are a few differences found among the different genes that might have a given consensus sequence. It can be viewed as an "average" sequence.

or it can be used to make two kinds of protein from the same message. Alternative poly(A) addition site usage has the same effect as alternative splicing, except that it deletes terminal exons from the message and creates proteins with different COOH-terminal sequences.

• **ALTERNATIVE SPLICING:** Most primary transcripts must by spliced to connect the proper exons. Some genes contain alternative splice sites that can be used to bring two different exons together and make different gene products depending on need. Alternative splicing changes the sequence of the actual protein that's made. It's useful for making two proteins that share a common sequence. For example, during immunoglobulin synthesis, IgM is made in two forms. One has a membrane-spanning domain so that the IgM with its antigen-recognition site is anchored to the cell plasma membrane. The other form simply lacks the membrane anchor and is secreted in a soluble form. These two forms of the IgM molecule are generated by using alternative splice sites. If the membrane-spanning region is spliced out, the protein loses the ability to bind to the membrane.

• **ALTERNATIVE START SITES:** If all of the above didn't provide enough diversity, some messages contain two AUG initiation codons separated by some intervening information. Protein synthesis can initiate at either site. This is useful for making proteins with or without NH_2- terminal signal sequences.

TRANSLATION

Translation reads the RNA template in the 5′ to 3′ direction.
The amino terminus is synthesized first.
AUG = start = Met in eukaryotes and fMet in prokaryotes.

Protein synthesis (translation) is a two-component system—a system for activating individual amino acids into a chemically reactive form and a system that directs exactly which amino acid is to be used when (Fig. 5-9).

Activation of individual amino acids occurs in the synthesis of aminoacyl tRNA. This process burns two ATP equivalents (forms pyrophosphate and AMP) and connects a specific amino acid to a specific tRNA.

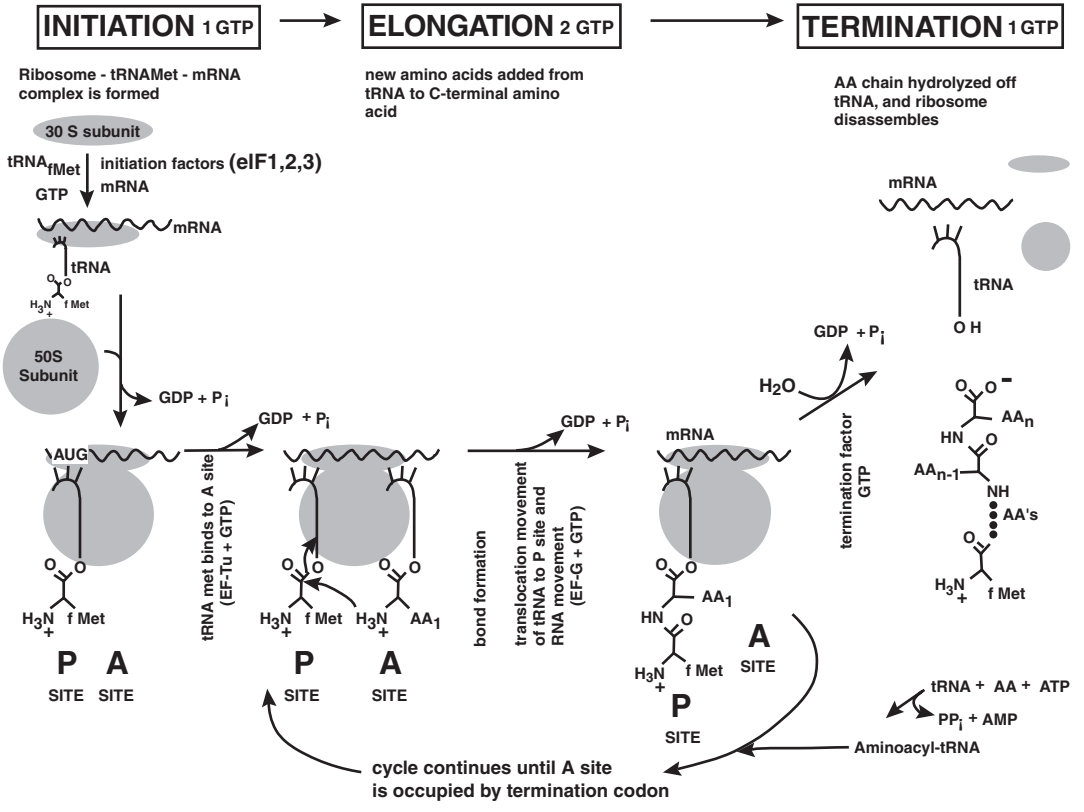


Figure 5-9 Translation

$$\text{tRNA}_{\text{Phe}}\text{—3′—CCA—OH} \quad + \quad {}^{+}\text{NH}_3\text{—Phe—CO}_2^{-}$$

$$\downarrow$$

$$\underset{\text{aminoacyl-tRNA}}{\text{tRNA}_{\text{Phe}}\text{—3′—CCA—O—CO—Phe—NH}_3^{+}} + \text{AMP} + \text{PP}_{\text{i}}$$

The tRNA synthetases may provide a check to make sure that the correct amino acid has been attached to the correct tRNA. If an incorrect amino acid is attached to the tRNA, it will be incorporated into the protein at the position specified by the identity of the tRNA. At least some of the aminoacyl tRNA synthetases have a "proofreading" function that hydrolyzes any incorrect aminoacyl tRNAs (for example, a Val residue attached to an Ile tRNA).

Each tRNA has a different sequence at the anticodon loop that is complementary to the codon sequence in the RNA. The recognition structure that is formed is analogous to double-stranded, antiparallel DNA. If the codon (in the RNA) is GCA (written 5′ to 3′), the anticodon loop in the tRNA would have the sequence UGC (again written to 5′ to 3′).

There are 64 different three-letter codons, but we don't have to have 64 different tRNA molecules. Some of the anticodon loops of some of the tRNAs can recognize (bind to) more than one condon in the mRNA. The anticodon loops of the various tRNAs may also contain modified bases that can read (pair with) multiple normal bases in the RNA. This turns out to be the reason for the "wobble hypothesis," in which the first two letters of a codon are more significant than the last letter. Look in a codon table and you'll see that changing the last base in a codon often doesn't change the identity of the amino acid. A tRNA that could recognize any base in codon position 3 would translate all four codons as the same amino acid. If you've actually bothered to look over a codon table, you realize that it's not quite so simple. Some amino acids have single codons (such as AUG for Met), some amino acids have only two codons, and some have four.

After attachment of amino acids to tRNA, the amino acids are assembled beginning with the amino terminus and proceeding in the direction of the carboxy terminus. The ribosome is the machinery that translates the mRNA into protein. The ribosome is a very complex protein that contains ribosomal RNA as a functional and structural component. The ribosome assembles around the mRNA, and the cap and other signals allow alignment of the mRNA into the correct position. The initial assembly of the mRNA into the ribosome requires association of the small ribosomal subunit with an initiator tRNA (Met or fMet). "Small" is a misstatement, because the small ribosomal subunit is a large, complex assembly of numerous smaller proteins—it's just smaller than the

large subunit. This association requires a specific initiation factor and the hydrolysis of GTP. The reactions of translation are driven by the hydrolysis of GTP, not ATP. Throughout the process, elongation factors come and go, GTP gets hydrolyzed, and finally the completed protein is released from the ribosome.

Several key concepts are worth remembering. GTP is used as an energy source for translation, but ATP is used to form the aminoacyl-tRNA. The ribosome effectively has two kinds of tRNA binding sites. Only tRNAMet can bind to the P (for *peptide*) site, and this only occurs during the initial formation of the functional ribosome (initiation). All other aminoacyl-tRNAs enter at the A (for *amino acid*) binding site. After formation of the peptide bond (this doesn't require GTP hydrolysis), the tRNA with the growing peptide attached is moved (translocated) to the other site (this does require GTP hydrolysis).

USE OF HIGH-ENERGY PHOSPHATE BONDS DURING TRANSLATION

Four high-energy phosphates are used for each amino acid that is incorporated into a protein.

How many high-energy phosphate bonds are required for the synthesis of a protein from amino acids during translation?

ENERGY REQUIREMENTS FOR THE SYNTHESIS OF A 100-RESIDUE PROTEIN:

100 aminoacyl-tRNAs	(2 P each)	200
Initiation complex	(1 P each)	1
99 tRNAs binding to A site	(1 P each)	99
99 peptide bonds	(0 P each)	0
99 translocations (A to P)	(1 P each)	99
1 termination (hydrolysis)	(1 P each)	1
Total per 100 amino acids		400

Bottom line: 4 high-energy phosphates used per amino acid incorported into a protein.

• CHAPTER • 6 •

RECOMBINANT-DNA METHODOLOGY

•

Restriction Analysis

Gels and Electrophoresis

Blotting

Restriction Fragment-Length Polymorphism

Cloning

Sequencing

Mutagenesis

Polymerase Chain Reaction

• • • • • • • • • • • •

Much of what we know about the regulation of information flow (gene expression) has been made possible by the ability to manipulate the structures of DNA, RNA, and proteins and see how this affects their function. The ability to manipulate DNA (recombinant-DNA methods) has generated a new language filled with strange-sounding acronyms that are easy to understand if you know what they mean but impossible to understand if you don't. Understand?

RESTRICTION ANALYSIS

Restriction enzymes are sequence-specific endonucleases that cut double-stranded DNA at specific sites.

Most useful restriction enzymes cut DNA at specific recognition sites, usually four to six nucleotides in length. There can be multiple restriction sites for a single endonuclease within a given piece of DNA, there can be only one (a unique restriction site), or there can be none. It all depends on the sequence of the specific piece of DNA in question.

Cutting with restriction endonucleases is very useful for moving specific pieces of DNA around from place to place. It's also a useful way to name pieces of DNA. For example, a piece of DNA that is cut from a bigger piece of DNA is often named by size and given a surname that corresponds to the two restriction enzymes that did the cutting—the 0.3-kb EcoRI-BamHI fragment. Restriction enzymes themselves are named for the bacterial strains from which they were initially isolated.

A restriction map shows the location of restriction sites in a given DNA sequence.

When digested with two (or more) restriction enzymes at the same time, most large pieces of DNA give a specific pattern of different-sized DNA fragments depending on the distance separating the different cleavage sites. These different fragments can then be separated by size on an agarose gel. By working backward (biochemists are good at this) from the sizes of the different DNA fragments, it is possible to construct a map that locates the different restriction sites along a given piece of DNA. For example, if we cut the 3.6-kb piece of DNA in Fig. 6-1 with SmaI, we would see two bands on the agarose gel—1.9 and 1.7 kb. This would tell us that the SmaI site is very near the middle of the fragment. We could start constructing our map by putting the 1.7-kb fragment on the left side or the right side—it doesn't matter, and we can't know which is right (or left). In Fig. 6-1, the DNA is arbitrarily put down with the smaller fragment on the right. If we cut with BamHI, we get fragments that are 0.9 and 2.7 kb. Again we wouldn't know whether to put the BamHI site on the right or left of the map, but here it does matter because we already have the SmaI site on the map. The way to decide where to put the BamHI site is to cut with both BamHI and SmaI. Let's say that you get fragments of 0.9, 1.0, and 1.7 kb. Notice that the 1.7-kb fragment is the same size as in the digest with SmaI alone. This tells you that the BamHI site is in the 1.9-kb SmaI fragment, that is, on the left side of our map. By going through this kind of reasoning over and over, it is possible to construct a map of restriction sites along your piece of DNA.

Restriction enzymes that recognize a specific sequence of five nucleotides should cut the DNA, on average, every 4^5 base pairs (this is the frequency with which a given sequence of five nucleotides would occur by chance), or every 1024 base pairs. As a result, the average size

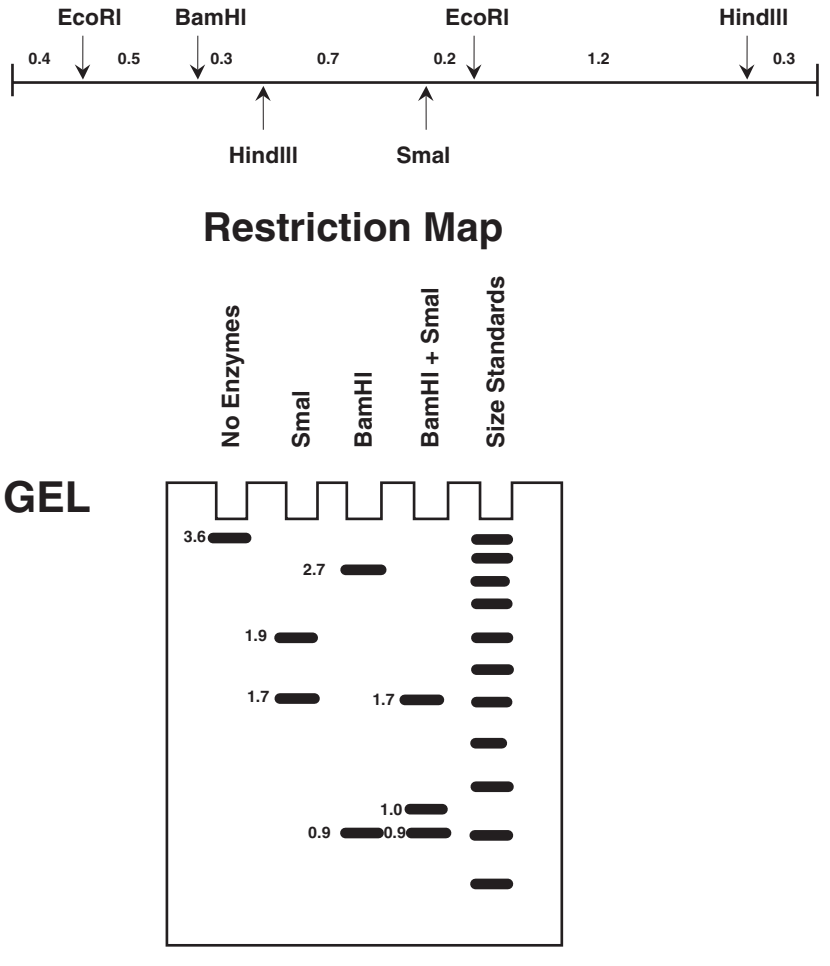


Figure 6-1
A **RESTRICTION MAP** is used to identify and locate specific restriction sites on a given piece of DNA. The size of a fragment is determined by running the restriction digest on an agarose gel. Fragments separate by size—the smaller ones move farther toward the bottom of the gel.

of most restriction fragments is near this length. Fortunately, they are not exactly this length, or they wouldn't be very useful.

The sequence of DNA recognized by a specific restriction endonuclease is often palindromic. A *palindrome* is something that reads the same way backward and forward (Fig. 6-2). The sequence of the bottom strand read in the 5′ to 3′ direction is the same as that of the top strand read in the 5′ to 3′ direction. The usual analogy for a verbal palindrome is a sentence that reads the same way backward and forward. "Madam, I'm Adam" is the usual example. It's not exactly the same way for DNA palindromes. The top strand does not read the same from the left as from the right; the top strand read from left to right is the same as the *bottom* strand read from right to left.

BamHI and other restriction endonucleases are dimeric enzymes that bind to a DNA palindrome and cut both strands at equivalent positions. The cut leaves two ends with complementary overhangs that will

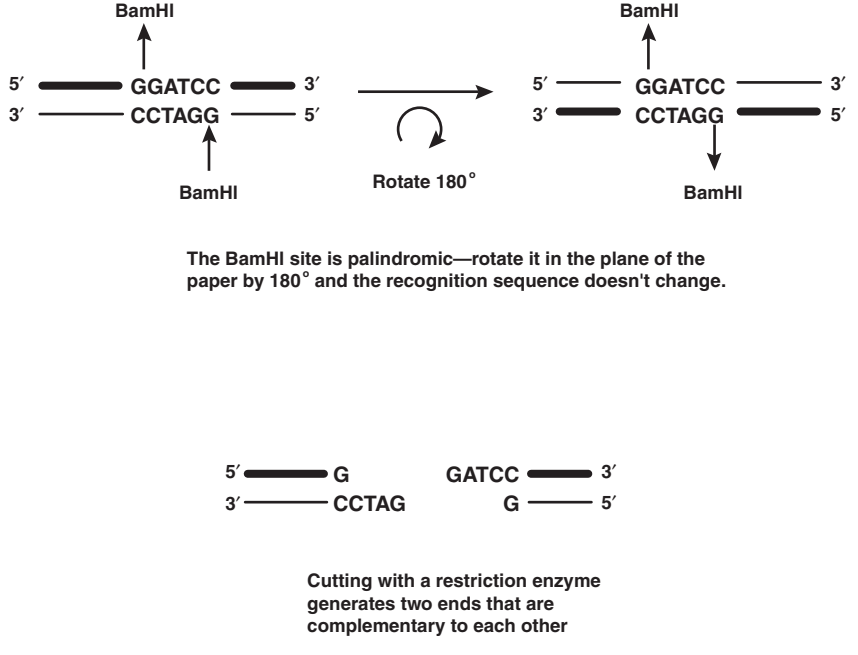

BamHI
5′ GGATCC 3′
3′ CCTAGG 5′
BamHI
Rotate 180°
BamHI
5′ GGATCC 3′
3′ CCTAGG 5′
BamHI
The BamHI site is palindromic—rotate it in the plane of the paper by 180° and the recognition sequence doesn't change.
5′ G
3′ CCTAG
GATCC 3′
G 5′
Cutting with a restriction enzyme generates two ends that are complementary to each other

Figure 6-2
Useful **RESTRICTION ENZYMES** cleave DNA at symmetrical sites, leaving ends that are complementary.

hybridize to each other. The two ends can be rejoined later, or the fragment can be combined with other pieces of DNA cut with the same restriction endonuclease.

There can be a problem when using a single endonuclease to cut and rejoin different DNA fragments. The DNA fragments that result from cutting with a single restriction enzyme are the same at the two ends.[1] They can (and do) recombine with other pieces of DNA cut with the same restriction enzyme in either of two orientations—forward and backward. Since the DNA between the different restriction sites is not palindromic, the two orientations are not really equivalent, particularly if you're trying to make a protein by translating this region.

This problem can be solved by cutting the two pieces of DNA you want to join with two different restriction enzymes. This way the two ends of the DNA are not equivalent and the two cut pieces can be joined so that the DNA fragments can combine in only one orientation. This approach is very useful for joining different DNA fragments and inserting one specific piece of DNA into another specific piece of DNA. As we'll see a little later, putting inserts (translate as the piece of DNA you're interested in) into vectors (translate as something to carry your DNA around in) is essential to using recombinant-DNA techniques for sequencing, expressing, and mutating your protein (Fig. 6-3).

GELS AND ELECTROPHORESIS

These separate molecules by size—smaller ones move farther.

Gels are indispensable tools for the molecular biologist. Agarose or polyacrylamide can be formed into hydrophilic polymers that form hydrated gels in water. The gels are usually cast into thin, flat sheets between two plates of glass. The porous network in these gels retards the movement of macromolecules through them so that smaller molecules move faster. The size of the holes in the polymer can be changed by varying the amount of agarose or polyacrylamide in the gel. An electric field

[1] Try rotating the DNA fragment by 180° in the plane of the paper (this means don't pick it up and flip it over—just turn the page upside down). You'll see that the ends look exactly the same as without the rotation. However, the middle, which is not palindromic, will be different.

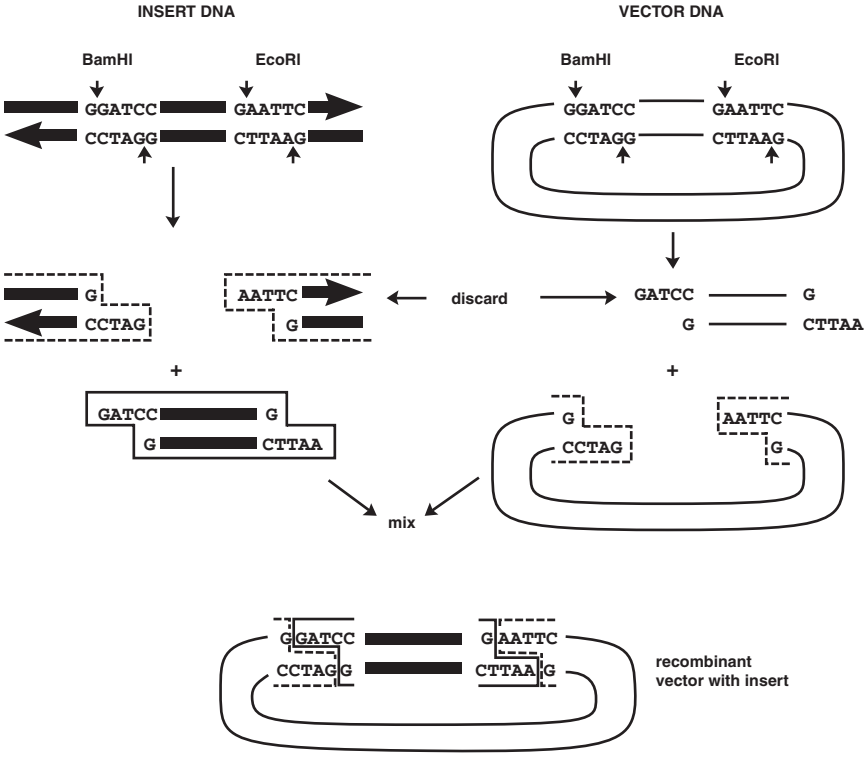


Figure 6-3
Generating a **RECOMBINANT-DNA** molecule using restriction enzymes to generate ends that can be joined in a specific fashion.

applied across the ends of the gel causes the macromolecules to move. (DNA is negative and moves to the + electrode, which is at the bottom of the gel.) Molecules of the same size move the same distance, forming a band. Samples of DNA are applied to the top of the gel by putting them in slots (wells) formed during the casting operation. After electrophoresis, the molecules can be visualized by staining. A number of different stains can be used. Commonly, DNA is visualized by staining the gel with ethidium bromide, a dye that becomes intensely fluorescent when it intercalates into DNA. Radioactive nucleic acid fragments can be visualized by placing a piece of x-ray film against the gel. By comparing the distance a given band moves to the mobility of a series of standards of known size, the length of the DNA can be estimated.

BLOTTING

This means looking at specific molecules on gels even though there are many other molecules present that have the same size.

MOLECULE ON GEL	LABELED PROBE	NAME OF BLOT
DNA	DNA	Southern
RNA	DNA	Northern
Protein	Antibody	Western

The beauty of blotting techniques is that they let you see only what you're interested in. Take a whole gene's worth of DNA and make fragments with a restriction enzyme. Then separate these fragments by size on an agarose gel. Since there's lots of DNA in a genome, there will be lots of different DNA fragments of almost every size. Usual staining methods would show only a smear over the whole gel. What blotting techniques allow you to do is to detect only the molecules you've interested in.

After separating the molecules based on size, all the DNA fragments are transferred from the agarose gel to a piece of nitrocellulose paper.[2] The paper is actually placed against the gel, and the DNA molecules in the gel migrate from the gel to the paper, where they stick. The paper is then removed and heated to denature the DNA (it still sticks to the paper), and then the blot is cooled in the presence of a large excess of a radiolabeled, single-stranded DNA molecule (the probe) that contains the complement of the specific sequence that you want to detect. DNA fragments on the paper that contain sequences complementary to sequences in the probe will anneal to the radiolabeled probe. The excess probe is washed off, and the blot is placed against a piece of film. Only DNA fragments that have annealed to the probe will be radioactive, and a band will "light up" on the film everywhere there was a DNA molecule that contained sequences complementary to the probe. Conditions of hybridization (salt and temperature) can be changed to make the hybridization more selective (this is called *increased stringency*) so that the extent of sequence complementary between the probe and the DNA that is detected must be quite high.

[2] Special paper that actually reacts chemically with the DNA to cross-link it to the paper can also be used.

As long as the probe can find enough homology, it will stick (anneal) to DNA fragments on the blot that are longer or shorter than the probe itself. In the example shown in Fig. 6-4, the DNA fragment of interest (center lane) shows up as a single band. In this sample, there is only one size of DNA that has a sequence complementary to the probe sequence. In the digest of genomic DNA, two bands light up with this probe. In the genomic DNA, the probe sequence occurs in two different EcoRI fragments of different size. This could mean that there is sequence homology between two different genes (coding for two different proteins) or that an EcoRI restriction site is missing in one of the two copies of the gene present in the genome, reflecting a heterozygous gene pattern (in which the gene is different on each of the two diploid chromosomes).

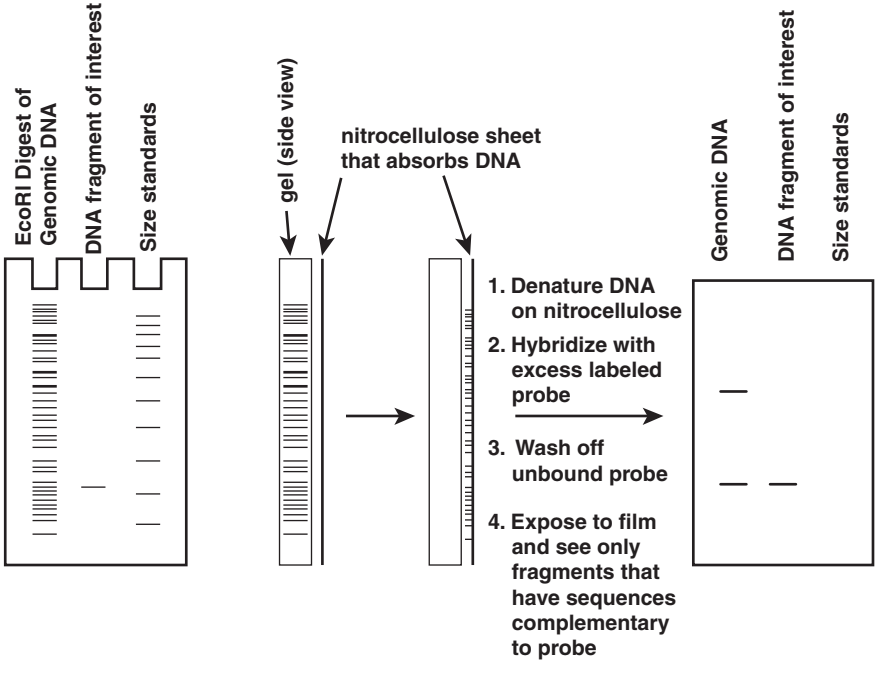

EcoRI Digest of Genomic DNA
DNA fragment of interest
Size standards
gel (side view)
nitrocellulose sheet that absorbs DNA
1. Denature DNA on nitrocellulose
2. Hybridize with excess labeled probe
3. Wash off unbound probe
4. Expose to film and see only fragments that have sequences complementary to probe
Genomic DNA
DNA fragment of interest
Size standards

Figure 6-4
BLOTTING is a method to detect specific DNA (or RNA) fragments that contain sequences that are complementary to sequences in the labeled probe molecule. Only a few of the many DNA fragments on a gel will contain the sequence of interest, and only these will be seen (light up) on the blot. Specific proteins can also be visualized by blotting techniques using a specific antibody to detect a specific protein.

These blotting techniques are known by the names of compass directions (Southern, Northern, Western). Since Southern is a person's name, there's no logic in how the different blots were named. Southern developed a blot in which DNA on the blot is detected by a labeled DNA probe. It was then fairly logical that the next technique developed, detecting RNA on the blot with a DNA probe, should be called a Northern blot. Then things got carried away with the Western, and now the Southwestern, and so on and so on.

If the gel separates DNA and the DNA is detected with a DNA probe, it is called a *Southern blot*. If RNA is separated on the gel and then detected by a DNA probe, it is a Northern. A Western uses specific antibodies to detect specific protein molecules on a blot of a protein gel. In the Western blot, the role of the DNA probe is filled by an antibody that recognizes a specific protein.

RESTRICTION FRAGMENT-LENGTH POLYMORPHISM

RFLP is a Southern blot used to detect genetic disease.

For the diagnosis of genetic disease, some specific way of detecting a single mutation in DNA from the fetus must be used. The most obvious way to do this would be to use a restriction enzyme that cuts the wild-type sequence but does not cut the mutant sequence (or vice versa). A restriction site right at the site of the mutation would come in handy. If the fetal DNA has the normal sequence, the DNA will be cut and the restriction pattern will be identical to the wild type. If not, not. For many genetic diseases, the mutation does not conveniently occur right at a restriction site. However, in many cases, it just happens that the mutation that's being diagnosed is associated with another, nearby mutation (polymorphism) that does alter some endonuclease cleavage site. This second site is closely linked genetically to the mutation that leads to the genetic disease. If the patient has this secondary restriction site, it's a good bet he or she has the mutation as well. The patterns that are observed when genomic DNA is digested with different endonucleases and the DNA is probed with a specific sequence can then be used to determine if a particular patient is homozygous or heterozygous for the specific mutation—a useful diagnostic tool.

More modern techniques for detecting mutations or differences in DNA sequences in different people can be used. These include PCR (see later) that can distinguish mutations by the length and pattern of

products. DNA chips have specific sequences linked to a solid support in small, solid-state plates (chips). Genomic DNA can be hybridized to the DNA on the chip (if it matches the sequence on the chip). Many (thousands) of sequences can be detected at the same time.

CLONING

Cloning is manipulating a specific piece of DNA so that it can be used to generate multiple copies of itself or the RNA and protein that it encodes.

STEPS IN CLONING DNA:

1. Identify the DNA you want.
2. Put the DNA into a vector.
3. Change the sequence of the DNA (this is optional).
4. Put your DNA back into cells.
5. Grow the cells with your DNA/RNA/protein.

There are many different ways to clone a specific piece of DNA, but basically, they all involve (1) identifying and isolating the DNA you are interested in; (2) putting this DNA into something (a vector) to move it around from cell to cell; (3) altering the DNA sequence; (4) introducing this new DNA back into cells; and (5) growing the cells that have your DNA, RNA, or protein. You often do all this randomly to millions and millions of cells and then just select the few cells that got the piece of DNA you're interested in.

• 1. IDENTIFYING YOUR DNA: There's lots of DNA out there, and finding just the right piece of DNA can be like finding a word in a dictionary that's arranged randomly.[3] The way you go about finding your DNA may depend on the reason for wanting the DNA in the first place.[4] The DNA you want will be contained in the genome of some cell. A frequent strategy is to take all the DNA in a specific cell, cut it into small fragments with restriction endonucleases, and put all these fragments into individual vectors (this is called a *genomic library*). A vector is a piece of DNA that makes it easy to capture other DNA fragments and move them around. Each individual vector will have only one piece of DNA

[3] You're right: "Arranged randomly" contradicts itself.

[4] The Mt. Everest rationale, "Because it's there," is not usually selective enough.

inserted; however, the collection of vectors will contain much of the original cellular DNA. The same can be done with all the cell's mRNA, making cDNA first using reverse transcriptase[5] (this is called a *cDNA library*). The DNA in a genomic library will contain introns, promoters, enhancers, and so forth; however, the DNA in a cDNA library will not contain introns or promoters, but it will contain a strength of A's from the poly(A) tail of the mRNA. After introducing all this DNA into cells under conditions under which each cell will get only one of the DNA fragments in the library, the few cells that have your specific DNA will be identified.

Identification is easiest if your DNA confers some selective advantage to the cell (that is, if it expresses drug resistance or directs a function that is essential for cell survival under the conditions of your culture). Under selective conditions, only the cells with your DNA will survive. Killing cells (or, more mercifully, letting them die) that don't have the desired piece of DNA is called *selection*. A large number of cells (a million or so) can be spread on a culture plate, and only the ones that survive selection will continue to grow. These surviving colonies can be selected individually. If your DNA codes for a protein and you have an antibody to the protein or the protein has an activity that is not present in the host cell, the cells with your DNA can be detected by looking for the cells that make the protein or have the activity. Finding the cells with your DNA by detecting the DNA directly with a Southern blot, or by detecting the protein or RNA product of the gene, is called *screening*.

It's also possible to select your DNA before you put it in the vector. If you know the sequence (or even part of it), DNA pieces (from genomic DNA or cDNA) with this sequence can be purified on a gel and identified by hybridization to an oligonucleotide using a Southern blot. Alternatively, if you know the sequence of the ends of your DNA, you can amplify it specifically by the polymerase chain reaction. There are lots of clever ways to find your DNA.

• 2. PUTTING YOUR DNA INTO A VECTOR: Vectors are specialized pieces of DNA used to move other pieces of DNA around. Modern vectors are usually either bacterial plasmids or viral genomes. The act of isolating your DNA in the first place usually involves putting it into a vector and then selecting the vector that has your DNA in it. DNA pieces (called *inserts* when they are placed in a vector) are usually placed in vectors using restriction endonucleases. The vector is cut with two restriction enzymes of different specificity (Fig. 6-3). This removes a

[5] Reverse transcriptase is an enzyme isolated from viruses that contain a genome that is RNA. This viral enzyme makes DNA using RNA as a template.

chunk of the vector DNA and leaves two different ends. You then cut your DNA with the same two enzymes so that it will have the same complementary ends. Restriction enzymes that don't cut in an essential part of the vector or insert must be used. You can also make suitable cloning sites by cutting with just one restriction enzyme; however, because of the palindromic nature of restriction enzyme specificity, the ends of the piece of DNA will be the same. The DNA can then go into the vector in either one of two orientations. Sometimes this matters and sometimes it doesn't. If you want RNA or protein expressed from your DNA, direction will matter if the promoter site is provided by the vector. After mixing your cut DNA with the cut vector under conditions under which the ends will anneal, DNA ligase (and ATP) is added to join the strands with a covalent bond.

Vectors are often designed to contain a drug-resistance marker to aid in the selection of cells that have incorporated your vector (not all cells do). They can also have a variety of other goodies depending on the type of vector. An expression vector is used to express RNA or protein from the DNA, and these vectors usually contain a good promoter region and some way to turn the promoter on and off. Many expression vectors have been engineered to contain a convenient set of unique restriction sites (termed a *polylinker*) near the promoter to make it easy to put your insert in the right place. Sequencing vectors, designed to make it easy to sequence your DNA, usually have a defined site for the sequencing primer to bind that is adjacent to a polylinker region.

• 3. CHANGING THE SEQUENCE OF YOUR DNA. The sequence of the DNA can be changed in lots of ways. Large chunks can be deleted or added (deletion or insertion mutagenesis) by mixing and matching endonuclease fragments. Sequences of DNA from one gene can be combined with sequences from another gene (chimeric DNA—named for the Chimera, a mythological beast with the head of a lion, the tail of a serpent, and the body of a goat). If protein product is going to be made from the mutant DNA, care must be taken to preserve the reading frame. Deleting or inserting a number of bases that is not divisible by 3 will cause a shift in the reading of the triplet codons and a jumbling of the protein sequence. Individual nucleotides can be changed at any specific site by the use of site-directed mutagenesis. The reason for changing the DNA sequence is to change the function of the DNA itself or its RNA or protein product.

• 4. PUTTING YOUR DNA BACK INTO CELLS. Vectors can be isolated and then added back to cells. DNA can be introduced into cells in a variety of ways: by infection with a virus containing your DNA, by

poking holes in the cells with specific salt solutions, by precipitating the DNA with calcium phosphate and having cells take up the precipitate, by blowing holes in the cells with an electric discharge and allowing pieces of DNA to enter the cells through the holes *(electroporation)*, or by directly microinjecting the DNA with a very small glass capillary.

Not all cells that are exposed to your vector will take it up. That's where selection is helpful. You just kill all the cells you're not interested in.

SEQUENCING

Sequencing is determining the sequential order of DNA bases in a given piece of DNA.

Sequencing DNA is relatively easy these days, at least for small pieces (a few thousand nucleotides). In the Sanger dideoxynucleotide method, a specific primer is used that is complementary to one of the two DNA strands you want to sequence. The primer can be a vector sequence so that you can sequence any piece of DNA cloned into the vector. The primer is a synthetic oligonucleotide that is radiolabeled (or fluorescently labeled) so that you can see all new DNA molecules that have the primer attached to the 5′ end. Alternatively one of the deoxynucleotides used in the DNA synthesis can be labeled. After denaturing the double-stranded DNA that you want to sequence and annealing the primer, the DNA is elongated from the primer (in the 5′ to 3′ direction) using DNA polymerase. The reaction is run for a short time with all four deoxynucleotides. There will be pieces of DNA that are at all stages of the replication process—the newly synthesized DNA will be of all different lengths. The reaction is then stopped by adding it to four separate tubes, each of which contains a different 2′,3′-dideoxynucleotide. When a dideoxynucleotide is incorporated by the polymerase, the elongation stops (there's no 3′-hydroxyl group on the dideoxynucleotide). Alternatively, you can include a small quantity of a dideoxynucleotide during the polymerase reaction so that some DNA stops when a dideoxynucleotide is added and the rest goes on to stop later on. The trick is that only one of the four dideoxynucleotides will stop the reaction at any given point in the random mixture of newly synthesized DNA. The synthesized DNA is then run on a high-resolution acrylamide gel that can separate DNA molecules that differ in length by one nucleotide. Four lanes are run, one for each type of dideoxynucleotide used to stop the reaction. A ladder of bands will be seen. The shorter bands, at the bottom of the gel, will correspond to termination nearest the primer (near

the 5′ end). The sequence is then read from the bottom (5′ end) to the top (3′ end) of the gel by noting which dideoxynucleotide stopped the reaction at that length (that is, simply which one of the four lanes has a band in it at that length) (Fig. 6-5).

Automated methods for doing this are available that can sequence >500 bp in one run and automatically read out the sequence. Each type of dideoxynucleotide product is marked with a different color so that all four sequencing reactions can be run in one lane of the gel. These automated methods are being used to complete the sequence of the whole human genome.

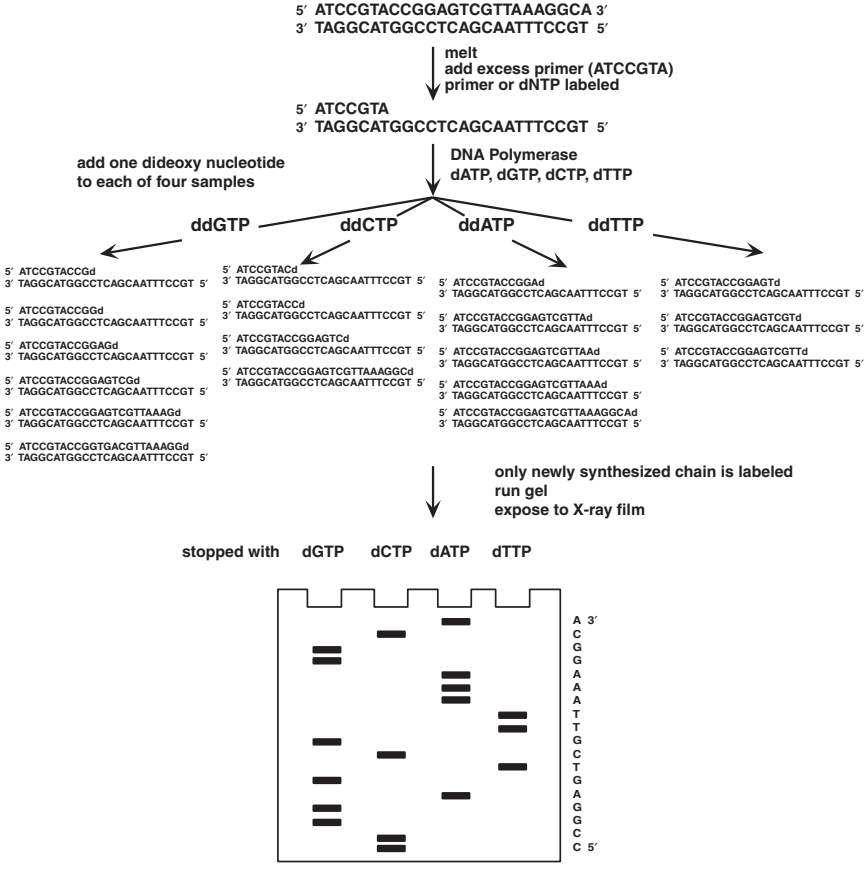


Figure 6-5 DNA Sequencing

MUTAGENESIS

Making a mutant DNA
Deletion: Deletes a hunk of DNA
Insertion: Inserts a hunk of DNA
Site-directed: Modifies a specific nucleotide
Random: Introduces random changes in the DNA

Mutagenesis is used to alter the DNA structure (sequence) in a known way by either deleting nucleotides, inserting nucleotides, or changing a single nucleotide at a defined location. Random mutagenesis of DNA may be performed over the whole piece of DNA by exposing the DNA to chemicals (mutagens) that react with the DNA and change the specificity for base pairing or by using oligonucleotides that contain random, deliberate mistakes in the sequence. Mutants are then selected or screened for changes in function of the protein or RNA product. This technique allows you to define specific amino acids that are essential to the function of the protein and to determine which amino acids can be replaced by which other amino acids and still conserve function.

In deletion or insertion mutagenesis, restriction enzymes are used to generate DNA with a specific fragment missing or with another piece of DNA inserted. This change in the DNA sequence can then be used to produce RNA or protein containing a deletion or insertion of amino acids in the protein. This is useful in determining the gross features of the gene structure that are necessary to preserve a functional gene or to express a functional protein product. For example, a signal sequence that directs the synthesized protein to the mitochondrial matrix can be placed in the sequence of a protein that is normally cytosolic. This mutant protein will be expressed as a mitochondrial matrix protein.

With site-directed mutagenesis, a change in the DNA sequence can be introduced at any specific site. An oligonucleotide is annealed to a single-strand copy of the DNA that you want to mutate. This oligonucleotide contains the correct (complementary) base at every position except the one you want to change. At the mutated position, there is a mismatch. After the oligonucleotide is annealed at the proper position, the DNA is fully replicated using DNA polymerase and then sealed with ligase. When the vector is introduced into the host cell and replicated during cell division, some of the progeny cells will get DNA that has used the mutant strand as the template for DNA replication. There are clever ways to increase your chances of getting only cells containing the mutant DNA. These involve selectively destroying the wild-type (nonmutated)

strand. Site-directed mutagenesis is used to change single amino acids in proteins or single bases in RNA or DNA. The technique has been very useful in determining the function of a specific amino acid residue in enzyme catalysis, binding of a ligand, or stabilizing a protein. It has also been possible to selectively change the activity and specificity of some enzymes using this technique (Fig. 6-6).

POLYMERASE CHAIN REACTION

PCR amplifies DNA sequences that lie between specific 5′ and 3′ sequences.

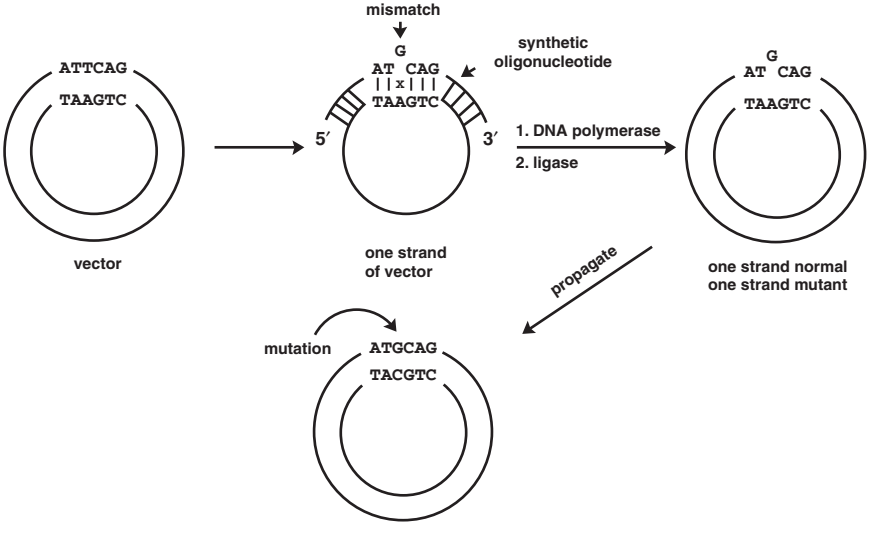
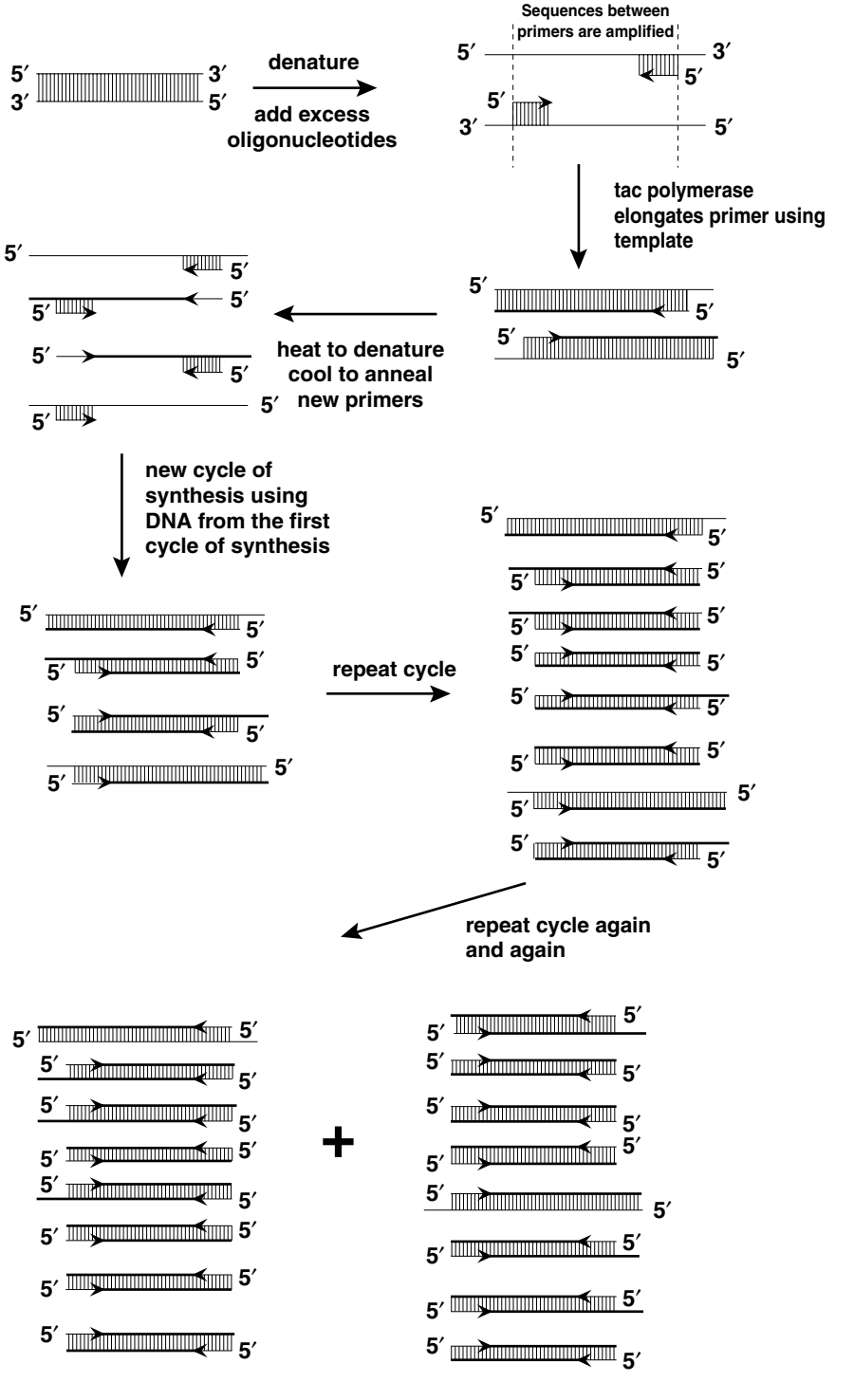


Figure 6-6
SITE-DIRECTED MUTAGENESIS can be used to change one or more base pairs in the DNA resulting in a change in the amino acid that appears in the protein produced from this DNA.

This is a technique for amplifying a specific segment of DNA. Oligonucleotide primers are synthesized that are complementary to one strand at the 5′ end of your DNA and complementary to the opposite strand at the 3′ end. After the DNA is denatured and the oligonucleotide primers (in excess) are annealed, the DNA is elongated using DNA polymerase and deoxynucleotides. A new double-stranded DNA molecule will be generated starting from each primer. DNA sequences behind (to the 5′ side of) the primer will not be replicated. The DNA is then heated to denature it and reannealed to the primer again. Another round of replication is performed. This cycle is repeated over and over, with a twofold increase in the amount of DNA on each cycle. Because two primers are used, only the sequence *between* the two primers will be amplified. Since the cycle is carried out multiple times with a twofold increase in the amount of DNA each time, a geometric amplification results (10 cycles would result in a 2^{10} increase in the DNA concentration). The limitation on the amount of DNA that is produced is the amount of primer and deoxynucleotides added. The cleverness of this technique is extended by using a heat-stable DNA polymerase that is not inactivated by the temperatures needed to denature the DNA. Multiple cycles can be performed simply by heating (denaturing) and cooling (renaturing and polymerizing) a tube containing the DNA, the primers, deoxynucleotide triphosphates, and the DNA polymerase. Because of the extreme amount of amplification, PCR can be used to amplify sequences from very small amounts of DNA. New restriction sites can be easily generated by including them in the 5′ end of the oligonucleotide primer even though they are not present in the original DNA. As long as the primer is still long enough to hybridize to the DNA through complementary sequences, the dangling 5′ ends containing the restriction site sequence will be amplified in the next round. PCR can also be used to remove inserts from vectors and to introduce site-specific mutants (Fig. 6-7).

By first making a DNA copy of an RNA molecule, one can also amplify RNA sequences. Because reverse transcriptase (copies RNA to DNA) is used in the first step, this is called *RT-PCR*.


Sequences between primers are amplified
denature
add excess oligonucleotides
tac polymerase elongates primer using template
heat to denature cool to anneal new primers
new cycle of synthesis using DNA from the first cycle of synthesis
repeat cycle
repeat cycle again and again
5′
3′

←**Figure 6-7 The Polymerase Chain Reaction**
PCR is used to amplify (synthesize) specific DNA sequences that lie between a 5′ primer and a 3′ primer. The primers are annealed to the appropriate DNA strand and are lengthened (5′ to 3′) by adding deoxynucleotides, using DNA polymerase and the longer DNA strand as a template. The newly synthesized DNA is denatured by heating, cooled to allow more primer to anneal to the newly synthesized strands, and the cycle of synthesis, melting, and annealing new primer is repeated over and over. Each cycle increases the amount of DNA by twofold. Note that with increasing numbers of cycles the sequences between the two primers are amplified more than sequences outside the primers.

· C H A P T E R · 7 ·

ENZYME MECHANISM

Active Site

Transition State

Catalysis

Lock and Key

Induced Fit

Nonproductive Binding

Entropy

Strain and Distortion

Transition-State Stabilization

Transition-State Analogs

Chemical Catalysis

Enzymes do two important things: they recognize very specific substrates, and they perform specific chemical reactions on them at fantastic speeds. The way they accomplish all this can be described by a number of different models, each one of which accounts for some of the behavior that enzymes exhibit. Most enzymes make use of all these different mechanisms of specificity and/or catalysis. In the real world, some or all of these factors go into making a given enzyme work with exquisite specificity and blinding speed.

ACTIVE SITE

The active site is a specialized region of the protein where the enzyme interacts with the substrate.

The active site of an enzyme is generally a pocket or cleft that is specialized to recognize specific substrates and catalyze chemical transformations. It is formed in the three-dimensional structure by a collection of different amino acids (active-site residues) that may or may not be adjacent in the primary sequence. The interactions between the active site and the substrate occur via the same forces that stabilize protein structure: hydrophobic interactions, electrostatic interactions (charge–charge), hydrogen bonding, and van der Waals interactions. Enzyme active sites do not simply bind substrates; they also provide catalytic groups to facilitate the chemistry and provide specific interactions that stabilize the formation of the transition state for the chemical reaction.

TRANSITION STATE

The transition state is the highest-energy arrangement of atoms during a chemical reaction.

During a chemical reaction, the structure of the substrate changes into the structure of the product. Somewhere in between, some bonds are partly broken; others are partly formed. The transition state is the highest-energy arrangement of atoms that is intermediate in structure between the structure of the reactants and the structure of the products. Figure 7-1 is called a *reaction coordinate diagram*. It shows the free energy of the reactants, transition state, and product. The free-energy difference between the product and reactant is the free-energy change for the overall reaction and is related to the equilibrium constants [$\Delta G = -RT\ln(K_{eq})$].[1] The free-energy change between the products and reactants tells you how favorable the reaction is thermodynamically. It does not tell you anything about how fast it is.

Reactions don't all occur with the same rate. Some energy must be put into the reactants before they can be converted to products. This activation energy provides a barrier to the reaction—the higher the barrier,

[1] There is a more complete description of thermodynamics in Chap. 24.

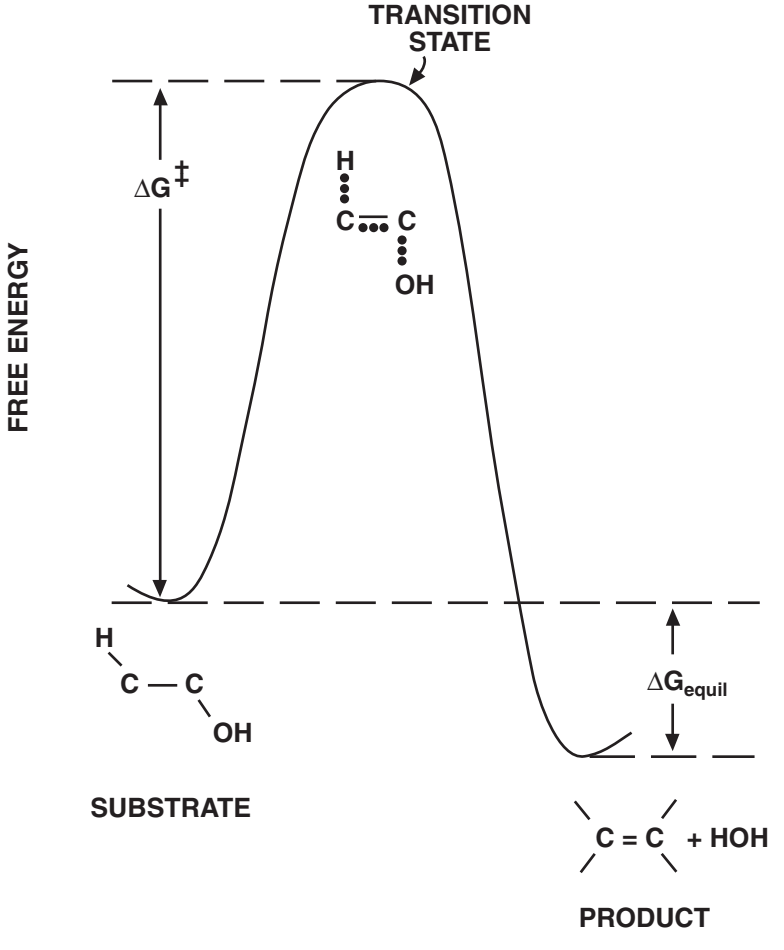


Figure 7-1
FREE-ENERGY CHANGES occur during a chemical reaction. The least stable arrangement of the atoms during the reaction is called the transition state, and it occurs at an energy maximum. How fast the reaction happens is determined by the free energy of activation, the free-energy difference between the substrate and the transition state. The larger the free energy of activation, the slower the reaction.

the slower the reaction. The difference in free energy between the transition state and the reactant(s) is called the *free energy of activation*.

CATALYSIS

The reaction happens at a faster rate.
The catalyst is regenerated.

Enzymes do chemistry. Their role is to make and break specific chemical bonds of the substrates at a faster rate and to do it without being consumed in the process. At the end of each catalytic cycle, the enzyme is free to begin again with a new substrate molecule.

Since catalysis is simply making a reaction go faster, it follows that the activation energy of a catalyzed (faster) reaction is lower than the activation energy of an uncatalyzed reaction. It's possible to say, then, that enzymes work by lowering the activation energy of the reaction they catalyze. This is the same as saying that enzymes work because they work. The question is how they lower the activation energy.

LOCK AND KEY

Specificity model—the correct substrate fits into the active site of the enzyme like a key into a lock. Only the right key fits.

This is the oldest model for how an enzyme works. It makes a nice, easy picture that describes enzyme specificity. Only if the key fits will the lock be opened. It accounts for why the enzyme only works on certain substrates, but it does not tell us why the reaction of the correct substrates happens so fast. It doesn't tell us the mechanism of the lock. A problem arises because the structure of the substrate changes as it is converted to product. So what is the enzyme complementary *to*—the substrate, the product, or what? The answer is often the transition state (Fig. 7-2).

INDUCED FIT

The binding of the correct substrate triggers a change in the structure of the enzyme that brings catalytic groups into exactly the right position to facilitate the reaction.

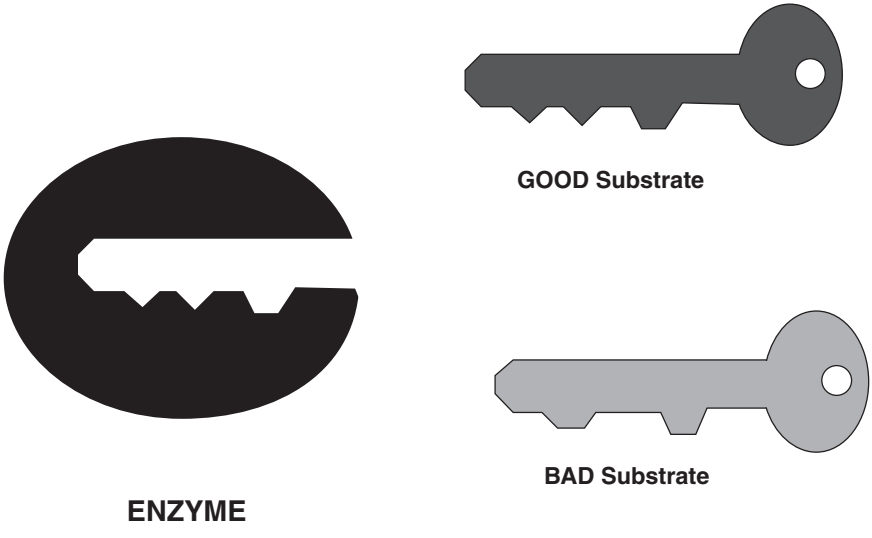


Figure 7-2
The **LOCK AND KEY** model for enzyme specificity uses complementarity between the enzyme active site (the lock) and the substrate (the key). Simply, the substrate must fit correctly into the active site—it must be the right size and shape, have charges in the correct place, have the right hydrogen-bond donors and acceptors, and have just the right hydrophobic patches.

In the induced-fit model, the structure of the enzyme is different depending on whether the substrate is bound or not. The enzyme changes shape (undergoes a conformation change) on binding the substrate. This conformation change converts the enzyme into a new structure in which the substrate and catalytic groups on the enzyme are properly arranged to accelerate the reaction. "Bad" substrates cannot cause this conformation change. For example, the enzyme hexokinase catalyzes the transfer of phosphate from ATP to the 6-hydroxyl group of glucose.

$$\text{Glucose—OH} + \text{ATP} \longrightarrow \text{Glucose—O—P} + \text{ADP}$$

Chemically, glucose—OH is very similar in reactivity to water; it just has some other structural parts that make it look more complicated.

$$\text{H—OH} + \text{ATP} \longrightarrow \text{H—O—P} + \text{ADP}$$

Although water and glucose are chemically similar, hexokinase catalyzes the transfer of phosphate to glucose about 10^5 times faster than it cat-

alyzes the transfer of phosphate to water.[2] The induced-fit model would argue that the fancy part of the glucose molecule is necessary to induce the enzyme to change its conformation and become an efficient catalyst. Even though the fancy part of the glucose molecule is not directly involved in the chemical reaction, it participates in the enzyme-catalyzed reaction by inducing a change in the structure of the enzyme. Since water doesn't have this extra appendage, it can't cause the conformation change and is, therefore, a poor substrate for this enzyme. The induced fit-model would say that in the unreactive conformation of the enzyme, the ATP is 10^5 times less reactive than when the enzyme is in the reactive conformation (Fig. 7-3).

What the induced-fit model is good at explaining is why bad substrates are bad, but like the lock and key model, it too fails to tell us exactly why good substrates are good. What is it about the "proper" arrangement that makes the chemistry fast?

NONPRODUCTIVE BINDING

Poor substrates bind to the enzyme in a large number of different ways, only one of which is correct. Good substrates bind only in the proper way.

Again this model tells us why poor substrates don't work well. Poor substrates bind more often to the enzyme in the wrong orientation than in the right orientation. Since poor substrates bind in the wrong orientation, the catalytic groups and specific interactions that would accelerate the reaction of the correct substrate come into play in only a very small number of the interactions between the enzyme and a bad substrate. In contrast to the induced-fit model, this model does not require a change in the conformation of the enzyme (Fig. 7-4). In the hexokinase reaction discussed earlier, the nonproductive binding model would say that only 1 out of 10^5 water molecules binds to the enzyme in a productive fashion but all the glucose binds in a productive orientation.

[2] Luckily, water is not a good substrate for hexokinase. Otherwise, the ATP hydrolysis would burn up ATP.

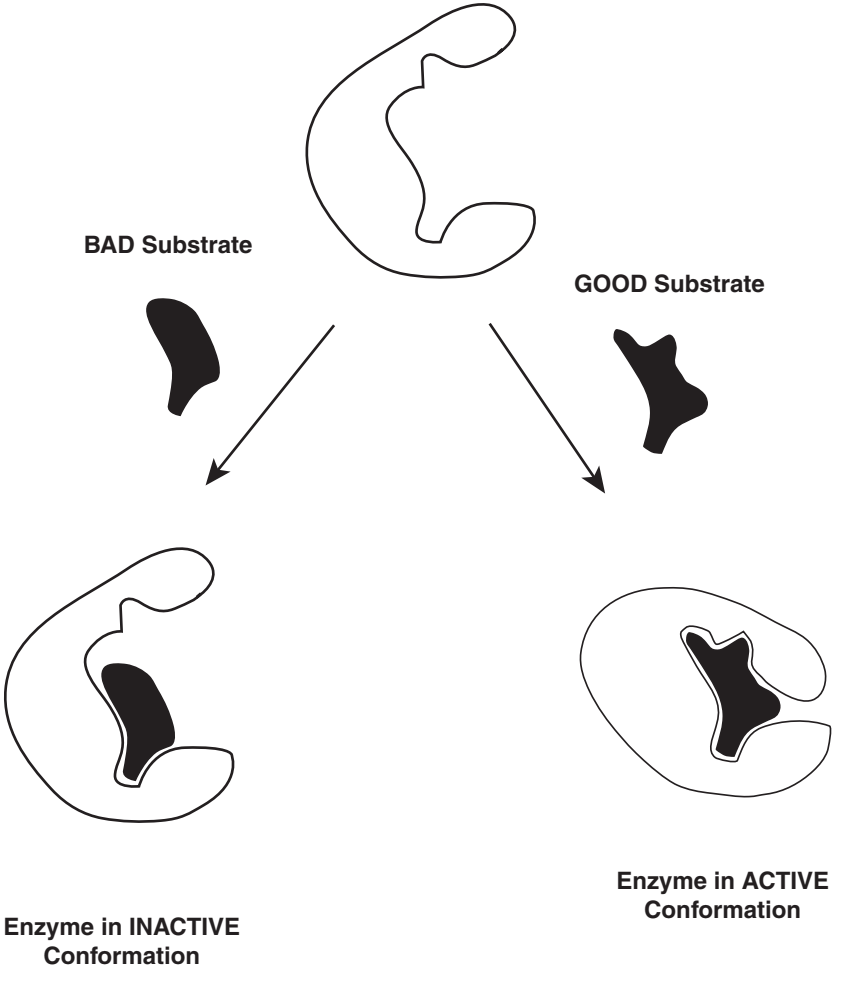


Figure 7-3
The **INDUCED-FIT** model for enzyme specificity says that good substrates must be able to cause the enzyme to change shape (conformation) so that catalytic and functional groups on the enzyme are brought into just the right place to catalyze the reaction. Bad substrates are bad because they aren't able to make the specific interactions that cause the conformation change, and the enzyme stays in its inactive conformation.

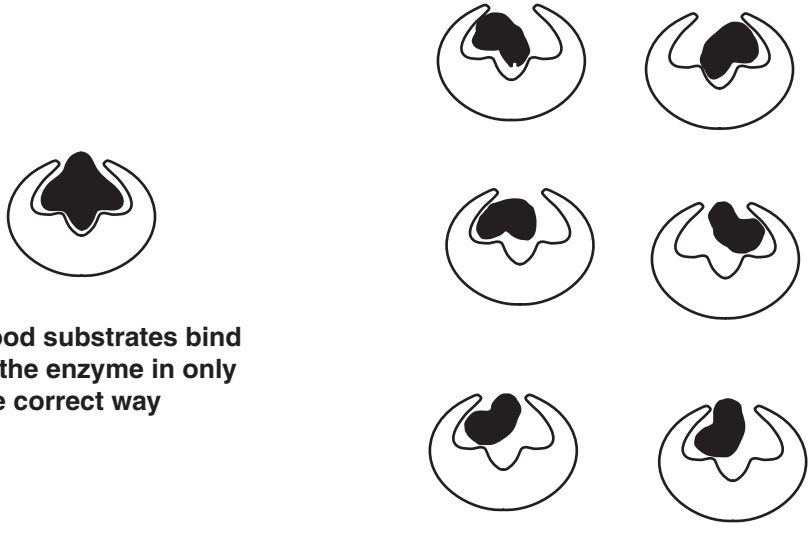

Good substrates bind to the enzyme in only the correct way
Bad substrates bind to the enzyme in a large number of incorrect, nonproductive ways

Figure 7-4
The **NONPRODUCTIVE BINDING** model suggests that while good substrates bind in only one, correct way, bad substrates usually bind to the enzyme incorrectly and cannot react.

ENTROPY

Organizing a reaction at the active site of an enzyme makes it go faster.

When molecules react, particularly when it's the reaction between two different molecules or even when it's a reaction between two parts of the same molecule, they must become more organized. The reason is that the two reacting atoms must approach each other in space. Just finding the appropriate partner is often a tough part of the reaction (biochemistry mimics life once more). Part of the free-energy barrier to a chemical reaction is overcoming unfavorable entropy changes that must accompany the formation of the transition state. By binding two substrates at the same active site, the enzyme organizes the reacting centers.

This reduces the amount of further organization that must occur to reach the transition state for the reaction, making the free energy of activation lower and the reaction faster. Of course, the enzyme must find each of the substrates and organize them at the active site—this is entropically unfavorable too. However, the price paid for organizing the substrates can be taken out of the binding free energy. (In English, the last sentence means that organizing the substrates at the active site makes the substrates bind to the enzyme less tightly than they would if they didn't have to become organized. This is not a big deal since we can just increase the concentration of the substrate to what is necessary to make it bind.) Entropy and disorder make good dinner conversation topics—right up there with supply-side economics and the national debt.

STRAIN AND DISTORTION

The binding of the substrate results in a distortion of the substrate (pulling or pushing on a bond) in a way that makes the chemical reaction easier.

In this model, the binding of the substrate to the enzyme strains specific chemical bonds, making the subsequent chemical reaction easier. If a bond has to be broken, the enzyme grabs onto both sides of the bond and pulls. If a bond has to be formed, the enzyme grabs onto both sides and pushes. By this model, the enzyme must be designed to apply the strain in the right direction—the direction that will help convert the reactant to the transition state (Fig. 7-5).

TRANSITION-STATE STABILIZATION

Enzymes recognize and stabilize atomic features that are present in the transition state for the catalyzed reaction but that are not present in the substrate or product. The enzyme is more complementary to the transition state than to the reactants of products.

A common theme of all the preceding mechanisms of catalysis is that the enzyme does something to assist the reaction in reaching the transition state. The structure of the transition state for a chemical reaction is slightly different from the structure of either the reactants or products. Some chemical bonds are at different angles and lengths, and charges are distributed differently. The enzyme can stabilize those features that occur

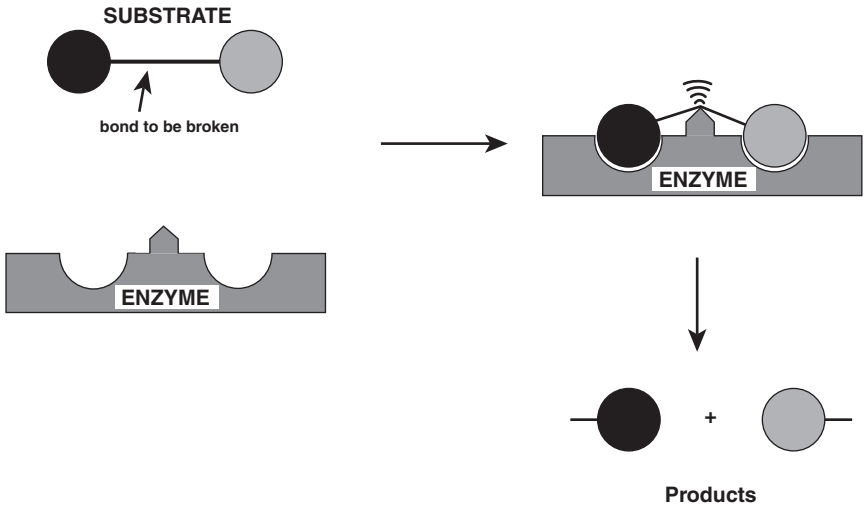


Figure 7-5
The **STRAIN AND DISTORTION** model for catalysis involves pushing, pulling, or twisting a bond that is to be made or broken during the reaction. Parts of the substrate not involved directly in the chemical reaction are required to hold the substrate on the enzyme in the distorted form. The distortion and strain make it easier to reach the transition state.

just in the transition state by providing groups at just the right location and orientation to interact with the transition state and not with the substrates or products. In other words, we can view the enzyme active site as being complementary to the transition state.

How can an enzyme specifically recognize the transition state? Let's pick a simple chemical reaction such as the addition of an alcohol to a phosphate ester (Fig. 7-6). In this reaction, negative charge develops on the phosphate oxygen, and the bond angles to phosphorous change during the reaction. The enzyme can be designed so that there are hydrogen bond acceptors or a positive charge located at exactly the right position to interact with the charge that has to develop in the transition state. This favorable interaction will be present only when the substrate is in the transition state structure—otherwise it won't contribute favorably to binding. There are two equivalent ways of saying what this additional favorable interaction with the transition state actually does. First, we can say that the interaction stabilizes (lowers the free energy of) the transition state more than it does the ground state (substrates and products). Second, we can say that the enzyme binds the transition state more tightly than the ground state(s).

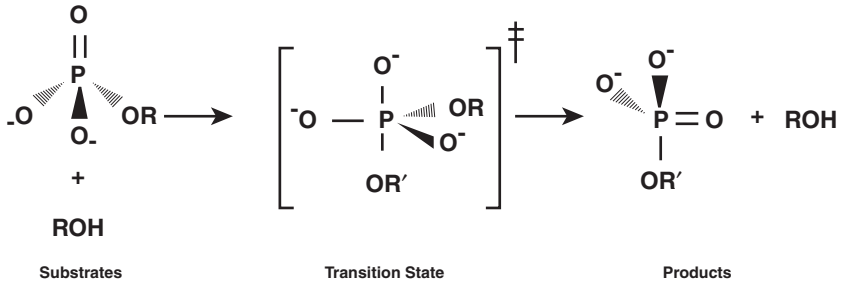


Figure 7-6
The **STRUCTURE OF THE TRANSITION STATE** is different from that of the substrate with respect to charge and shape. Because it looks different, the enzyme can recognize specific features of the transition state and stabilize them. This makes it easier to reach the transition state and makes the reaction faster.

If an enzyme binds the transition state for a chemical reaction more tightly than the ground state (substrate), the reaction must go faster. Let's see if I can convince you of that using a reaction coordinate diagram (Fig. 7-7). The reaction coordinate diagram is shown for any old generic chemical reaction (solid line). When the substrate interacts with the enzyme, there is a free-energy change.[3] The tighter (more favorable) the interaction, the more stable the ES complex, and the lower the free energy. If the enzyme binds the transition state more tightly than the substrate or product, the free-energy *change* on binding the transition state will be more negative (more favorable) than the free-energy change for binding the substrate. When the free energies of the enzyme-bound substrates, products, and transition states are compared (dotted line), you'll see that the free energy of activation for the reaction has decreased and the reaction must be faster. The rather magic conclusion is that any favorable and specific interaction that the enzyme makes with the transition state makes the reaction go faster.

There are other parts of the substrate, not involved in the reaction, that don't change structure during the reaction—like the R groups. These

[3] For a binding reaction we can pick whether we show the reaction as favorable or unfavorable by picking the substrate concentration we use. Association constants have concentration units (M^{-1}). The equilibrium position of the reaction (how much ES is present) depends on what concentration we pick for the substrate. At a concentration of the substrate that is much less than the dissociation constant for the interaction, most of the enzyme will not have substrate bound, the ratio[ES]/[E] will be small, and the apparent equilibrium constant will also be small. This all means that at a substrate concentration much less than the dissociation constant, the binding of substrate is unfavorable. At substrate concentrations higher than the dissociation constant, most of the enzyme will have substrate bound and the reaction will be shown as favorable (downhill). (See also the discussion of saturation behavior in Chap. 8.)

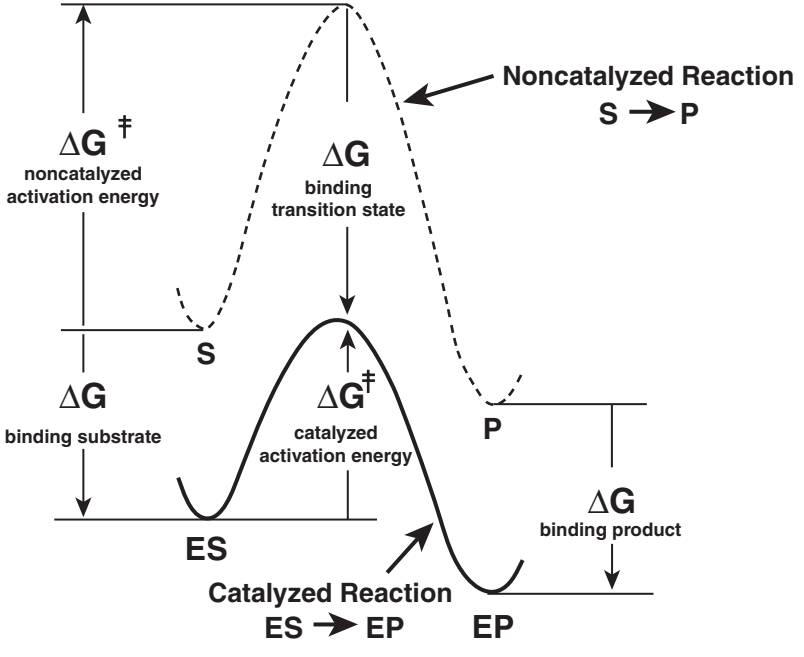


Figure 7-7 Transition-State Binding Is Tighter Than Substrate Binding
The ΔG for binding the substrate and the transition state is shown as a difference between the energies of the ES complex and E + S. The ΔG for binding the transition state is shown as a difference between the energies of the E · TS complex and E + TS. If the transition state binds tighter (bigger ΔG) than the substrate, the enzyme-catalyzed reaction must have a lower activation energy.

groups and the interactions the enzyme makes with them are also important. It is the interaction of the enzyme with groups that are the same in the ground state and transition state that allows the enzyme to hold onto the substrate, transition state, and product as the reaction proceeds on the enzyme.

TRANSITION-STATE ANALOGS

This is a molecule that is designed to look like the transition state for a specific chemical reaction.

If an enzyme recognizes (is complementary to) the transition state of the reaction, it should be possible to construct molecules that bind very

tightly to the enzyme by making a molecule that looks like the transition state. Transition states themselves can't be isolated—after all, they're not a stable arrangement of atoms, and some bonds are only partially formed or broken. But for some enzymes, analogs can be synthesized that are stable but still have some of the structural characteristics of the transition state (Fig. 7-8).

Proteolytic enzymes catalyze the hydrolysis of peptide bonds by forming a covalent intermediate with the substrate. The formation of this intermediate involves the addition of a group from the enzyme (usually a Ser-OH or Cys-SH) to the carbonyl of the amide bond. In the transition state for this reaction (actually just part of the reaction), the carbon atom goes from a planar configuration to a tetrahedral arrangement, and the carbonyl oxygen develops negative charge. Phosphonate analogs of the peptide bond are tetrahedral and have a negatively charged oxygen. They are excellent inhibitors of proteolytic enzymes, because they look more like the transition state for the reaction than like the substrate. The

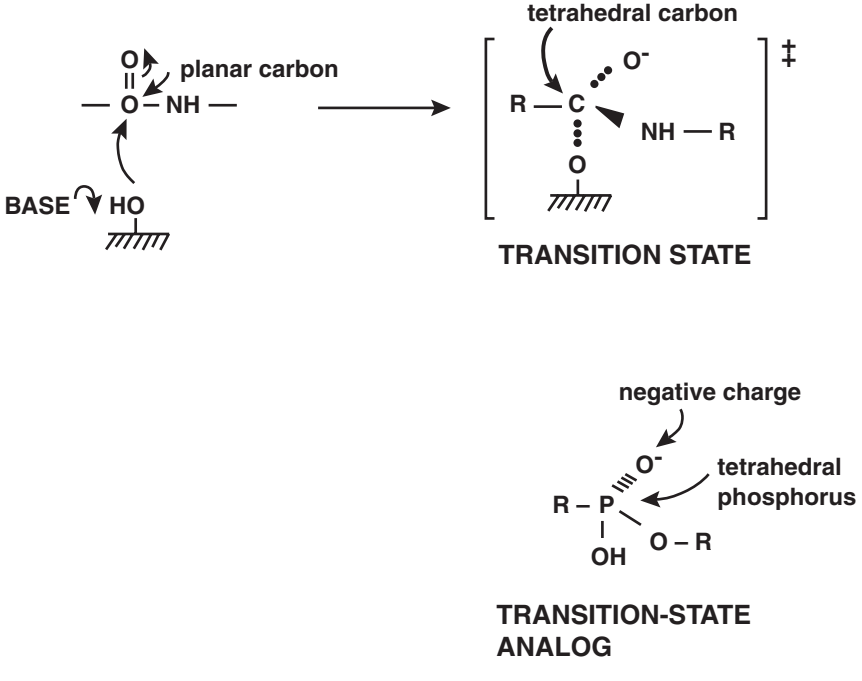


Figure 7-8
TRANSITION-STATE ANALOGS are stable molecules that are designed to look more like the transition state than like the substrate or product. Transition-state analogs usually bind to the enzyme they're designed to inhibit much more tightly (by 1000-fold or more) than the substrate does.

realization that transition states bind so tightly has led to more effective drugs. Protease inhibitors used to treat HIV infections were based on this concept.

CHEMICAL CATALYSIS

The amino acid side chains and enzymes cofactors provide functional groups that are used to make the reaction go faster by providing new pathways and by making existing pathways faster.

Many chemical reactions can be made to occur faster by the use of appropriately placed catalytic groups. Enzymes, because of their three-dimensional structure, are great at putting just the right group in the right place at the right time. Take the simple reaction of the addition of water to a carbonyl group (Fig. 7-9). We can talk about two factors with this one reaction. The carbonyl group is reactive toward water because the carbonyl group is polarized—the electrons of the C═O are not shared equally between the carbon and the oxygen. The carbon atom has fewer of them (because oxygen is more electronegative). As the water attacks the carbonyl oxygen, the electrons in the bond being broken (C═O) shift to oxygen, giving it a formal negative charge. Putting a positively

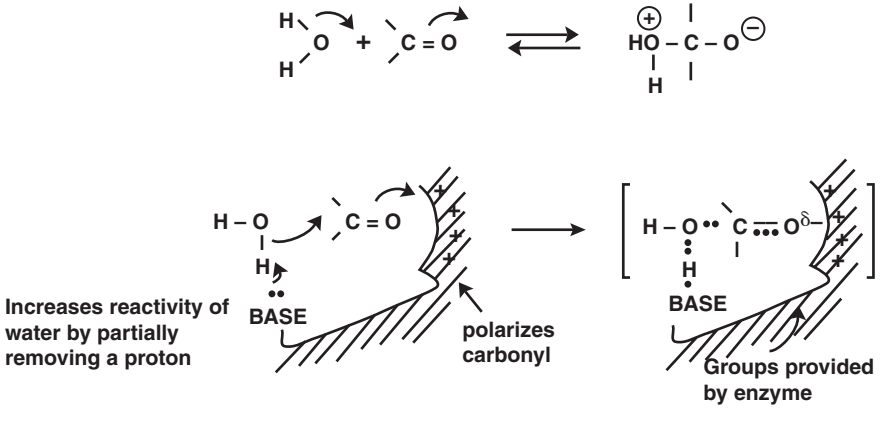


Figure 7-9
An enzyme can **STABILIZE THE TRANSITION STATE** by providing specific interactions with developing charge and shape features that are present only in the transition state. These interactions are not available to the uncatalyzed reaction.

charged group near the oxygen of the carbonyl group polarizes the carbonyl group and makes the carbonyl more reactive by helping stabilize the development of negative charge on oxygen as the chemical reaction proceeds (*electrostatic catalysis*).

Now let's look at what we can do with the water. Because it has more negative charge (a higher electron density), $^{-}$OH is more reactive than HOH. By providing an appropriately placed base to at least partially remove one of the protons from the attacking water molecule, we can increase the reactivity of this water and make the reaction go faster. This is known as *acid–base catalysis* and is widely used by enzymes to help facilitate the transfer of protons during chemical reactions.

Another alternative is for the enzyme to actually form a covalent bond between the enzyme and the substrate. This direct, covalent participation of the enzyme in the chemical reaction is termed *covalent catalysis*. The enzyme uses one of its functional groups to react with the substrate. This enzyme–substrate bond must form fast, and the intermediates must be reasonably reactive if this kind of catalysis is going to give a rate acceleration.

• C H A P T E R • 8 •

ENZYME KINETICS

•

S, P, and E (Substrate, Product, Enzyme)

Amounts and Concentrations

Active Site

Assay

Velocity

Initial Velocity

Mechanism

Little *k*'s

Michaelis-Menten Equation

V_{max}

k_{cat}

K_m

Special Points

k_{cat}/K_m

Rate Accelerations

Steady-State Approximation

Transformations and Graphs

Inhibition

Allosterism and Cooperativity

The Monod-Wyman-Changeaux Model

• • • • • • • • • • • •

Kinetics seems scary, but understanding just a few things spells relief. Two problems with kinetics are the screwy (and often unexplained) units and the concepts of *rate* and *rate constant*. And you can't ignore enzyme kinetics; it forms the foundation of metabolic regulation, provides a diagnostic measure of tissue damage, and lies at the heart of drug design and therapy.

S, P, AND E (SUBSTRATE, PRODUCT, ENZYME)

Enzyme (E) converts substrate(s) (S) to product(s) (P) and accelerates the rate.

The most well-studied enzyme catalyzes the reaction S⇌P. The kinetic question is how time influences the amount of S and P. In the absence of enzyme, the conversion of S to P is slow and uncontrolled. In the presence of a specific enzyme (S-to-Pase[1]), S is converted swiftly and specifically to product. S-to-Pase is specific; it will not convert A to B or X to Y. Enzymes also provide a rate acceleration. If you compare the rate of a chemical reaction in solution with the rate of the same reaction with the reactants bound to the enzyme, the enzyme reaction will occur up to 10^{14} times faster.

AMOUNTS AND CONCENTRATIONS

AMOUNT	CONCENTRATION
A *quantity*	A *quantity/volume*
mg, mole	*M* (mol/L), μ*M*
g, μmol	m*M*, mg/mL
units	units/mL

Quantities such as milligrams (mg), micromoles (μmol), and units refer to amounts. Concentration is the amount per volume, so that molar (*M*), micromolar (μ*M*), milligrams per milliliter (mg/ml), and units per milliliter (units/ml) are concentrations. A unit is the amount of enzyme that will catalyze the conversion of 1 μmol of substrate to product in 1 min under a given set of conditions.

[1] Enzymes are named by a systematic set of rules that nobody follows. The only given is that enzyme names end in -ase and may have something in them that may say something about the type of reaction they catalyze—such as chymotrypsin, pepsin, and enterokinase (all proteases).

The concentrations of substrate and product are invariably in molar units (*M*; this includes m*M*, μ*M*, etc.), but enzyme concentrations may be given in molar (*M*), milligrams per milliliter (mg/mL), or units/mL. The amount of enzyme you have can be expressed in molecules, milligrams, nanomoles (nmol), or units. A *unit* of enzyme is the amount of enzyme that will catalyze the formation of 1 μmol of product per minute under specifically defined conditions. A unit is an amount, not a concentration.

Units of enzyme can be converted to milligrams of enzyme if you know a conversion factor called the *specific activity*. Specific activity is the amount of enzyme activity per milligram of protein (micromoles of product formed per minute per milligram of protein, or units per milligram). For a given pure enzyme under a defined set of conditions, the specific activity is a constant; however, different enzymes have different specific activities. To convert units of enzyme to milligrams of enzyme, divide by the specific activity: units/(units/milligram) = milligrams. Specific activity is often used as a rough criterion of purity, since in crude mixtures very few of the milligrams of protein will actually be the enzyme of interest. There may be a large number of units of activity, but there will also be a large amount of protein, most of which is not the enzyme. As the enzyme becomes more pure, you'll get the same units but with less protein, and the specific activity will increase. When the protein is pure, the specific activity will reach a constant value.

Enzyme concentrations in milligrams per milliliter can be converted to molar units by dividing by the molecular weight (in mg/mmol).[2]

$$\frac{\text{mg/mL}}{\text{mg/mmol}} = \frac{\text{mmol}}{\text{mL}} = M$$

ACTIVE SITE

The active site is the special place, cavity, crevice, chasm, cleft, or hole that binds and then magically transforms the substrate to the product. The kinetic behavior of enzymes is a direct consequence of the protein's having a limited number (often 1) of specific active sites.

[2] mmol/mL and μmol/μL are both the same as mol/L or *M*. Other useful realizations include m*M* = μmol/mL.

Most of enzyme kinetics (and mechanism) revolves around the active site. As we'll see later, saturation kinetics is one of the direct consequences of an active site.

ASSAY

An assay is the act of measuring how fast a given (or unknown) amount of enzyme will convert substrate to product—the act of measuring a velocity.

How fast a given amount of substrate is converted to a product depends on how much enzyme is present. By measuring how much product is formed in a given time, the amount of enzyme present can be determined. An assay requires that you have some way to determine the concentration of product or substrate at a given time after starting the reaction. If the product and substrate have different UV or visible spectra, fluorescence spectra, and so forth, the progress of the reaction can be followed by measuring the change in the spectrum with time. If there are no convenient spectral changes, physical separation of substrate and product may be necessary. For example, with a radioactive substrate, the appearance of radioactivity in the product can be used to follow product formation.

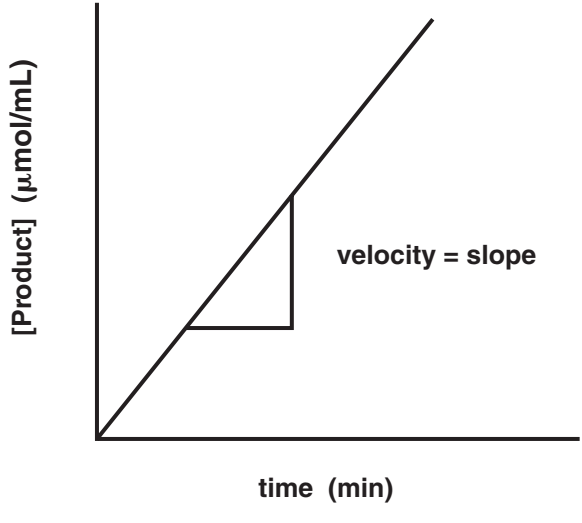
VELOCITY

Velocity—*rate, v, activity,* $d[P]/dt$, $-d[S]/dt$—is how fast an enzyme converts substrate to product, the amount of substrate consumed, or product formed per unit time. Units are micromoles per minute (μmol/min) = units.

There are a number of interchangeable words for velocity: the change in substrate or product concentration per time; rate; just plain *v* (for velocity, often written in italics to convince you it's special); activity; or the calculus equivalent, the first derivative of the product or substrate concentration with respect to time, $d[P]/dt$ or $-d[S]/dt$ (the minus means it's going away). Regardless of confusion, velocity (by any of its names) is just how fast you're going. Rather than miles per hour, enzyme velocity is measured in molar per minute (M/min) or more usually in micromolar per minute (μM/min).

Figure 8-1 shows what happens when enzyme is added to a solution of substrate. In the absence of enzyme, product appearance is slow, and there is only a small change in product concentration with time (low rate). After enzyme is added, the substrate is converted to product at a much faster rate. To measure velocity, you have to actually measure two things: product (or substrate) concentration and time. You need a device to measure concentration and a clock. Velocity is the *slope* of a plot of product (or substrate) concentration (or amount) against time.

Velocity can be expressed in a number of different units. The most common is micromolar per minute (μM/min); however, because the velocity depends on the amount of enzyme used in the assay, the velocity is often normalized for the amount of enzyme present by expressing the activity in units of micromoles per minute per milligram of enzyme [μmol/(min · mg)]. This is called a *specific activity*. You may be wondering (or not) where the volume went—after all, product concentration is measured in molar units (M; mol/L). Well, it's really still there, but it



$$\text{velocity} = \frac{\Delta\,[\text{Product}]}{\Delta\,\text{time}} \quad \left(\frac{\mu\text{mol}}{\text{mL}\cdot\text{min}}\right)$$

Figure 8-1
The **VELOCITY** of product formation (or substrate disappearance) is defined as the change in product concentration per unit time. It is the slope of a plot of product concentration against time. The velocity of product formation is the same as the velocity of substrate disappearance (except that substrate goes away, whereas product is formed).

canceled out, and you don't see it because both the product and enzyme are expressed in concentration units; both are per milliliter. Let's do a numerical example.

Adding 0.1 μg of fumarase to a solution of 5 m*M* fumarate (substrate) in a final volume of 1.0 mL results in the formation of 0.024 μmol of malate (product) per minute. At the beginning of the reaction, the concentration of product is zero. If we wait 10 min. 10×0.024 μmol of malate will be made, or 0.24 μmol. In a volume of 1 mL, 0.24 μmol represents a concentration of 0.24 m*M*. So, over a period of 10 min, the concentration of malate went from 0 to 0.24 m*M* while the concentration of fumerate went from 5 to 4.76 m*M* (5 m*M* − 0.24 m*M*). The specific activity of the enzyme would be [0.024 μmol/(min · mL)]/(0.1×10^{-3} mg fumarase/mL) or 240 μmol/(min · mg).

To make matters worse, velocity is often reporting using the change in the amount of product per time (μmol/min). To actually determine the concentration, you need to know the volume. The key unit that always shows up somewhere with velocities and never cancels out is the *per time* part; the rest can usually be sorted out, depending on whether you're dealing with amounts or concentrations.

INITIAL VELOCITY

This is the measurement of the rate under conditions under which there is no significant change in the concentration of substrate.

As substrate is consumed, the substrate concentration falls and the reaction may get slower. As product is made, the reaction may slow down if the product is an inhibitor of the enzyme. Some enzymes are unstable and die as you're assaying them. All these things may cause the velocity to change with time. If the velocity is constant with time, the plot of product against time is a straight line; however, if velocity changes with time (the slope changes with time), this plot is curved (Fig. 8-2).

Usually enzyme activities are measured under conditions under which only a tiny bit of the substrate is converted to product (like 1 to 5 percent)[3] This means that the actual concentration of substrate will be very

[3] This is not a completely true statement. As you may see later on, the velocity of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction depends on the concentration of substrate only when the substrate concentration is near the K_m. If we start out with a concentration of substrate that is 1000 times the K_m, most of the substrate will have to be used up before the velocity falls because of a decrease in substrate concentration. If the product of the reaction does not inhibit and the enzyme is stable, the velocity will remain constant for much more than 1 to 5 percent of the reaction. It's only when we're near the K_m that substrate depletion during the assay is a problem.

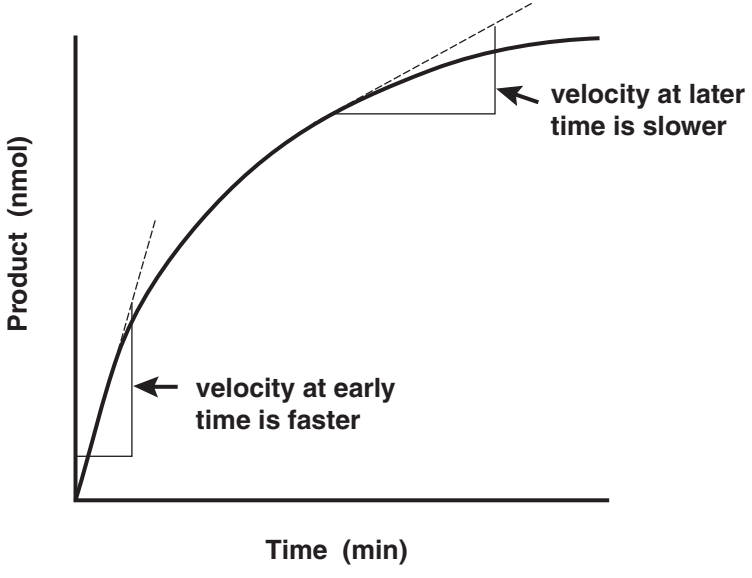


Figure 8-2 The Velocity May Change with Time
The velocity is not necessarily the same at all times after you start the reaction. The depletion of substrate, inhibition by the product, or instability of the enzyme can cause the velocity to change with time. The initial velocity is measured early, before the velocity changes. Initial velocity measurements also let you assume that the amount of substrate has not changed and is equal to the amount of substrate that was added.

close to what you started with. It's obviously changed (or you couldn't have measured it), but it's not changed all that much. When you stick with the initial part of the velocity measurement, the velocity is less likely to change due to substrate depletion, or product inhibition, and you're more likely to know what the actual substrate concentration is. Initial velocity measurements help avoid the dreaded curvature.

MECHANISM

$$E + S \rightleftharpoons ES \rightleftharpoons E + P$$

A mechanism tells you what happens to whom, in what order, and where. The mechanism in the box is the simplest one possible for a one-substrate enzyme. First, the enzyme must find the substrate in solution and bind to it, forming the ES complex in which the substrate is bound at the active site. The ES complex then converts the substrate to product

and releases it. Real enzymes are obviously more complicated and almost never proceed through just one enzyme-substrate–enzyme-product complex—there are often many steps involved. However, even though there may be lots of steps involved, the slowest one will really determine the rate of the overall reaction. For this reason, the Michaelis-Menten mechanism and equation (see later) describe the behavior of a large number of enzymes. Many very complex mechanisms often follow the simple Michaelis-Menten equation when only one substrate is varied at a time and the others are held constant.

LITTLE *k*'s

First-order:	$A \longrightarrow B$	$v = k[A]$	k in s^{-1}
Second-order:	$A + B \longrightarrow C$	$v = k[A][B]$	k in $M^{-1}s^{-1}$

The K_m and V_{max} of the Michaelis-Menten equation are actually made up of sums and products of little *k*'s. You only have to look in most biochemistry texts to see a description of the derivation of the Michaelis-Menten equation in terms of little *k*'s. The little *k*'s are like quarks and leptons—you've heard the names, but you're not quite sure what they are and even less sure about how they work. There's a section later (actually last) in the book if you haven't heard or can't remember about rate constants.

The little *k*'s are rate constants (numbers) that tell you how fast the individual steps are. You will see two kinds of little *k*'s, rate constants—first-order and second-order (Fig. 8-3).

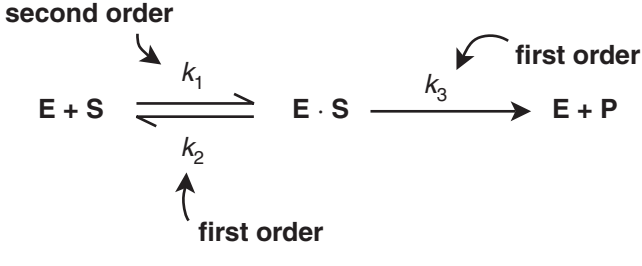


Figure 8-3 The Simplest Enzyme Mechanism
A mechanism provides a description of individual chemical steps that make up the overall reaction. How fast each reaction occurs is governed by the rate constant for the reaction. The observable kinetic constants K_m and V_{max} are related to the individual rate constants for the individual steps by a bunch of algebra.

First-order rate constants are used to describe reactions of the type A → B. In the simple mechanism for enzyme catalysis, the reactions leading away from ES in both directions are of this type. The velocity of ES disappearance by any single pathway (such as the ones labeled k_2 and k_3) depends on the fraction of ES molecules that have sufficient energy to get across the specific activation barrier (hump) and decompose along a specific route. ES gets this energy from collision with solvent and from thermal motions in ES itself. The velocity of a first-order reaction depends linearly on the amount of ES left at any time. Since velocity has units of molar per minute (*M*/min) and ES has units of molar (*M*), the little *k* (first-order rate constant) must have units of reciprocal minutes (1/min, or min^{-1}). Since only one molecule of ES is involved in the reaction, this case is called *first-order kinetics*. The velocity depends on the substrate concentration raised to the first power ($v = k[\text{A}]$).

The reaction of E with S is of a different type, called *second order*. Second-order reactions are usually found in reactions of the type A + B → C. The velocity of a second-order reaction depends on how easy it is for E and S to find each other in the abyss of aqueous solution. Obviously, lower E or lower S concentration make this harder. For second-order reactions, the velocity depends on the product of both of the reacting species ($v = k[\text{S}][\text{E}]$). Here *k* must have units of reciprocal molar minutes ($M^{-1}\ \text{min}^{-1}$) so that the units on the left and right sides balance. The second-order rate constant in the mechanism of Fig. 8-3 is k_1.

Another special case deserves comment—zero-order reactions. For a reaction that is zero-order with respect to a given substrate, the velocity does not depend on the concentration of substrate. We see zero-order behavior at V_{max}; the reaction is zero-order in the concentration of substrate. Note that even at V_{max}, the reaction is full first order in the concentration of enzyme (the rate increases as the enzyme concentration increases).

MICHAELIS-MENTEN EQUATION

Hyperbolic kinetics, saturation kinetics

$$v = \frac{V_{\text{max}}[\text{S}]}{(K_m + [\text{S}])}$$

Velocity depends on substrate concentration when [S] is low but does not depend on substrate concentration when [S] is high.

Equations are useless by themselves—what's important is what the equation tells you about how the enzyme behaves. You should be able to escape biochemistry having learned only three equations. This is one of them. The Michaelis-Menten equation describes the way in which the velocity of an enzyme reaction depends on the substrate concentration. Memorize it and understand it because the same equation (with only the names of the symbols changed) describes receptor binding and oxygen binding to myoglobin. In the cell, the enzyme is exposed to changes in the level of the substrate. The way the enzyme behaves is to increase the velocity when the substrate concentration increases. The dependence of enzyme velocity on the concentration of substrate is the first line of metabolic regulation. In cells, enzymes are often exposed to concentrations of the substrate that are near to or lower than the K_m. Some enzymes have evolved to have K_m's near the physiological substrate concentration so that changes in the substrate levels in the cell cause changes in the velocity of the reaction—the more substrate, the faster the reaction.

Mathematically, the Michaelis-Menten equation is the equation of a rectangular hyperbola. Sometimes you'll here reference to *hyperbolic kinetics*; this means it follows the Michaelis-Menten equation. A number of other names also imply that a particular enzyme obeys the Michaelis-Menten equation: Michaelis-Menten behavior, saturation kinetics, and hyperbolic kinetics.

The initial velocity is measured at a series of different substrate concentrations. In all cases the concentration of substrate used is much higher (by thousands of times, usually) than that of the enzyme. Each substrate concentration requires a separate measurement of the initial velocity. At low concentrations of substrate, increasing the substrate concentration increases the velocity of the reaction, but at high substrate concentrations, increasing the initial substrate concentration does not have much of an effect on the velocity (Fig. 8-4).

The derivation of the equation is found in most texts and for the most part can be ignored. What you want to understand is how and why it works as it does.

$$v = \frac{d[\mathrm{P}]}{dt} = -\frac{d[\mathrm{S}]}{dt} = \frac{V_{\max}[\mathrm{S}]}{K_m + [\mathrm{S}]}$$

When there is no substrate present ([S] = 0), there is no velocity—so far, so good. As the substrate concentration [S] is increased, the reaction goes faster as the enzyme finds it easier and easier to locate the substrate in solution. At low substrate concentrations ([S] $\ll K_m$), doubling the concentration of substrate causes the velocity to double.

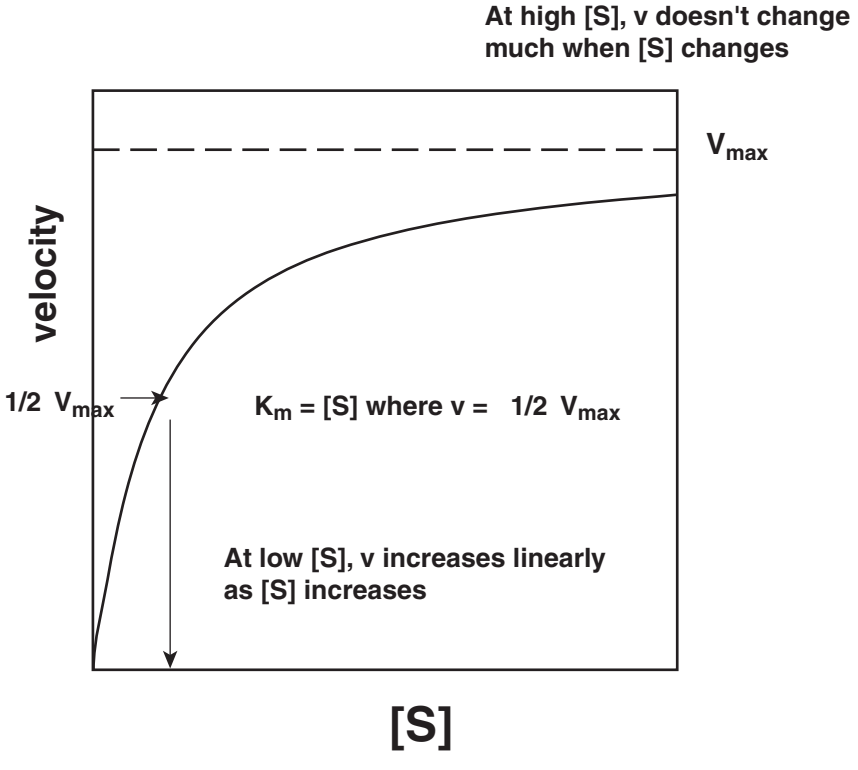

At high [S], v doesn't change much when [S] changes
V_{max}
velocity
1/2 V_{max}
K_m = [S] where v = 1/2 V_{max}
At low [S], v increases linearly as [S] increases
[S]

Figure 8-4
SUBSTRATE CONCENTRATION affects the velocity of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction. Almost all enzyme-catalyzed reactions show saturation behavior. At a high enough substrate concentration, the reaction just won't go any faster than V_{max}. The substrate concentration required to produce a velocity that is one-half of V_{max} is called the K_m.

As the initial substrate concentration becomes higher and higher, at some concentration, the substrate is so easy to find that all the enzyme active sites are occupied with bound substrate (or product). The enzyme is termed *saturated* at this point, and further increases in substrate concentration will not make the reaction go any faster. With [S] $\gg K_m$, the velocity approaches V_{max}.

The actual velocity of the reaction depends on how much of the total amount of enzyme is present in the enzyme–substrate (ES) complex. At low substrate concentrations, very little of the enzyme is present as the ES complex—most of it is free enzyme that does not have substrate bound. At very high substrate concentrations, virtually all the enzyme is

in the ES complex. In fact, the amount of enzyme in the ES complex is just given by the ratio of v/V_{max}, that is, $ES/(ES + E) = v/V_{max} = [S]/(K_m + [S])$.

V_{max}

This is the velocity approached at a saturating concentration of substrate. V_{max} has the same units as v.

The V_{max} is a special point. At V_{max}, the velocity does not depend on the concentration of substrate. Most assays are performed at substrate concentrations that are near saturating (the word *near* is usually used because V_{max}, like Nirvana, is approached, not reached). For practical people, though, 99 percent of V_{max} is as good as V_{max}. The V_{max} and v have exactly the same units. The V_{max} conceals the dependence of the velocity on the concentration of enzyme. It's buried in there. If V_{max} is expressed in units of micromolar per minute (μM/min), then doubling the enzyme concentration doubles V_{max}; in contrast, if V_{max} (and v) are given in units of micromoles per minute per milligram [μmol/(min · mg), i.e., specific activity], the normalized velocity and V_{max} won't depend on enzyme concentration.

k_{cat}

Turnover number—another way of expressing V_{max}.
Micromoles of product made per minute per micromole of enzyme (V_{max}/E_t). The k_{cat} is the first-order rate constant for the conversion of the enzyme–substrate complex to product.

The turnover number, or k_{cat} (pronounced "kay kat"), is another way of expressing V_{max}. It's V_{max} divided by the total concentration of enzyme (V_{max}/E_t). The k_{cat} is a specific activity in which the amount of enzyme is expressed in micromoles rather than milligrams. The actual units of k_{cat} are micromoles of product per minute per micromole of enzyme. Frequently, the micromoles cancel (even though they're not exactly the same), to give you units of reciprocal minutes (min^{-1}). Notice that this has the same units as a first-order rate constant (see later, or see Chap. 24). The k_{cat} is the first-order rate constant for conversion of the enzyme–substrate complex to product. For a very simple mechanism, such as the one shown earlier, k_{cat} would be equal to k_3. For more complex

mechanisms k_{cat} is actually a collection of sums and products of rate constants for individual steps of the mechanism.

K_m

This is the concentration of substrate required to produce a velocity that is one-half of V_{max}.

If [S] = K_m, the Michaelis-Menten equation says that the velocity will be one-half of V_{max}. (Try substituting [S] for K_m in the Michaelis-Menten equation, and you too can see this directly.) It's really the relationship between K_m and [S] that determines where you are along the hyperbola. Like most of the rest of biochemistry, K_m is backward. The larger the K_m, the weaker the interaction between the enzyme and the substrate. K_m is also a collection of rate constants. It may not be equal to the true dissociation constant of the ES complex (i.e., the equilibrium constant for ES $\rightleftharpoons$ E + S).

SPECIAL POINTS

$$[S] \ll K_m \qquad v = V_{max}[S]/K_m$$
$$[S] \gg K_m \qquad v = V_{max}$$
$$[S] = K_m \qquad v = V_{max}/2$$

The K_m is a landmark to help you find your way around a rectangular hyperbola and your way around enzyme behavior. When [S] $\ll K_m$ (this means [S] + K_m = K_m), the Michaelis-Menten equation says that the velocity will be given by $v = (V_{max}/K_m)[S]$. The velocity depends linearly on [S]. Doubling [S] doubles the rate.

At high substrate concentrations relative to K_m ([S] $\gg K_m$), The Michaelis-Menten equation reduces to $v = V_{max}$, substrate concentration disappears, and the dependence of velocity on substrate concentration approaches a horizontal line. When the reaction velocity is independent of the concentration of the substrate, as it is at V_{max}, it's given the name *zero-order kinetics*.

k_{cat}/K_m

The specificity constant, k_{cat}/K_m, is the second-order rate constant for the reaction of E and S to produce product. It has units of $M^{-1}min^{-1}$.

The term k_{cat}/K_m describes the reaction of any enzyme and substrate at low substrate concentration. At low substrate concentration, the velocity of an enzyme-catalyzed reaction is proportional to the substrate concentration and the enzyme concentration. The proportionality constant is k_{cat}/K_m and $v = (k_{cat}/K_m)[S]\ [E]_T$. If you're real astute, you'll have noticed that this is just a second-order rate equation and that the second-order rate constant is k_{cat}/K_m.

The term k_{cat}/K_m lets you rank enzymes according to how good they are with different substrates. It contains information about how fast the reaction of a given substrate would be when it's bound to the enzyme (k_{cat}) and how much of the substrate is required to reach half of V_{max}. Given two substrates, which will the enzyme choose? The quantity k_{cat}/K_m tells you which one the enzyme likes most—which one will react faster.

The term k_{cat}/K_m is also the second-order rate constant for the reaction of the free enzyme (E) with the substrate (S) to give product. The k_{cat}/K_m is a collection of rate constants, even for the simple reaction mechanism shown earlier. Formally, k_{cat}/K_m is given by the pile of rate constants $k_1k_3/(k_2 + k_3)$. If $k_3 \gg k_2$, this reduces to k_1, the rate of encounter between E and S. Otherwise, k_{cat}/K_m is a complex collection of rate constants, but it is still the second-order rate constant that is observed for the reaction at low substrate concentration.

RATE ACCELERATIONS[4]

Compare apples to apples and first order to first order.

To impress you, enzymologists often tell you how much faster their enzyme is than the uncatalyzed reaction. These comparisons are tricky. Here's the problem: Suppose we know that the reaction S → P has a first-order rate constant of 1×10^{-3} min^{-1} (a half-life of 693 min). When an enzyme catalyzes transformation of S to P, we have more than one reaction:

$$E + S \underset{k_2}{\overset{k_1}{\rightleftharpoons}} ES \xrightarrow{k_3} E + P$$

Which of these reactions do we pick to compare with the noncatalyzed reaction? We can't pick k_1, because that's a second-order reaction. You

[4] If you're reading this section because you want to understand how rate accelerations are actually determined, proceed; however, this information will be pretty low on the trivia sorter list.

can't directly compare first- and second-order reactions—the units are different. The comparison to make in this case is with k_3. You're actually comparing the first-order rate constant for the reaction when the substrate is free in solution to the first-order rate constant for the reaction when the substrate is bound to the enzyme. So, for a first-order reaction, we compare the uncatalyzed rate constant to the k_{cat} for the enzyme-catalyzed reaction. If k_{cat} were 10^3 min^{-1} (half-life of 0.000693 min, or 41 ms), the rate acceleration would be 10^6-fold.

What about reactions of the type A + B → C? This is a second-order reaction, and the second-order rate constant has units of $M^{-1}min^{-1}$. The enzyme-catalyzed reaction is even more complicated than the very simple one shown earlier. We obviously want to use a second-order rate constant for the comparison, but which one? There are several options, and all types of comparisons are often made (or avoided). For enzyme-catalyzed reactions with two substrates, there are two K_m values, one for each substrate. That means that there are two k_{cat}/K_m values, one for each substrate. The k_{cat}/K_A[5] in this case describes the second-order rate constant for the reaction of substrate A with whatever form of the enzyme exists at a saturating level B. Cryptic enough? The form of the enzyme that is present at a saturating level of B depends on whether or not B can bind to the enzyme in the absence of A.[6] If B can bind to E in the absence of A, then k_{cat}/K_A will describe the second-order reaction of A with the EB complex. This would be a reasonably valid comparison to show the effect of the enzyme on the reaction. But if B can't bind to the enzyme in the absence of A, k_{cat}/K_A will describe the second-order reaction of A with the enzyme (not the EB complex). This might not be quite so good a comparison.

STEADY-STATE APPROXIMATION

This is an assumption used to derive the Michaelis-Menten equation in which the velocity of ES formation is assumed to be equal to the velocity of ES breakdown.

As with most assumptions and approximations, those professors who do not ignore this entirely will undoubtedly think that you should at least know that it's an assumption. What the steady-state assumption actually

[5] K_A is the K_m for substrate A determined at a saturating level of substrate B.

[6] Sometimes the binding site for one substrate does not exist until the other substrate binds to the enzyme. This creates a specific binding order in which A must bind before B can bind (or vice versa).

does is to allow enzyme kineticists (a hale, hardy, wise, but somewhat strange breed) to avoid calculus and differential equations. Think about what happens when E and S are mixed for the first time. E begins to react with S. Although the S concentration is large and constant, the E concentration begins to drop as it is converted to ES ($v = k_1[E][S]$). At the same time, the velocity of ES breakdown to E + S and to E + P starts to rise as the ES concentration increases. Since ES is destroyed by two different reactions, the velocity of ES breakdown is the sum of the velocities of the two pathways ($v = k_2[ES] + k_3[ES]$). At some point, the concentrations of E and ES will be just right, and the velocity at which ES is created will be exactly matched by the velocity at which ES is converted to other things. As long as the velocity of ES formation remains the same as the velocity of ES destruction, the concentration of ES will have to stay constant with time. At this point the system has reached steady state. At steady state, the concentration of ES (and other enzyme species) won't change with time (until [S] decreases, but we won't let that happen because we're measuring initial velocity kinetics). If the concentration of the ES complex doesn't change with time, it really means that $d[ES]/dt = 0$. This has consequences.

At any time, the velocity of product formation is

$$v = k_3[ES]$$

The k_3 is just a constant. What we don't know is [ES], mainly because we don't know how much of our enzyme is present as [E]. But we do know how much total enzyme we have around—it's how much we added.

$$[E]_{total} = [E] + [ES]$$

But we still don't know [ES]. We need another equation that has [E] and [ES] in it. Here's where the steady state approximation comes in handy. At steady state, the change in the concentration of [ES] is zero, and the velocity of [ES] formation equals the velocity of [ES] breakdown.

$$\begin{aligned} v_{formation} &= k_1[E] \\ v_{breakdown} &= k_2[ES] + k_3[ES] \\ k_1[E] &= (k_2 + k_3)[ES] \end{aligned}$$

The rest is simple algebra.[7] Solve the preceding equation for [E] and stick the result in the equation for $[E]_{total}$. The E and ES should disappear at

[7] At least, it's simpler than calculus.

this point, and you should be left with something that has only k's and $[E]_{total}$ in it. Call $k_3[E]_t$ by the name V_{max} and call $(k_2 + k_3)/k_1$ by the name K_m, and you've just derived the Michaelis-Menten equation.

TRANFORMATIONS AND GRAPHS

$1/v$ vs. $1/[S]$	Lineweaver-Burk
v vs. $v/[S]$	Eadie-Hofstee
$[S]/v$ vs. $[S]$	Hanes-Wolf

Confirming that curved lines are the nemesis of the biochemist, at least three or more different transformations of the Michaelis-Menten equation have been invented (actually four)—each one of which took two people to accomplish (Fig. 8-5). The purpose of these plots is to allow you to determine the values of K_m and V_{max} with nothing but a ruler and a piece of paper and to allow professors to take a straightforward question about the Michaelis-Menten expression and turn it upside down (and/or backward). You might think that turning a backward quantity like K_m upside down would make everything simpler—somehow it doesn't work that way.

Don't bother memorizing these equations—they're all straight lines with an x and y intercept and a slope. The useful information (V_{max} or K_m) will either be on the x and y intercepts or encoded in the slope (y intercept/x intercept). Remember that v has the same units as V_{max}, and K_m has the same units as [S]. Look at the label on the axes and it will tell you what the intercept on this axis should give in terms of units. Then match these units with the units of V_{max} and [S].

The y intercept of a Lineweaver-Burk plot ($1/v$ is the y axis) is $1/V_{max}$ (same units as $1/v$). The x intercept has the same units as $1/[S]$ so that $1/K_m$ (actually $-1/K_m$) is the x intercept. For the Eadie-Hofstee plot, the x axis is $v/[S]$ so that the x intercept is V_{max}/K_m (units of the x axis are $v/[S]$ units). Get the idea?

The useful thing about the Lineweaver-Burk transform (or double reciprocal) is that the y intercept is related to the first-order rate constant for decomposition of the ES complex to E + P (k_{cat} or V_{max}) and is equal to the rate observed with all of the enzyme in the ES complex. The slope, in contrast, is equal to the velocity when the predominant form of the enzyme is the *free* enzyme, E (*free* meaning unencumbered rather than cheap).

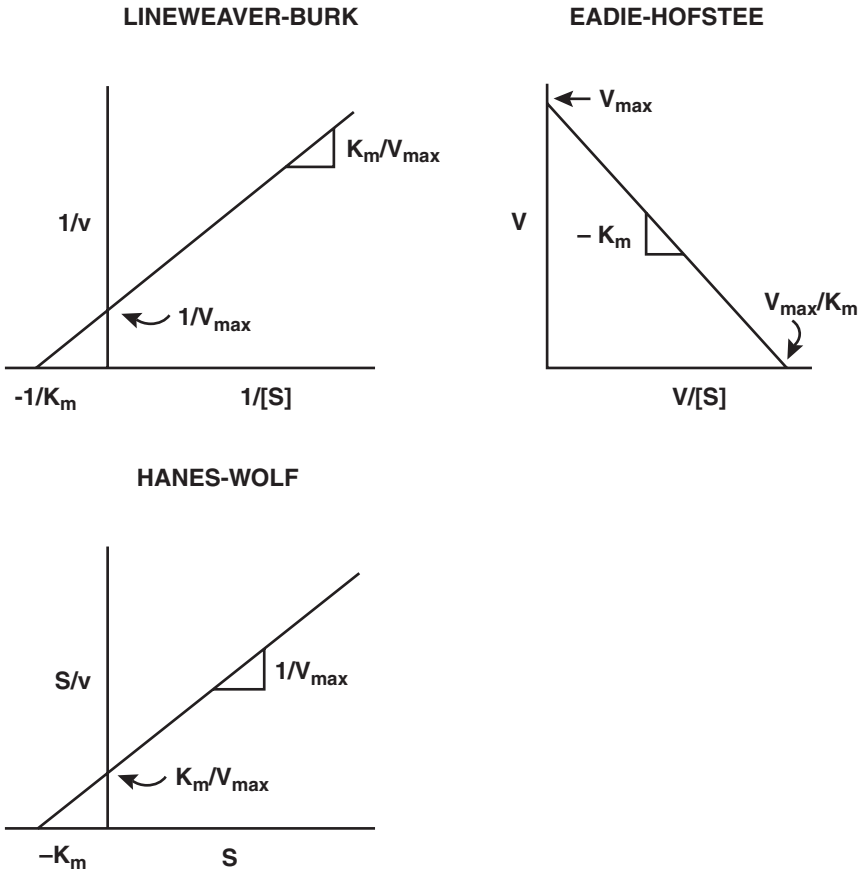


Figure 8-5
TO AVOID CURVED PLOTS there are several ways to rearrange the Michaelis-Menten equation so that data can be plotted to give a straight line. The slope and intercepts give you values for K_m and V_{max} or give you values from which K_m and V_{max} can be calculated.

INHIBITION

Competitive: Slope effect
Uncompetitive: Intercept effect
Noncompetitive: Slope and intercept effect

Inhibitors are molecules that often resemble the substrate(s) or product(s) and bind reversibly to the active site (this means if you remove the inhibitor, the inhibition goes away). Binding of the inhibitor to the active site prevents the enzyme from turning over.[8] Many drugs are reversible enzyme inhibitors that have their physiological effect by decreasing the activity of a specific enzyme. If an inhibitor has an effect on the velocity, it will be to decrease the velocity. The concentration of inhibitor needed to inhibit the enzyme depends on how tightly the inhibitor binds to the enzyme. The *inhibition constant* (K_i) is used to describe how tightly an inhibitor binds to an enzyme. It refers to the equilibrium dissociation constant of the enzyme-inhibitor complex (equilibrium constant for $EI \rightleftharpoons E + I$). The bigger the K_i, the weaker the binding.

There are three types of reversible inhibition: competitive, uncompetitive, and noncompetitive. Most texts acknowledge only two kinds of inhibition—competitive and noncompetitive (or mixed). This approach makes it difficult to explain inhibition on an intuitive level, so we'll use all three types of inhibition and explain what the other nomenclature means in the last paragraph of this section.

Inhibition experiments are performed by varying the concentration of substrate around the K_m just as you would in an experiment to determine the K_m and V_{max}, except that the experiment is repeated at several different concentrations of an inhibitor. On a Lineweaver-Burk transformation ($1/v$ vs. $1/[S]$), each different inhibitor concentration will be represented as a different straight line (Fig. 8-6). The pattern that the lines make tells you the kind of inhibition. There are three possibilities: (1) The inhibitor can affect only the slopes of the plot (competitive), (2) the inhibitor can affect only the y intercepts of the plot (uncompetitive), or (3) the inhibitor can affect both the slopes and the intercepts (noncompetitive). Plots are plots, and what's really important is not the pattern on a piece of paper but what the pattern tells us about the behavior of the enzyme.

The Lineweaver-Burk plot is very useful for our purposes since the y axis intercept of this plot ($1/V_{max}$) shows the effect of the inhibitor at a very high concentration of the substrate. In contrast, the slope of this plot (K_m/V_{max}) shows the effect of the inhibitor at a very low concentration of substrate.

The hallmarks of competitive inhibition are that V_{max} is not affected by adding the inhibitor and the plots intersect on the y axis. A high concentration of substrate prevents the inhibitor from exerting its effect.

[8] An enzyme's turning over is not like a trick your dog can do. *Enzyme turnover* refers to the cyclic process by which the enzyme turns the substrate over into product and is regenerated.

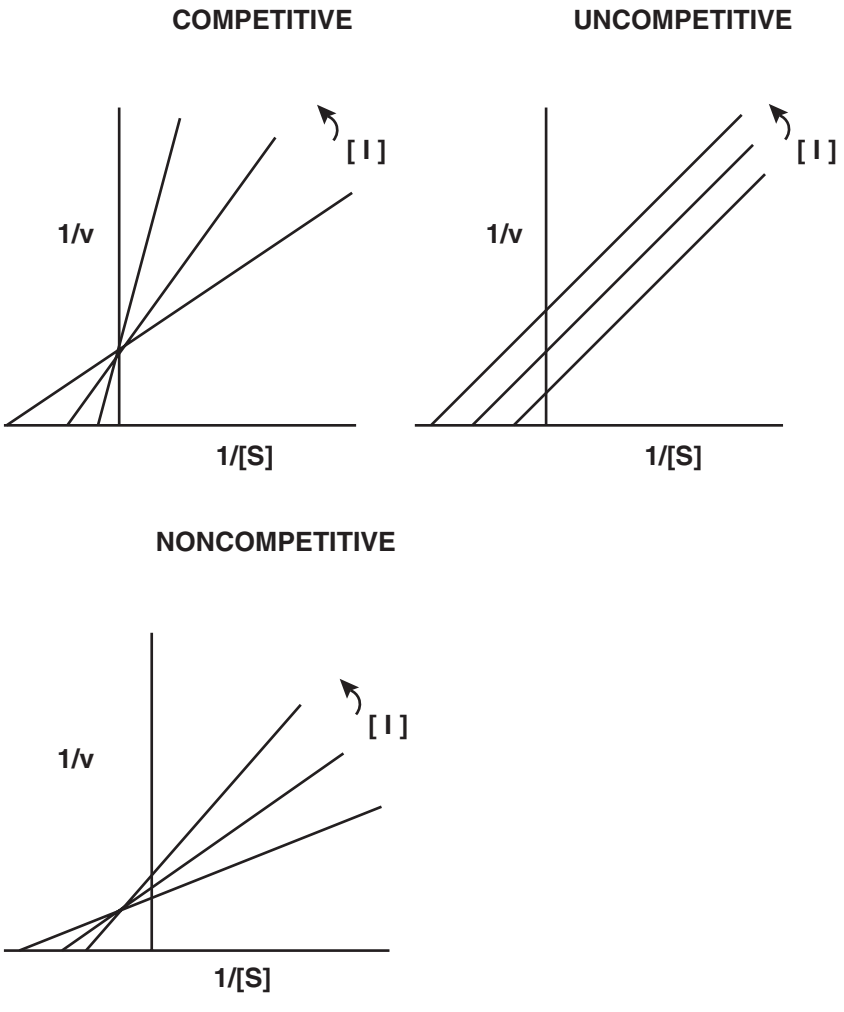
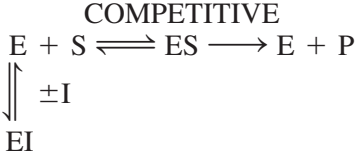


Figure 8-6 Enzyme Inhibition
An inhibitor can have different effects on the velocity when the substrate concentration is varied. If the inhibitor and substrate compete for the same form of the enzyme, the inhibition is **COMPETITIVE**. If not, the inhibition is either **NONCOMPETITIVE** or **UNCOMPETITIVE** depending on whether or not the inhibitor can affect the velocity at low substrate concentrations.

COMPETITIVE INHIBITION

Competitive inhibitors bind only to the free enzyme and to the same site as the substrate. Competitive inhibitors are molecules that usually look like the substrate but can't undergo the reaction. At an infinite concentration of the substrate ($1/[S] = 0$), the competitive inhibitor cannot bind to the enzyme since the substrate concentration is high enough that there is virtually no free enzyme present.

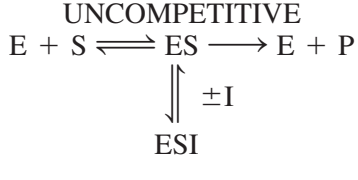


Since competitive inhibitors have no effect on the velocity at saturating (infinite) concentrations of the substrate, the intercepts of the double-reciprocal plots ($1/V_{max}$) at all the different inhibitor concentrations are the same. The lines at different inhibitor concentrations must all intersect on the y axis at the same $1/V_{max}$.

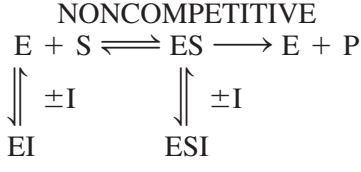
At low concentrations of substrate ($[S] \ll K_m$), the enzyme is predominantly in the E form. The competitive inhibitor can combine with E, so the presense of the inhibitor decreases the velocity when the substrate concentration is low. At low substrate concentration ($[S] \ll K_m$), the velocity is just $V_{max}[S]/K_m$. Since the inhibitor decreases the velocity and the velocity at low substrate concentration is proportional to V_{max}/K_m, the presence of the inhibitor affects the slopes of the Lineweaver-Burk plots; the slope is just the reciprocal of V_{max}/K_m. Increasing the inhibitor concentration causes K_m/V_{max} to increase. The characteristic pattern of competitive inhibition can then be rationalized if you simply remember that a competitive inhibitor combines only with E.

UNCOMPETITIVE INHIBITION

If the inhibitor combines only with ES (and not E), the inhibitor exerts its effect only at high concentrations of substrate at which there is lots of ES around. This means that the substrate you're varying (S) doesn't prevent the binding of the inhibitor and that the substrate and inhibitor bind to two different forms of the enzyme (E and ES, respectively).



At very low substrate concentration ([S] approaches zero), the enzyme is mostly present as E. Since an uncompetitive inhibitor does not combine with E, the inhibitor has no effect on the velocity and no effect on V_{max}/K_m (the slope of the double-reciprocal plot). In this case, termed *uncompetitive*, the slopes of the double-reciprocal plots are independent of inhibitor concentration and only the intercepts are affected. A series of parallel lines results when different inhibitor concentrations are used. This type of inhibition is often observed for enzymes that catalyze the reaction between two substrates. Often an inhibitor that is competitive against one of the substrates is found to give uncompetitive inhibition when the other substrate is varied. The inhibitor does combine at the active site but does not prevent the binding of one of the substrates (and vice versa).



NONCOMPETITIVE INHIBITION

Noncompetitive inhibition results when the inhibitor binds to both E and ES. Here, both the slopes (K_m/V_{max}) and intercepts ($1/V_{max}$) exhibit an effect of the inhibitor. The lines of different inhibitor concentration intersect (their slopes are different), but they do not intersect on the *y* axis (their intercepts are different).

In many texts, the existence of uncompetitive inhibitors is ignored, and noncompetitive inhibitors are called *mixed*. The different types of inhibitors are distinguished by their effects of K_m and V_{max}. It is difficult to rationalize the behavior of inhibitors by discussing their effects on K_m; however, it is well suited for memorization. In this terminology, noncompetitive inhibition is observed when the inhibitor changes V_{max} but doesn't have an effect on K_m. The lines intersect at a common K_m on the *x* axis. In true noncompetitive inhibition, the inhibitor does not effect K_m only if the dissociation constants of the inhibitor from the EI and ESI are the same. Otherwise, the point of intersection in above or below the *x* axis depending on which of the two inhibition constants is bigger. The term *mixed inhibition* is used to refer to noncompetitive inhibition in which both K_m and V_{max} are affected by the inhibitor. This is all terribly and needlessly confusing. If you're not going to be an enzymologist, the best advice is to just give up.

ALLOSTERISM AND COOPERATIVITY

Cooperativity: Observed when the reaction of one substrate molecule with a protein has an effect on the reaction of a second molecule of the substrate with another active site of the protein.

Positive: The binding of the first substrate makes the reaction of the next substrate *easier*.

Negative: The binding of the first substrate makes the reaction of the next substrate *harder*.

Allosterism: The binding of an effector molecule to a seperate site on the enzyme affects the K_m or V_{max} of the enzyme.

Allosterism and cooperativity are lumped together because of the commonality of the structural changes required by both. The essence of both effects is that binding (and catalytic) events at one active site can influence binding (and catalytic) events at another active site in a multimeric protein. Cooperativity requires a protein with mulitple active sites. They are usually located on multiple subunits of a multimeric protein. Cooperative enzymes are usually dimers, trimers, tetramers, and so forth. This implies that the binding of the effector molecule (the one causing the effect) changes the structure of the protein in a way that tells the other subunits that it has been bound. Frequently, the regulatory regions and active sites of allosteric proteins are found at the interface regions between the subunits.

The separation between allosteric effectors and cooperativity lies in the molecule doing the affecting. If the effector molecule acts at another site and the effector is not the substrate, the effect is deemed *allosteric* and *heterotropic*. If the effector molecule is the substrate itself, the effect is called *cooperative* and/or *homotropic*.

Positive cooperativity means that the reaction of substrate with one active site makes it easier for another substrate to react at another active site. Negative cooperativity means that the reaction of a substrate with one active site makes it harder for substrate to react at the other active site(s).

Cooperative enzymes show sigmoid or sigmoidal kinetics because the dependence of the initial velocity on the concentration of the substrate is not Michaelis-Menten-like but gives a *sigmoid* curve (Fig. 8-7).

Since the effects of substrate concentration on the velocity of a cooperative enzyme are not described by a hyperbola (Michaelis-Menten), it's not really appropriate to speak of K_m's. The term reserved for the special concentration of substrate that produces a velocity that is one-half of

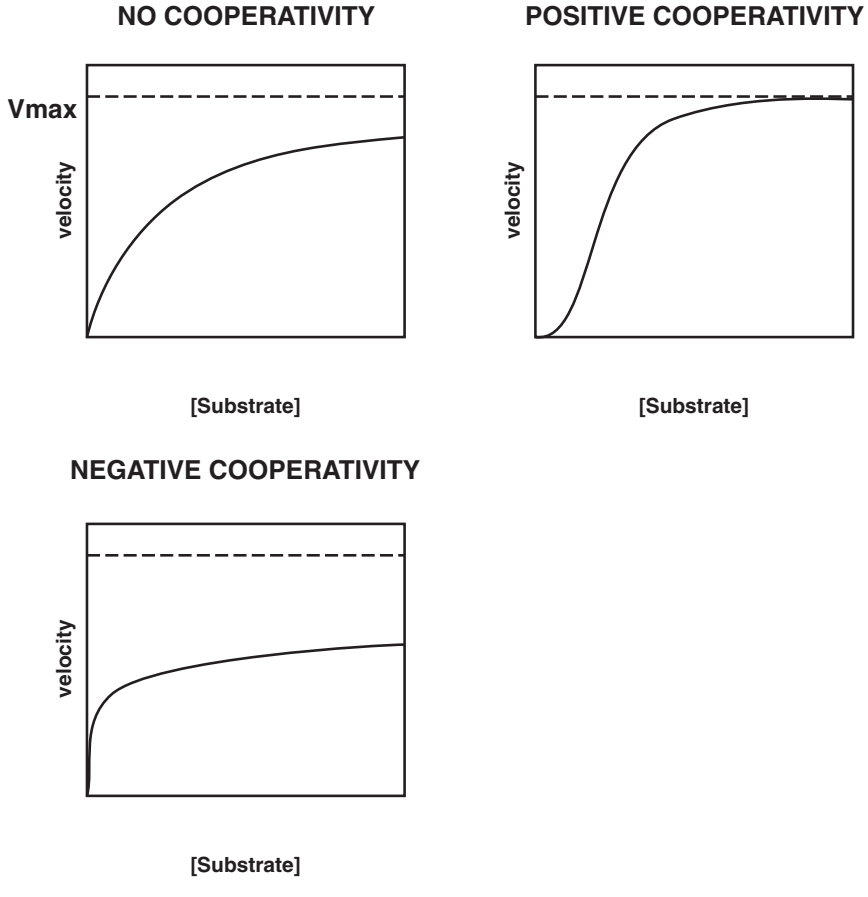


Figure 8-7
COOPERATIVE ENZYMES do not show a hyperbolic dependence of the velocity on substrate concentration. If the binding of one substrate increases the affinity of an oligomeric enzyme for binding of the next substrate, the enzyme shows positive cooperativity. If the first substrate makes it harder to bind the second substrate, the enzyme is negatively cooperative.

V_{max} is $S_{0.5}$. Enzymes that are positively cooperative are very sensitive to changes of substrate near the $S_{0.5}$. This makes the enzyme behave more like an on–off switch and is useful metabolically to provide a large change in velocity in response to a small change in substrate concentration. Negative cooperativity causes the velocity to be rather insensitive to changes in substrate concentration near the $S_{0.5}$.

THE MONOD-WYMAN-CHANGEAUX MODEL

The MWC model describes cooperativity.
Each subunit exists in a conformational state that has either a low affinity (T state) or a high affinity (R state) for substrate.
In any one enzyme molecule, all the subunits are in the same conformational state.
In the absence of substrate, the T state is favored. In the presence of substrate, the R state is favored.

The model most often invoked to rationalize cooperative behavior is the MWC (Monod-Wyman-Changeaux), or concerted, model. This model is 1.5 times more complicated than the Michaelis-Menten model and took three people to develop instead of two. Most texts describe it in detail. In the absence of substrate, the enzyme has a low affinity for substrate. The MWC folks say that the enzyme is in a T (for *tense* or *taut*) state in the absence of substrate. Coexisting with this low-affinity T state is another conformation of the enzyme, the R (for *relaxed*) state, that has a higher affinity for substrate. The T and R states coexist in the absence of substrate, but there's much more of the T state than the R. This has always seemed backward, since one would expect the enzyme to be more tense in the presence of substrates when some work is actually required. In keeping with the tradition of biochemistry, the MWC folks obviously wanted this to be backward too (Fig. 8-8).

The MWC model says that in the R state, all the active sites are the same and all have higher substrate affinity than in the T state. If one site is in the R state, all are. In any one protein molecule at any one time, all subunits are supposed to have identical affinities for substrate. Because the transition between the R and the T states happens at the same time to all subunits, the MWC model has been called the *concerted model* for allosterism and cooperativity. The MWC model invokes this symmetry principle because the modelers saw no compelling reason to think that one of the chemically identical subunits of a protein would have a conformation that was different from the others. Alternative models exist that suggest that each subunit can have a different conformation and different affinities for substrate. Experimentally, examples are known that follow each model.

The arithmetic of the MWC model is not worth going into, but the sigmoidal behavior arises from the fact that the enzyme is capable of interacting with multiple ligands with reactions of the type ($E + 4S \rightleftharpoons ES_4$).

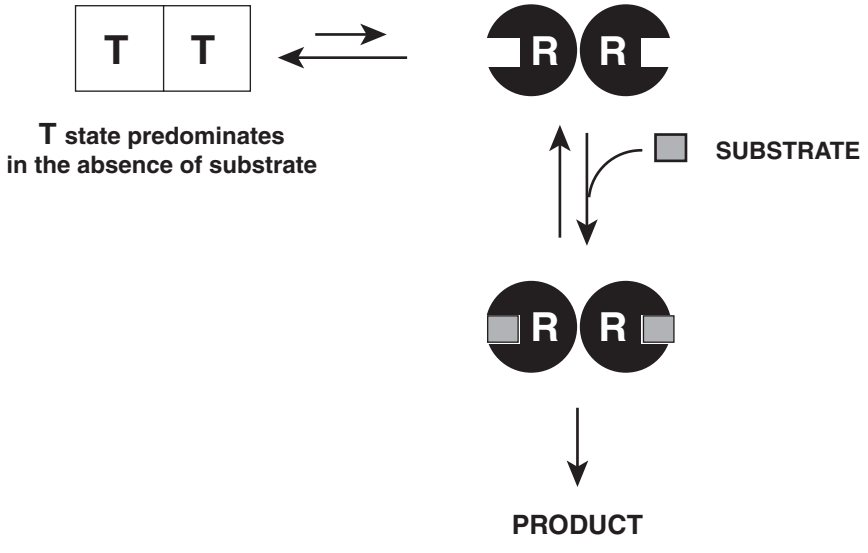


Figure 8-8 The MWC Model for Positive Cooperativity
In the absence of substrate, there is more of the T state than the R state. Substrate binds more tightly to the R state. Within one enzyme molecule, the subunits are all T or all R.

This type of binding introduces exponents into the concentration of substrate terms so that you can draw a curve like the one shown in Fig. 8-10.

A substrate or effector that binds preferentially to the R state increases the concentration of the R state at equilibrium. This can only happen if, in the absence of substrate or effector, the enzyme is predominantly in the T state. If the enzyme were predominantly in the R state to begin with, it would already have increased affinity for the substrate and there would be no allosteric or cooperative effects. Consequently, the MWC model cannot account for negative cooperativity (but this is rare anyway).

Substrates can affect the conformation of the other active sites. So can other molecules. Effector molecules other than the substrate can bind to specific effector sites (different from the substrate-binding site) and shift the original T-R equilibrium (see Fig. 8-9). An effector that binds preferentially to the T state decreases the already low concentration of the R state and makes it even more difficult for the substrate to bind. These effectors decrease the velocity of the overall reaction and are referred to as *allosteric inhibitors*. An example is the effect of ATP or citrate on the activity of phosphofructokinase. Effectors that bind specif-

T
T
R
R
Allosteric inhibitors bind specifically to the T state and make it harder for substrate to switch enzyme into the R state.
Allosteric activators bind specifically to the R state and pull more of the enzyme into the more active R state.

Figure 8-9
ALLOSTERIC EFFECTORS bind specifically to either the T or the R states. Heterotropic (nonsubstrate) activators bind to and stabilize the R state, while heterotropic inhibitors bind preferentially to the T state.

ically to the R state shift the T–R equilibrium toward the more active (higher-affinity) R state. Now all the sites are of the high-affinity R type, even before the first substrate binds. Effectors that bind to the R state increase the activity (decrease the $S_{0.5}$) and are known as *allosteric activators*. An example is the effect of AMP on the velocity of the phosphofructokinase reaction (Fig. 8-10). Notice that in the presence of an allosteric activator, the v versus [S] plot looks more hyperbolic and less sigmoidal—consistent with shifting the enzyme to all R-type active sites.

The effects of substrates and effectors have been discussed with regard to how they could change the affinity of the enzyme for substrate ($S_{0.5}$). It would have been just as appropriate to discuss changes in V_{max} in a cooperative, or allosteric fashion.

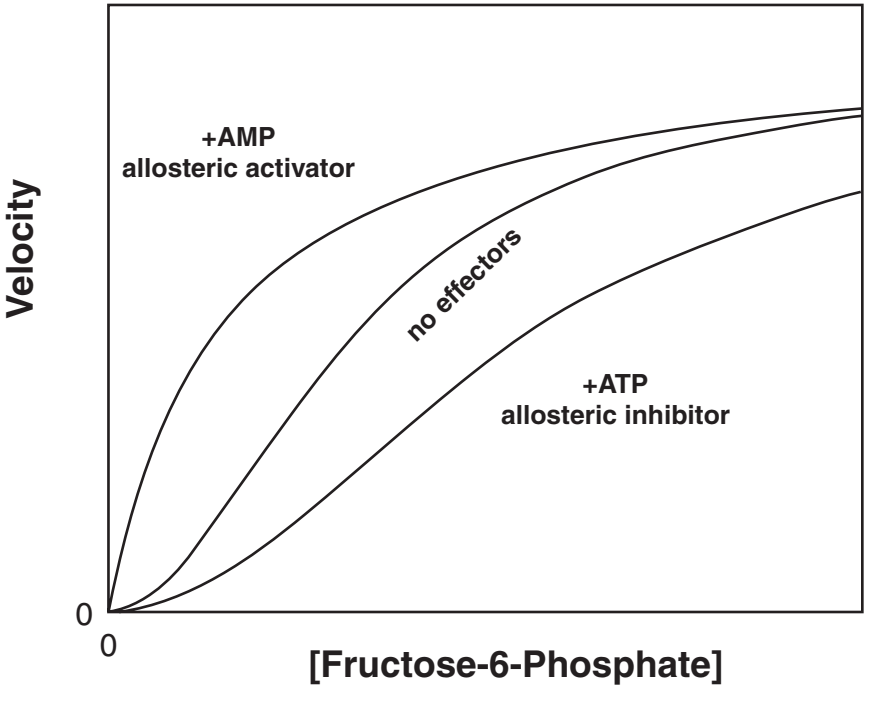


Figure 8-10
PHOSPHOFRUCTOKINASE shows positive cooperativity with fructose-6-phosphate as the substrate. ATP, an allosteric inhibitor, binds to the T state and decreases the velocity. AMP, a signal for low energy, binds to the R state and increases the velocity of the reaction.

• C H A P T E R • 9 •

SIGNAL TRANSDUCTION PATHWAYS

•

Signal Transduction Pathways

Organization

Signals

Receptors

Soluble Receptors

Transmembrane Receptors

Enzyme Coupled Receptors

G-Protein Coupled Receptors

Ion-Channel Coupled Receptors

Second Messengers

Amplifiers

Integrators

Inhibitors

• • • • • • • • • • • •

SIGNAL TRANSDUCTION PATHWAYS

Allow the cell to sense and respond to signals in the environment.

Signal → Receptor → Transducer → Effector → Response.
upstream → downstream

Signal transduction pathways allow cells to respond to their environment and to change their behavior accordingly. Signals are sensed by a receptor and changed in their form (transduced) so that they can exert their final effect on the cell. In addition to the straightforward chain of events that may lead from a signal to a final effect, there are components of these pathways that are designed to amplify and integrate various cellular responses. This leads to a bewildering array of biochemical interactions with branches leading off in all directions, feedback loops (that use the final effect to turn down the original response), and a series of inhibitors and activators that may activate multiple pathways at the same time.

The best approach for dealing with signal transduction pathways (as always, in my opinion) is to learn the various kinds of general pathways that exist and then try to fit new pathways onto these types. There are a few general principles of signal transduction pathways that can be used to organize your approach.

ORGANIZATION

Components of signal transduction pathways are similar—what differs is the details (Fig. 9-1).

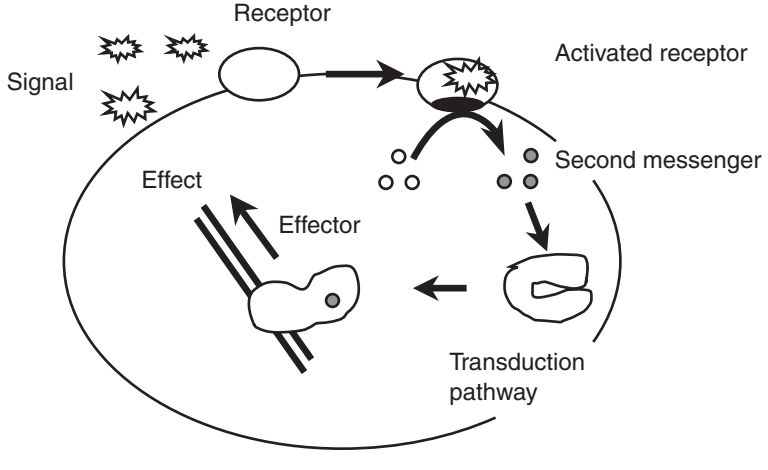


Figure 9-1 Generalized Signal Transduction Pathway

Signals: start the whole thing. They're what the target cell senses.

Receptors: sense the signal and are activated. Sensing the signal causes a change in the structure of the receptor. This structural change activates the pathway.

Transducers: receive the signal and then pass it on in a different form. They can amplify the signal or integrate signals from multiple pathways. Most components of signal transduction pathways can be considered transducers.

Second messengers: small molecules that are released in the cell in response to a signal. They can activate many other downstream components.

Amplifiers: increase the strength of the signal. They turn one molecule of original signal into many, many molecules of second messengers or secondary signals.

Integrators: allow multiple signals to converge on a single response.

Effectors: the final step of the signaling pathway. Their activation results in the effect. Sometimes signals can activate multiple pathways and have multiple effects.

Inhibitors: turn off signaling pathways. Activating an inhibitor has the same effect as inactivating the signaling event.

SIGNALS

Signals that enter the cell (steroids, vitamin D, thyroid hormone, and retinoids)

Signals that exert their effects from outside the cell (everything else)

The signal is what starts everything off. Signals take a variety of forms, but for our purposes there are only two. The first type are signals that go into the cell, bind to internal receptors, and exert their effects. Steroid hormones, vitamin D, thyroid hormone, and retinoids are the only members of this class. All of the intracellular receptors ultimately activate the transcription of regulated genes. The common feature of signals that enter the cell is that they are all small lipophilic molecules that can cross the cell membrane.

All the other signals exert their effects by binding to an extracellular receptor and initiating a cascade of signaling events. They work by activating a phosphorylation cascade and/or the release of second messengers in the cell.

COMMON SIGNALS

SIGNALS THAT ENTER THE CELL	SIGNALS THAT DO NOT ENTER THE CELL
Steroids (cortisol, estrogen, testosterone)	Insulin
Thyroid hormone	Glucagon
Vitamin D	Cytokines
Retinoic acid	Growth factors
	Vasopressin

RECEPTORS

Receptors recognize a signal molecule and transmit the signal by activating a downstream signaling pathway. The same signal often has a different effect on different cell types. Cytosolic receptors are soluble, cytoplasmic proteins (signal must get inside). Transmembrane receptors span a membrane (i.e., signal outside, response inside).

Receptors recognize the signal first. They also transmit the information that the signal has been received down the pathway. The pathway (and the receptor) is named for the signal that initiates it. Receptors are very specific—they're activated by only one signal (or some small variations of it). Every cell type doesn't respond to the same signal in the same way. The easiest way to deal with this is to deal with it as you would deal with metabolism: keep the function of the signal in mind and the function of the tissue in mind, and it will help you sort through this. Some cells may not respond to a particular signal because they don't have the receptor or they may have a different downstream response because of differences in the signaling pathway itself.

SOLUBLE RECEPTORS

The signal crosses the membrane and activates gene transcription. Signals for soluble receptors include steroid hormones, retinoic acid, thyroid hormone, and vitamin D.

Soluble intracellular receptors include the steroid hormone receptors (estrogen, progesterone and cortisol), vitamin D receptor, thyroid hormone receptor, and retinoic acid receptor. Because of their insolubility in water, these hormones are transported in the blood by specific binding proteins. They dissociate from the binding protein, cross the membrane, and find their receptor. Hormones that diffuse across the membrane and enter the cell bind to *soluble intracellular receptors*. The central event for a receptor involves activation—getting some new activity when the signal is present (Fig. 9-2). On binding the hormone, the soluble receptors change their conformation and gain the ability to bind to specific DNA sequences in the nucleus. The steroid hormone receptors are transported to the nucleus only after they bind hormone, but the retinoid receptors are in the nucleus and bind to DNA even without hormone present. They are both activated to start transcription when they bind hormone.

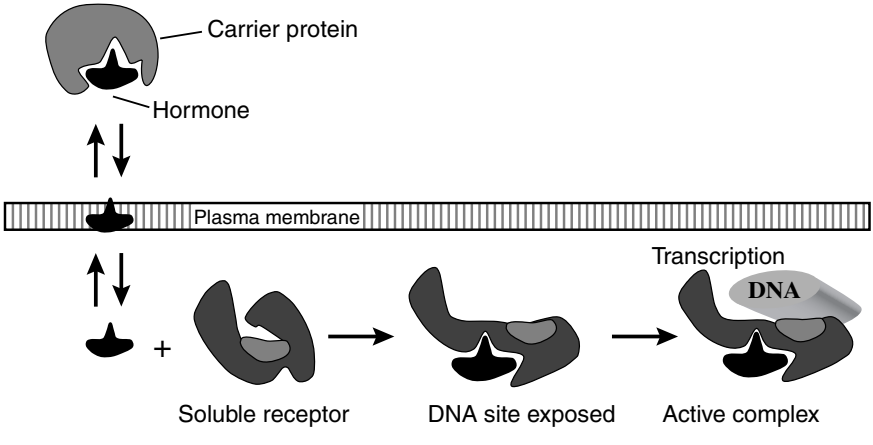


Figure 9-2
ACTIVATION OF TRANSCRIPTION by soluble hormones. The hormone is carried to its site of action by a carrier protein in the blood. The hormone crosses the membrane (by itself) and binds to a soluble receptor. A conformation change induced by hormone binding causes the receptor to expose its DNA binding site. This site binds to a specific sequence in the DNA upstream of genes that are to be activated for transcription. The transcription activation occurs through another domain of the protein that binds to components of the RNA polymerase complex.

TRANSMEMBRANE RECEPTORS

These receptors span the membrane. The signal activates a channel, an enzyme, or a G-protein cascade.

Enzyme coupled receptors: Signal activates an enzyme activity of the receptor itself—tyrosine kinases, phospholipase C.
G-protein coupled receptors: Signal activates a G-protein that activates downstream enzymes—makes second messenger (cAMP or Ca^{2+}).
Ion-channel coupled receptors: Signal activates an ion channel.

Signals that don't enter the cell must be sensed by a receptor outside that can send the signal inside. These signals are sensed by *transmembrane* receptors. They have a protein domain that sticks outside the cell and binds an extracellular signal. This activates the part of the receptor that's inside the cell. The signal molecule stays outside and the receptor transmits the signal inside. For enzyme coupled receptors, binding the signal activates an intrinsic enzyme activity of the receptor itself. For G-protein coupled receptors, an enzyme gets activated but the receptor activates a G-protein first.

ENZYME COUPLED RECEPTORS

Tyrosine kinases phosphorylate protein tyrosine residues using ATP.
Phospholipase C cleaves PIP_2 into IP_3 and PAG.

For *enzyme coupled receptors*, activation of the receptor turns the receptor itself into an active enzyme. This activity may belong to the receptor itself, but sometimes activation of the receptor recruits and activates a separate enzyme through adaptor molecules (Fig. 9-3). A common mechanism of activation of these receptors involves dimerization. The signal molecule causes individual molecules of the receptor to associate with themselves in the membrane. Once dimerized, the receptors become activated and gain enzyme activity.

There are basically two different enzyme activities that can be stimulated in enzyme-linked receptors. A receptor tyrosine kinase recognizes one or more specific tyrosines in the target and uses ATP to phosphorylate it. Often part of the activation involves the receptor phosphoryla-

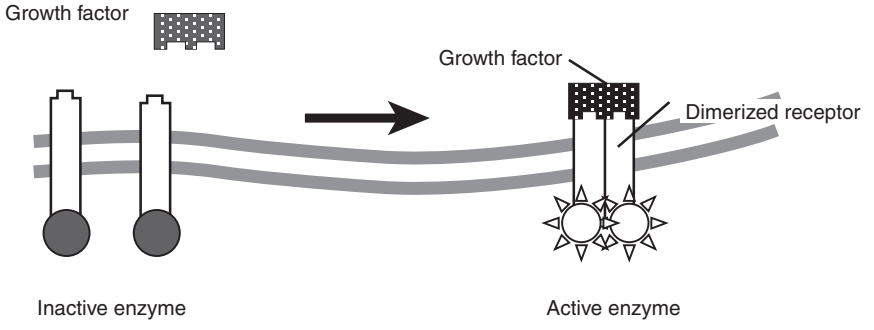
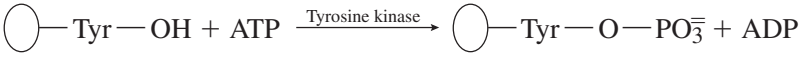
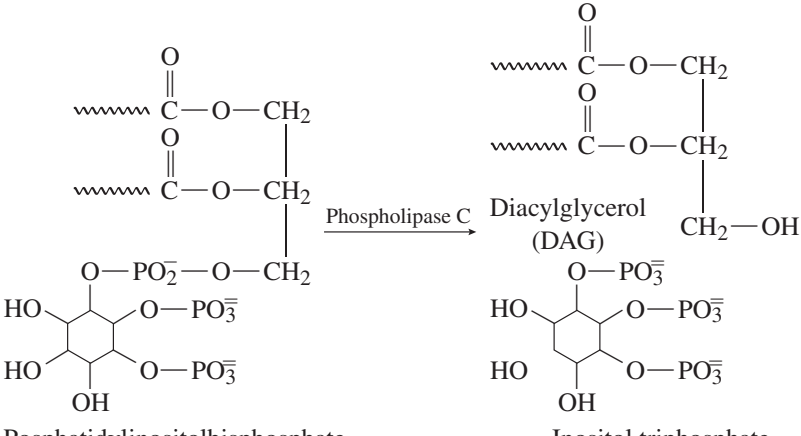


Figure 9-3 Enzyme Coupled Receptors
Hormone binding (like growth factors) triggers a change in the receptor by causing dimerization. This activates the receptor's enzyme activity (tyrosine kinase).

ting its own tyrosine residues (called *autophosphorylation*). Receptor autophosphorylation can be a signal to recruit other activities (enzyme or G-protein) to the activated receptor.



The other activity associated with transmembrane receptors is *phospholipase C*. Phosphatidyl inositol is a membrane phospholipid that after phosphorylation on the head group is found in the membrane as a phosphotidylinostitol bis phosphate. Phospholipase C cleaves this into a membrane associated diacylglycerol (the lipid part) and inositol trisphosphate (IP_3, the soluble part). Both play a later role in elevating the level of the second messenger, Ca^{2+}.



The functions of transmembrane receptors can be modified using adaptor molecules. Sometimes the adaptors bring in substrates to the receptor's enzyme activity, but other times they can bring in the activity itself. The best known adaptors have protein structural domains called *SH2* or *SH3 domains*. These adaptors couple various functions to receptor tyrosine kinases (Fig. 9-4). SH2 and SH3 stands for Src homology region 2 and 3 because they were discovered first in the oncogene, Src (see later). These adapters recognize specific phosphotyrosine residues in the autophosphorylated receptor. Src itself is not a receptor, but it is a tyrosine kinase. It has an SH2 and SH3 domain to link it to the receptor and, when this occurs, it becomes activated as a tyrosine kinase.

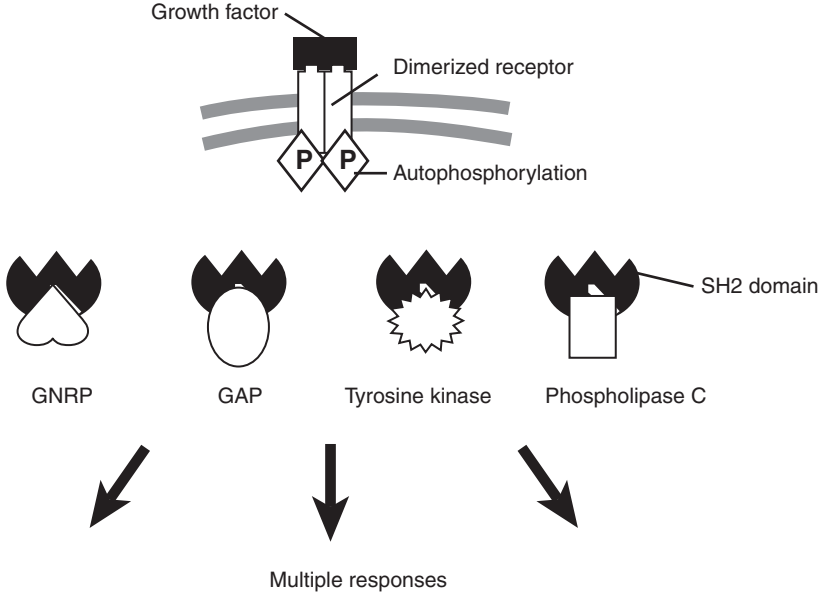


Figure 9-4
The **SH2 DOMAIN** links an activated (autophosphorylated) receptor to various downstream pathways. Each of the proteins has a common SH2 adaptor domain fused to another domain that performs the downstream function. The same signal can then activate multiple pathways. GNRP and GAP represent adaptors that can affect G-protein signaling (see the following section "G-Protein Coupled Receptors").

G-PROTEIN COUPLED RECEPTORS

These activate a G-protein that activates downstream signals. G-proteins are molecular timers. G-protein activation usually leads to an increase in second messenger concentrations (Ca^{2+} or cAMP). GTPase activating protein (*GAP*) inactivates the G-protein by increasing GTPase activity. Guanine nucleotide exchange factors (*GNEF*) activate the G-protein by increasing the rate of exchange of GDP for GTP.

G-proteins are molecular timers that couple transmembrane receptor activation to downstream members of the pathway (Fig. 9-5). They are called *G-proteins* because they are intimately involved with the nucleotide, GTP. Before activation, the G-protein is hanging around in its GDP form. When the activated receptor finds its G-protein it activates it by increasing the rate of exchange between GTP and GDP. Once activated, the G-protein interacts with downstream effectors and can activate

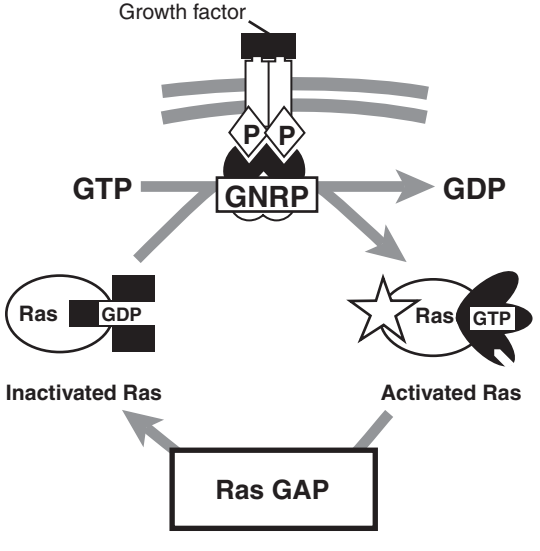


Figure 9-5 G-protein Coupled Receptors
The Ras pathway is shown here. Ras is a G-protein that couples signaling from growth factors. The activated receptor is a GNRP that increases the exchange of GDP for GTP and activates the G-protein. Ras GAP inactivates the G-protein. The downstream signal for activated Ras is eventually the mitogen-activated protein kinase pathway (MAPK).

them or inhibit them (depending on what needs to be done). G-proteins have an intrinsic enzyme activity that hydrolyzes the GTP. This is the timer. When the timer runs down (GTP is hydrolyzed to GDP), the signal goes away and the signaling is stopped.

There are two ways to affect the timing of G-proteins. Affector proteins can interact with the GDP form of the G-protein and make the release of GDP and the binding of GTP faster. These proteins are called *guanine nucleotide exchange factors* (GNEF), or *guanine nucleotide release proteins* (GNRP), depending on who is using the name (rather than any functional difference). Their effect is to help activate the signaling pathway. Other signaling molecules in the pathway can activate the GTPase activity. They make the G-protein inactivate faster (speed up the clock) and inactivate the signaling pathway. These are called *GAPs* (GTPase-activating proteins).

Most G proteins activate events that lead to an increase in second messenger concentrations (Ca^{2+} or cAMP); we'll talk about that later.

There are different kinds of G-proteins. The trimeric G-proteins are used mainly with transmembrane receptors. They have three subunits, α, β, and γ. The α subunit is the GTPase part, but it's kept in its GDP form when it is bound to the β-γ subunits. When GTP is bound, the α-subunit is released as an activated G-protein. The activated G-proteins can stimulate some downstream enzyme (these are called *stimulatory G-proteins*, or G_s). However, some G-proteins may be inhibitory in their active form—they're called G_i. Whether the target protein is stimulated or inhibited will depend on the type of G-protein.

There are also monomeric G-proteins. Just like the trimeric G-proteins, they are involved as signal relays and timers. The Ras superfamily relays signals from receptor tyrosine kinases to downstream elements that eventually regulate transcription. Rho and Rac relay signals from cell-surface receptors to the cytoskeleton, while Rab regulates intracellular transport of vesicles. Regardless of what they do, they use the timer mechanism provided by the G-protein. Three-letter acronyms (TLA), such as Ras, Rho, and Rab, are difficult to remember, sometimes even when you know what the letters stand for. Unfortunately, there's nothing you can do about this except to memorize them.

ION-CHANNEL COUPLED RECEPTORS

The signal activates the flow of ions across the membrane.

The acetyl choline receptor is a ligand-gated ion channel that allows cations to flow out of the neuron to initiate an action potential during neurotransmission (Fig. 9-6). When the receptor binds acetylcholine, a conformational change of the receptor opens a membrane channel that conducts ions.

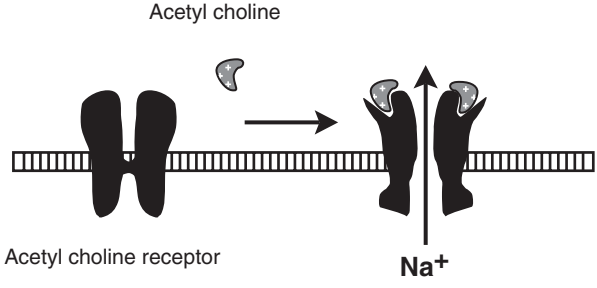


Figure 9-6
The binding of acetyl choline to the **ACETYL CHOLINE RECEPTOR** opens a gate that allows cations to pass through the membrane. This is called a *ligand-gated channel*.

SECOND MESSENGERS

These are small signaling molecules generated in response to extracellular signals. They amplify and propagate the signal.

1. cyclic nucleotides (cAMP, cGMP)
2. Ca^{2+} (diglyceride, IP_3)

Second messengers relay the primary signal. The distinction between second messengers and normal transducers is that second messengers are small molecules. Extracellular signals of various kinds can activate intracellular pathways that cause an increase in the concentration of a small molecule messenger. All of these pathways involve G-protein coupled receptors. There are two second messengers that you need to know about: cyclic nucleotides and calcium.

cAMP

Cyclic nucleotides are like regular nucleotides (the things in DNA/RNA) except that the phosphate bridges the 3′ and 5′ hydroxyl group within

the same molecule. The enzymes that catalyze the formation of these messengers are called *cyclases*. Adenylyl cyclase makes cAMP, and guanylyl cyclase makes cGMP. The most used second messenger is cAMP, but cGMP is used in nitric oxide signaling and in vision.

Cyclic nucleotides are made in response to receptor activation. The receptor activates a G-protein that, in turn, activates adenylyl cyclase to make the cyclic nucleotide. To complete the signaling, the increase in cAMP concentration activates a specific protein kinase (serine/threonine), cAMP-dependent protein kinase (A kinase) (Fig. 9-7). To turn off the signaling pathway, the cyclic nucleotides are destroyed by enzymes called *phosphodiesterases*. These cleave cAMP to AMP.

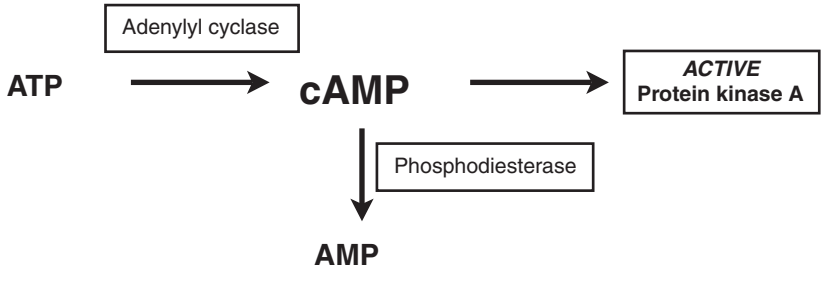


Figure 9-7 Synthesis and Degradation of the Second Messenger, cAMP
Activation of adenylyl cyclase by an activated G-protein coupled receptor results in the synthesis of cAMP. The cAMP activates a downstream kinase, protein kinase A. Phosphodiesterase hydrolyzes and inactivates the cAMP.

Ca^{2+}

Increases in the concentration of calcium in the cytosol provides a signal that can initiate muscle contraction, vision, and other signaling pathways. The response depends on the cell type. In muscle, a transient rise in the cytosolic calcium levels (from opening calcium channels in the sarcoplasmic reticulum) causes contraction. This signaling in contraction is a direct consequence of electrical activation of the voltage-gated channel.

Calcium signaling is also involved in the response to growth factors. Normally, cells maintain low calcium levels in the cytosol. A low cytosolic calcium level is maintained by pumps that use ATP hydrolysis to move Ca^{2+} out of the cytosol. Ca^{2+} concentration in the cytosol increases by activating a calcium channel that lets Ca^{2+} flow back into the cytosol.

Calcium signaling can be activated directly by regulating Ca^{2+} channels. However, there is an indirect way to cause cytosolic calcium to rise.

The inositol phosphate signaling pathway can also activate calcium signaling in response to a number of hormones and effectors (see following Table). Phosphatidyl inositol (PI) is a phospholipid found on the plasma membrane. A kinase phosphorylates the head group leading to inositol bisphosphate (IP_2). When an extracellular signal activates phospholipase C (PLC), it cleaves the PIP_2 into IP_3 (inositol triphosphate) and diacylglycerol (DAG) (Fig. 9-8). IP_3 activates a Ca^{2+} channel in the ER, and Ca^{2+} comes rushing out. The increased calcium causes protein kinase C (PKC) to bind Ca^{2+}, move to the plasma membrane, and combine with DAG. The C kinase is responsible for activating the final effector—generally activating transcription through transcription factors.

Calcium can also directly affect signaling through another pathway. The major calcium binding protein in the cell is calmodulin (CAM). CAM is not an enzyme, but it will activate some enzymes when it binds to them. CAM binds to its target enzymes only when calcium is bound

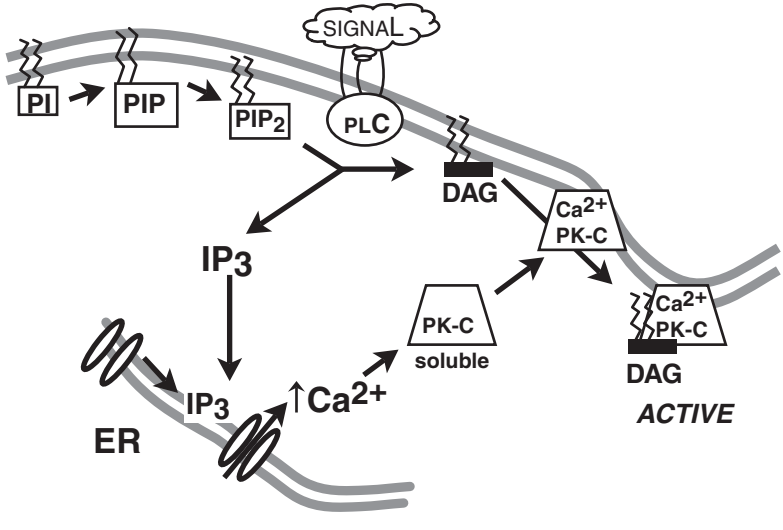


Figure 9-8 Inisitol Phosphate and Calcium Signaling
Increases in cytosolic calcium serves as a signal for a large number of final effectors, depending on the signal and the metabolic circumstances. Phospholipase C upon activation produces two signals, PIP_3 and diacylglycerol (DAG). The PIP_3 activates a calcium channel of the endoplasmic reticulum (ER) resulting in an increase in cytoplasmic calcium. The increased calcium binds to a soluble form of protein kinase C and translocates to the cell membrane where it is further activated by the second part of the pathway, diacylglycerol. Both the increased calcium and activated protein kinase C make further downstream connections.

so it propagates the calcium signal. You'll see later that this can be used to integrate signals in glycogen breakdown, but CAM can also activate a specific cellular kinase (serine/threonine), called *CAM kinase* (calmodulin-dependent kinase). This kinase then carries the signal.

AMPLIFIERS

Take one molecule of an incoming signal and make many molecules of an outgoing signal. Kinases, cyclases, and G-proteins amplify the signal.

Many of the steps in signal transduction pathways makes the signal larger; they amplify it. All signal transduction pathways involve one or more amplifiers. Amplification can occur by three mechanisms: producing a second messenger, activating a G-protein, or activating a protein kinase. The essence of amplification is that a single molecule binding to a transducer will result in the formation of many molecules of a downstream signal. When there are multiple amplifications in a pathway, it can be called a *cascade*.

G-PROTEINS

G-proteins are easy. The GTP-bound form can interact successively with several molecules of its target before the GTP is hydrolyzed and the G-protein is inactivated. The synthesis of cyclic nucleotide second messengers by the cyclase is also an obvious amplification step.

PROTEIN KINASES

There are huge numbers of protein kinases, but they come in two basic flavors. The transmembrane receptor kinases or others that are recruited to a transmembrane receptor are usually tyrosine kinases. They use ATP to phosphorylate specific tyrosine residues in the target protein. Since it's enzymatic, it's an amplification step. One activated receptor activates many downstream targets. The other class of protein kinases is the serine/threonine protein kinases. They use ATP to phosphorylate specific serine or threonine residues in their targets. Not all serine or threonine residues in a target protein get phosphorylated. For each target protein there will be a specific pattern of phosphorylation that leads to the effect. Depending on the particular target, phosphorylation may activate or inactivate it. (The best way to make sense of whether activation or inactivation occurs is to try to remember the purpose of the pathway.)

The kinases themselves can be arranged into phosphorylation cascades so that one kinase phosphorylates another, which, in turn, phosphorylates another. This often leads to some funny names, such as MAP kinase kinase kinase. This means a mitogen-activated protein kinase that phosphorylates MAP kinase kinase. The activated MAP kinase kinase then phosphorylates and activates MAP kinase.

COMMON SERINE/THREONINE KINASES

ABBREVIATION	NAME	ACTIVATED BY	EFFECT
PKA (A kinase)	cAMP-dependent protein kinase	cAMP	Energy signaling (low energy signal)
PKC (C kinase)	Protein kinase C	Ca^{2+} and DAG	Growth/ proliferation signals
CAM kinase	Calmodulin-dependent protein kinase	Ca^{2+} and calmodulin	Calcium signaling
MAP kinase	Mitogen-activated protein kinase	MAP kinase kinase	Cell growth (activates transcription)

INTEGRATORS

Integrators take signals from two signaling events and use them to activate a single downstream effector.

Phosphorylase kinase provides one example of an integrator. Phosphorylase kinase is activated by A kinase (cAMP-dependent protein kinase) in response to increasing cAMP levels (Fig. 9-9). When calcium-signaling pathways are also turned on, the increased calcium will stimulate phosphorylase kinase. Phosphorylase kinase is actually turned on when it binds a complex of Ca^{2+} with calmodulin. When phosphorylase kinase is phosphorylated, it takes less calcium to activate it. When you think about the final role of phosphorylase kinase, which is to activate glycogen breakdown for energy, this makes sense. When either cAMP or Ca^{2+} is high, you need energy. By integrating the two signals, you get a system that will respond to each signal as well as to both signals.

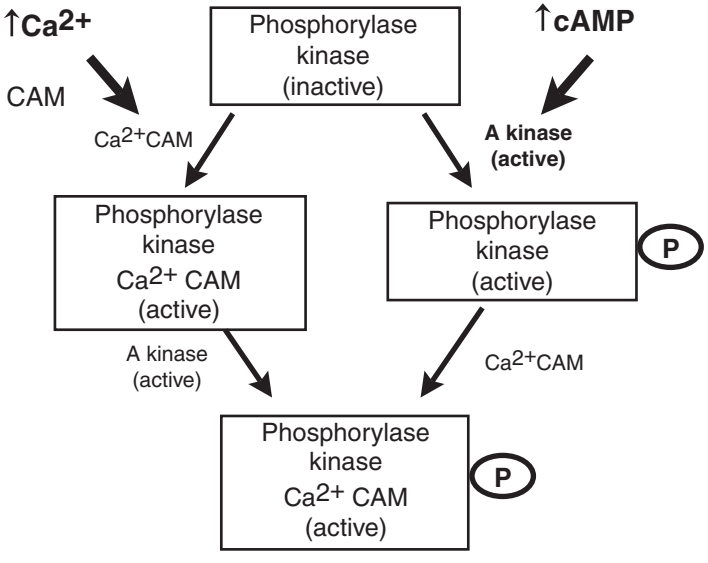


Figure 9-9
SIGNAL INTEGRATION by phosphorylase kinase. Phosphorylase kinase eventually phosphorylates and activates glycogen phosphorylase. Either (or both) phosphorylation and calcium signaling pathways converge at phosphorylase kinase.

INHIBITORS

Inhibitors turn off signaling pathways.
Kinases are opposed by phosphatases.
Cyclic nucleotides are hydrolyzed by phosphodiesterases.
Ca^{2+} is pumped out of the cytoplasm.
Hormones and neurotransmitters are removed from circulation and/or degraded.

One of the principal rules of biochemical regulation is, "When you turn something on, be sure that you have a way to turn if off." Signal transduction pathways are no different. Kinases are opposed by phosphatases. These enzymes simply hydrolyze the tyrosine or serine/threonine phosphate. Because they are in opposition, activation of the phosphatase (there are pathways for this too) is similar to inactivation of the opposing kinase. Often the two activities are coordinately regulated

so that when you activate the kinase you inactivate the phosphatase (or vice versa; Fig. 9-10).

Cyclic nucleotides (cAMP and cGMP) are hydrolyzed to destroy the signal. The enzyme that hydrolyzes them is called a *phosphodiesterase* (more formally, a *cAMP* or *cGMP phosphodiesterase*). The signal that activates the synthesis of the cyclic nucleotide will often inhibit the phosphodiesterase.

Calcium is pumped out of the cytosol by Ca^{2+} pumps in the plasma membrane, endoplasmic reticulum, or mitochondria.

Hormone signals are turned off by degrading or excreting them so that the signal disappears. The same thing happens with neurotransmitters.

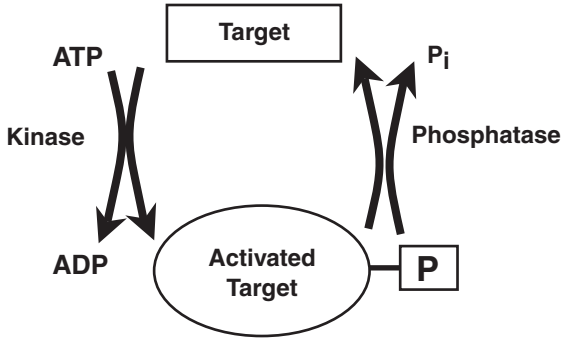


Figure 9-10
The phosphorylation state of a protein target is determined by the relative activities of the kinase that activates it and the phosphatase that inactivates it. When the signaling event is over, the phosphatase returns the protein target to the inactive state.

COMMON SIGNALING PATHWAYS

SIGNAL	PATHWAY
Intracellular Receptor	
Steroid hormones	Stimulates transcription of hormone-regulated genes
Thyroid hormone	General stimulation of metabolism: transcription
Vitamin D	Regulation of Ca^{2+} metabolism: transcription
Retinoic acid	Regulation of vertebrate development: transcription
G-protein Coupled Receptor	
Glucagon	Gs–cAMP–A kinase: glycogen breakdown (muscle), gluconeogenesis (liver)
Adrenaline (β-adrenergic receptors)	Gs–cAMP–A kinase: glycogen breakdown (muscle)
Adrenaline (α-adrenergic receptors)	Gi–decrease cAMP: inhibits glycogen breakdown (muscle)
Vasopressin	Gs–cAMP–A kinase: water retention (kidney)
TSH: thyroid-stimulating hormone	G–cAMP–A kinase: synthesis of thyroid hormone stimulated
Vasopressin	G–phospholipase C–IP_3– ↑ Ca^{2+}-DAG–C kinase
Acetylcholine (smooth muscle)	IP_3–Ca^{2+} ↑ contraction
Acetylcholine (pancreas)	IP_3–Ca^{2+} ↑ secretion stimulated
Receptor Tyrosine Kinases	
Insulin	Increase glucose transport
Growth factors	Increase cell growth/mitogenic activity by activating transcription
Ligand-Gated Ion Channel	
Acetylcholine	Nerve transmission (neuromuscular: activates cation channels
Other	
NO (nitric oxide)	Relaxes smooth muscle of blood epithelium

• C H A P T E R • 10 •

GLYCOLYSIS AND GLUCONEOGENESIS

•

Glycolysis Function

Glycolysis Location

Glycolysis Connections

Glycolysis Regulation

Glycolysis ATP Yields

Glycolysis Equations

Effect of Arsenate

Lactate or Pyruvate

Gluconeogenesis Function

Gluconeogenesis Location

Gluconeogenesis Connections

Gluconeogenesis Regulation

Gluconeogenesis ATP Costs

Gluconeogenesis Equations

• • • • • • • • • • • •

(See Fig. 10-1.)

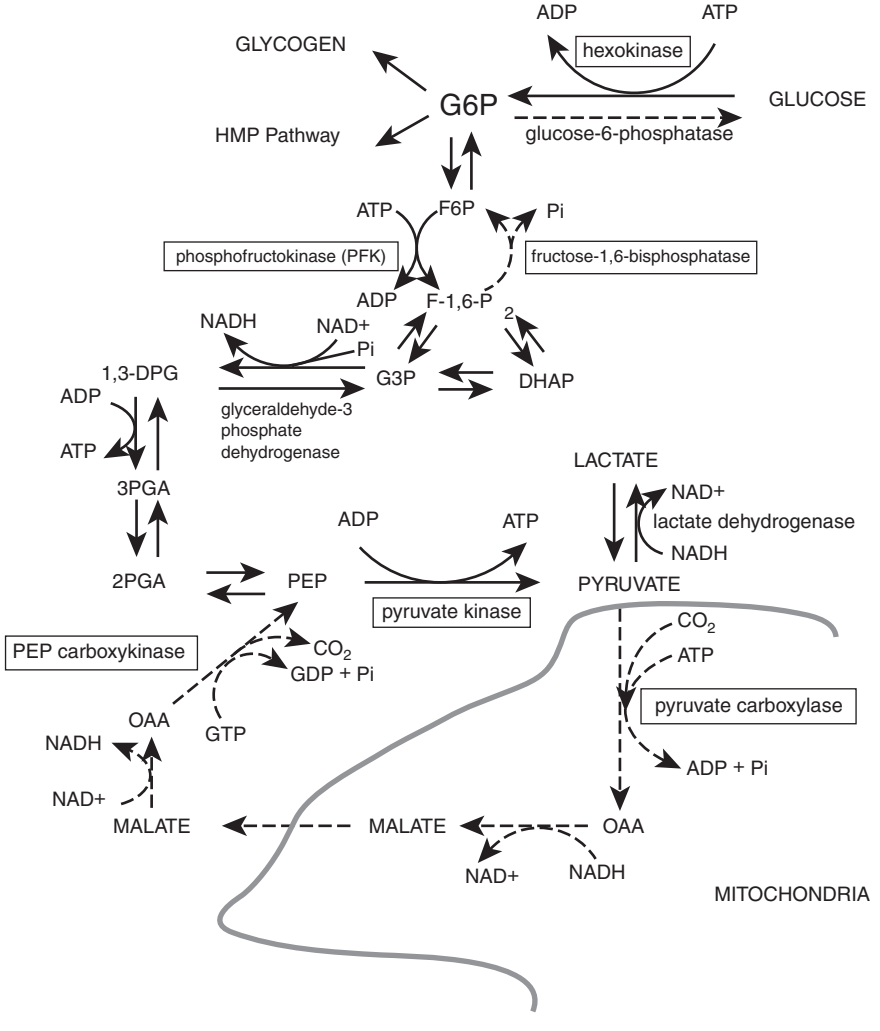


Figure 10-1
GLYCOLYSIS (solid lines) and **GLUCONEOGENESIS** (dotted lines) share some common enzymes, but they diverge around the control steps. Major control enzymes are boxed. Signals that turn glycolysis on turn gluconeogenesis off, and vice versa.

GLYCOLYSIS FUNCTION

Aerobic: To convert *glucose* to pyruvate and ATP. Pyruvate can be burned for energy (TCA) or converted to fat (fatty acid synthesis).

Anaerobic: ATP production. Recycle NADH by making lactate.

GLYCOLYSIS LOCATION

Cytosol of all cells.

GLYCOLYSIS CONNECTIONS

Glucose *in*, pyruvate or lactate *out*.
Glucose 6-phosphate to glycogen (reversible).
Glucose 6-phosphate to pentose phosphates (*not* reversible).
Pyruvate to TCA via acetyl-CoA (*not* reversible).
Pyruvate to *fat* via acetyl-CoA (*not* reversible).

GLYCOLYSIS REGULATION

Primary signals:
Insulin turns *on*.
Glucagon turns *off*.
Epinephrine turns *on* in *muscle*, *off* in *liver*.
Phosphorylation turns *off* in *liver*, *on* in *muscle*.

Secondary signals:
Glucose signals activate (fructose 2,6-bisphosphate activates phosphofructokinase).
Low-glucose signals inhibit.
High-energy signals inhibit.
Low-energy signals activate.

GLYCOLYSIS ATP YIELDS

Aerobic: 1 glucose $\longrightarrow$ 2ATP + 2NADH + 2 pyruvate
Anaerobic: 1 glucose $\longrightarrow$ 2ATP + 2 lactate
Complete: 1 glucose $\longrightarrow$ $6CO_2$ + 38ATP
(using malate/aspartate shuttle to oxidize NADH)
From glycogen: $(\text{Glycogen})_n \longrightarrow$ 3ATP + 2NADH + 2 pyruvate

GLYCOLYSIS EQUATIONS

Aerobic: $\text{Glucose} + 2\text{ADP} + 2\text{P}_\text{i} + 2\text{NAD}^+ \longrightarrow 2 \text{ pyruvate} + 2\text{ATP} + 2\text{NADH} + 2\text{H}^+$

Anaerobic: $\text{Glucose} + 2\text{ADP} + 2\text{P}_\text{i} \longrightarrow 2 \text{ lactate} + 2\text{ATP}$

EFFECT OF ARSENATE

This is a common exam question.

Arsenate ($HAsO_4^{-2}$), an analog of phosphate, has an interesting effect on glycolysis. This makes a great exam question. Arsenate is a substrate for the enzyme glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase. The enzyme, which normally uses phosphate and makes 1,3-disphosphoglycerate, is fooled by the arsenate and makes the arsenate ester instead. With the phosphate ester, the next enzyme in glycolysis makes an ATP from the 1,3-diphosphoglycerate. The arsenate analog of 1,3-disphosphoglycerate is chemically much more unstable than the phosphate ester and hydrolyzes to 3-phosphoglycerate before an ATP can be made. The product, however, is the same—3-phosphoglycerate—so glycolysis can continue as normal. But what has happened is that this step no longer makes an ATP for each three-carbon fragment. You lose 2 ATPs per glucose—all the net ATP production of glycolysis. The bottom line is that glycolysis continues (in fact it's usually accelerated by the lack of ATP), but no ATP can be made. It is analogous to the uncoupling of oxidative phosphorylation by dinitrophenol.

LACTATE OR PYRUVATE

With oxygen present, pyruvate is oxidized by the tricarboxylic acid cycle (TCA).
Without oxygen, pyruvate is reduced to lactate.
In muscle, lactate is the usual product.

The product of glycolysis is pyruvate. The pyruvate made by glycolysis can either enter the TCA cycle through pyruvate dehydrogenase or be reduced to lactate. To keep running, glycolysis requires NAD^+ in the glyceraldehyde-3-phosphate dehydrogenase reaction. No NAD^+, no glycolysis. NAD^+ is produced by oxidation of NADH via oxidative phosphorylation, a process that requires oxygen. Under anaerobic conditions, the TCA cycle simply shuts down. The pyruvate is converted to lactate to regenerate the NAD^+ and keep glycolysis going. In muscle, glycolysis is normally faster than the TCA cycle capacity, and lactate is the usual product of glycolysis even in resting muscle. The lactate/pyruvate ratio is about 10 in resting muscle, but in working muscle this ratio may hit 200.

GLUCONEOGENESIS FUNCTION

Gluconeogenesis makes *glucose* from pyruvate to help maintain blood glucose levels.

GLUCONEOGENESIS LOCATION

Liver and kidney—*not muscle*.

GLUCONEOGENESIS CONNECTIONS

Pyruvate in, glucose out.
Lactate in, glucose out.
Alanine in, glucose and urea out.

Gluconeogenesis in the liver can be fueled by molecules other than pyruvate or lactate. Alanine, a product of protein degradation, yields pyruvate by simple transamination, and this pyruvate can be converted

to glucose by the liver and kidney. Other amino acids are metabolized to pyruvate or oxaloacetate, which can also enter the gluconeogenic pathway. In addition, glycerol from the breakdown of triglycerides in adipose tissue can be used by the liver and kidney to make glucose.[1]

GLUCONEOGENESIS REGULATION

Primary signals: Insulin turns *off*.
Glucagon turns *on*.
Acetyl-CoA turns *on*.
Phosphorylation turns *on* in liver.

Secondary signals: Glucose signals turn *off*.
(Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate inhibits fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase.)
Low-glucose signals activate.
High-energy signals activate.
Low-energy signals inhibit.

There are two unusual aspects to the regulation of gluconeogenesis. The first step in the reaction, the formation of oxaloacetate from pyruvate, requires the presence of acetyl-CoA. This is a check to make sure that the TCA cycle is adequately fueled. If there's not enough acetyl-CoA around, the pyruvate is needed for energy and gluconeogenesis won't happen. However, if there's sufficient acetyl-CoA, the pyruvate is shifted toward the synthesis of glucose.

GLUCONEOGENESIS ATP COSTS

2 lactate + 6ATP (equivalents) $\longrightarrow$ glucose

GLUCONEOGENESIS EQUATIONS

$$2 \text{ lactate} + 4\text{ATP} + 2\text{GTP} \longrightarrow \text{glucose} + 4\text{ADP} + 2\text{GDP} + 6\text{P}_\text{i}$$

$$2 \text{ pyruvate} + 4\text{ATP} + 2\text{GTP} + 2\text{NADH} + 2\text{H}^+ \longrightarrow 4\text{ADP} + 2\text{GDP} + 6\text{P}_\text{i} + 2\text{NAD}^+$$

[1] The glycerol produced by the action of hormone-sensitive lipase in the adipose tissue cannot be utilized by adipose tissue itself. Adipose cells lack the enzyme glycerol kinase, which is necessary to convert glycerol to glycerol phosphate.

• CHAPTER • 11 •

GLYCOGEN SYNTHESIS AND DEGRADATION

•

Function

Location

Connections

Regulation

ATP Yield

ATP Cost

Molecular Features

• • • • • • • • • • • •

FUNCTION

To store *glucose* equivalents and retrieve them on demand

LOCATION

Major deposits in liver for maintaining blood glucose
Deposits in muscle for providing glucose for muscle energy requirements

CONNECTIONS

Glycogen to and from *glucose 1-phosphate*
Glucose 1-phosphate to glucose 6-phosphate
Glucose 6-phosphate to *glucose (liver and kidney only)*
Glucose 6-phosphate from *glucose*
Glucose 6-phosphate to and from *glycolysis* and *gluconeogenesis*
Glucose 6-phosphate to pentose phosphates (*not* reversible)

REGULATION

Primary signals: *Insulin* turns *synthesis on*, *degradation off*.
Glucagon turns *synthesis off*, *degradation on*.
Epinephrine turns *synthesis off*, *degradation on*.
Phosphorylation turns *synthesis off*, *degradation on*.

Secondary signals: Glucose 6-phosphate activates *synthesis*.
Ca^{2+}-Calmodulin activates *degradation* by activating phosphorylase kinase.

The synthesis and degradation of glycogen provide control of the availability of glucose equivalents. Conditions that reflect low-glucose and/or low-energy levels turn on glycogen degradation and turn off glycogen synthesis (Fig. 11-1). Regulation is principally through a cascade of phosphorylation that begins with increases in the concentration of cAMP brought about by the stimulation of adenylate cyclase by hormones for low-glucose (glucagon) and low-energy (epinephrine) levels. Glycogen phosphorylase, the enzyme that degrades glycogen to glucose 1-phosphate, is activated through phosphorylation catalyzed by phosphorylase kinase. The phosphorylase kinase is, in turn, activated by cAMP-dependent protein kinase. In the absence of cAMP signals, the activity of protein phosphatases keeps phosphorylase inactive and activates glycogen synthase. Glycogen synthesis is inactivated by phosphorylation of glycogen synthase, the enzyme responsible for making glycogen.

Regulation of glycogen synthesis and degradation is essentially the same in the liver and muscle, but there are a couple of wrinkles. Glycogen degradation is also activated in muscle in response to the rise in intracellular calcium levels that accompanies contraction. This is achieved by

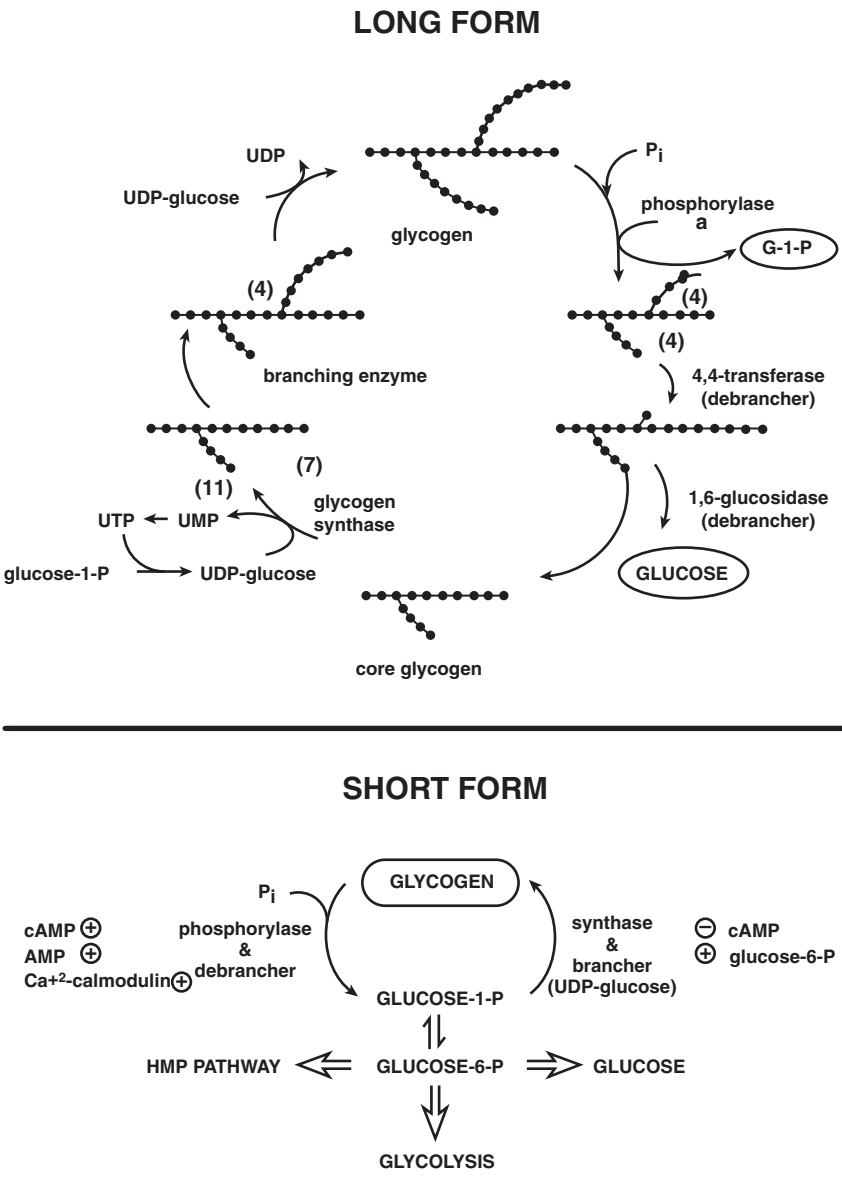


Figure 11-1 Glycogen Synthesis and Degradation
The short form shows the major control features. The long form indicates the number of glucose residues required around the branch points to make the various synthesis and degradation steps work correctly.

a stimulation of phosphorylase kinase that occurs when calmodulin (a regulatory protein associated with phosphorylase and some other proteins) binds calcium. In addition, glycogen synthesis can be activated by high levels of glucose 6-phosphate. Glycogen synthase, even when it's phosphorylated and inactive, can be stimulated by glucose 6-phosphate.

ATP YIELD

No ATP is required to remove glucose from glycogen stores.

Degradation:[1]

$$(\text{Glycogen})_n + P_i \longrightarrow \text{glucose 1-phosphate} + (\text{glycogen})_{n-1}$$
$$\text{Glucose 1-phosphate} + H_2O \longrightarrow \text{glucose} + P_i$$

Net: $(\text{Glycogen})_n + H_2O \longrightarrow (\text{glycogen})_{n-1} + \text{glucose}$

ATP COST

2 ATPs are required to store each glucose as glycogen.

Synthesis:[1]

$$\text{Glucose} + \text{ATP} \longrightarrow \text{glucose 6-phosphate} + \text{ADP}$$
$$\text{Glucose 6-phosphate} \longrightarrow \text{glucose 1-phosphate}$$
$$\text{Glucose 1-phosphate} + \text{UTP} \longrightarrow \text{UDP-glucose} + 2P_i$$
$$\text{UDP-glucose} + (\text{glycogen})_n \longrightarrow \text{UDP} + (\text{glycogen})_{n+1}$$
$$\text{UDP} + \text{ATP} \longrightarrow \text{UTP} + \text{ADP}$$

Net: $(\text{Glycogen})_n + \text{glucose} + 2\text{ATP} \longrightarrow (\text{glycogen})_{n+1} + 2\text{ADP} + 2P_i$

MOLECULAR FEATURES

Glycogen is a branched polymer (1-4 and 1-6 connections) of glucose connected in an α linkage at the anomeric carbon.

[1] To get the net reaction, molecules that occur on the right side of one reaction and on the left side of another reaction can be canceled (crossed through).

If there's plenty of glucose 6-phosphate around, there's no need to make more, so it might as well be stored as glycogen.

The branched structure of glycogen poses some special problems for the synthesis and degradation of the molecule and for remembering how it's done (Fig. 11-2). Glycogen is a polymer of glucose in which linear strings of glucose molecules connected at the ends (through the 1 and 4 carbon atoms of the glucose) are strung together in a branched fashion. Branches occur where one glucose in the chain that's already connected 1-4 has another glucose attached at the 6 position. Another linear string of glucoses (attached 1-4) then takes off from the branch. This type of structure has directions as does DNA. At one end (called the *reducing end*),[2] you have a glucose with nothing attached to carbon 1. Since each branch creates an extra end, glycogen has lots of ends that have nothing attached to carbon 4. The glucose with things attached at carbons 1, 4, and 6 is called a *branch point*. Special enzymes, branchers and debranchers, are involved in making and destroying the branch points. Like much else in biology, these enzymes take what would appear to be a relatively simple task and complicate it beyond belief.

The degradation of glycogen is accomplished by the combined action of phosphorylase and glycogen debrancher.[3] Phosphorylase can make glucose 6-phosphate only out of unbranched glucose residues that are connected to glycogen in a 1-4 linkage. If the glucose has a branch on it, phosphorylase won't touch it. Phosphorylase cleaves the glycosidic bond of the glucose residues at the multiple, nonreducing ends and nibbles down the outer limbs of the glycogen molecule, releasing glucose 1-phosphates as it goes, until it gets to a structure that has 4 glucose molecules attached to each side of the branch. Then the debrancher takes over. The debrancher takes 3 glucose residues from one side (C-6) of the branch and attaches them in a 1-4 linkage to the other side of the branch, leaving a structure in which a lone glucose is attached to the branch on the 1-6 side. The other side is now linear but is 7 glucoses long. The other activity of the debrancher (yes, it has two activities in the same molecule) then takes the glucose off the 1-6 side and releases it as free

[2] The *reducing end* is basically the end that doesn't have another glucose residue attached at carbon 1 (the anomeric carbon). It's called the reducing end because sugars that don't have anything attached at C-1 can be easily oxidized by specific chemicals that change colors, and such reactions fascinated early sugar chemists. If the end becomes oxidized, it must have reduced something . . . hence, the reducing end.

[3] Debrancher is given a terrible name in many texts—something like *gluc* something or other, or *glyco*, and maybe *transferase* stuck in there somewhere (actually it's amylo-1,6-glucosidase/4—glucanotransferase). You'll probably recognize it when you see it.

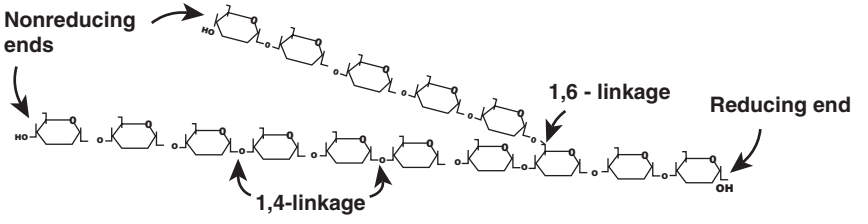


Figure 11-2 Glycogen Structure
Branches are created by forming glycosidic linkages with both the 4- and 6-hydroxyl groups of the glucose residue at the branch point. The glycogen polymer is very large and contains multiple branches.

glucose.[4] You're left with a linear molecule (at least at this branch point), and phosphorylase is off and running again.

The synthesis of glycogen gets so complicated, it's hovering somewhere around 22 on the trivia sorter. Glycogen synthase adds a glucose from a UDP-glucose[5] to the C-4 end of the preexisting glycogen molecule. To put in branch points, the branching enzyme takes a block of 7 glucoses and transfers them to a site closer to the interior of the glycogen molecule . . . if the block of residues contains a free C-4 end, if it is contained in a block that's at least 11 long, and if the new branch point is at least 4 glucoses away from another branch. Got it?

[4] Some free glucose (not glucose 1-phosphate) is released from glycogen, even in muscle. So the idea that muscle can't make any glucose is not quite right. However, this glucose is not really enough to count on.

[5] UTP + glucose $\longrightarrow$ UDP-O-glucose + PP_i. The oxygen from C-1 of glucose is attached to the UDP. The pyrophosphate is hydrolyzed to 2 P_i by pyrophosphatase to drive the reaction to completion.

CHAPTER 12

TCA CYCLE

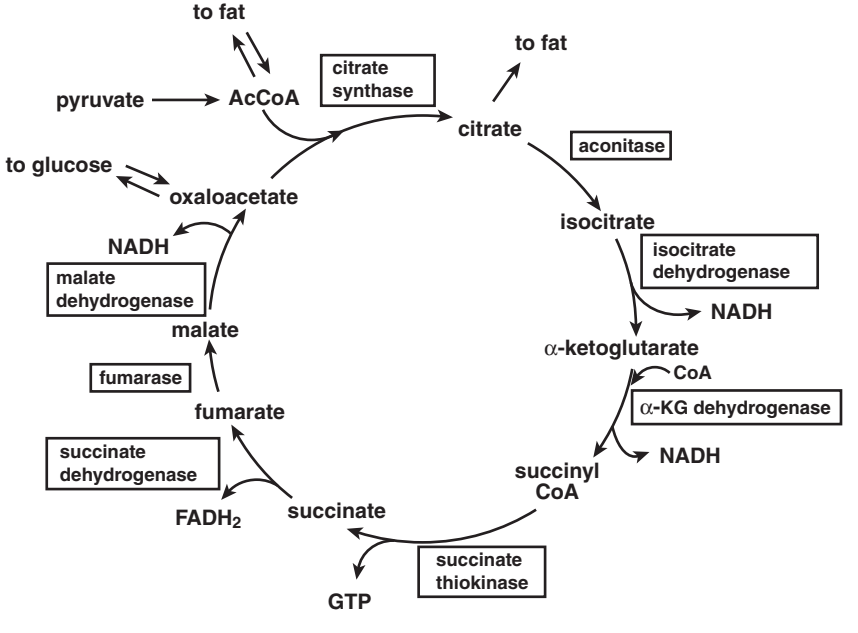


Figure 12-1 The Tricarboxylic Acid (TCA) Cycle

TCA CYCLE[1] (see Fig. 12-1.)

Function: To burn the acetyl-CoA made from fat, glucose, or protein in order to make ATP in cooperation with oxidative phosphorylation.

Location: All cells with mitochondria.

Connections: *From glycolysis* through acetyl-CoA.
Pyruvate makes oxaloacetate and malate through the anaplerotic reactions.
To β oxidation through acetyl-CoA.
To amino acid degradation through acetyl-CoA and various intermediates of the cycle.

Regulation: Supply and demand of TCA cycle.
Availability of NAD^+ and FAD as substrates.
Inhibition by NADH.
High-energy signals turn *off*.
Low-energy signals turn *on*.

ATP yield: Pyruvate $\longrightarrow$ 15ATP
Acetyl-CoA $\longrightarrow$ 12ATP

Equations:

$$\text{Pyruvate} + \text{GDP} + P_i + 3NAD^+ + \text{FAD} \longrightarrow 3CO_2 + \text{GTP} + 3\text{NADH} + FADH_2 + 3H^+$$

$$\text{Acetyl-CoA} + \text{GDP} + P_i + 2NAD^+ + \text{FAD} \longrightarrow 2CO_2 + \text{GTP} + 2\text{NADH} + FADH_2 + 2H^+$$

[1] The tricarboxylic acid cycle is also known as the Krebs cycle or the citric acid cycle. Why give something so central to life only one name?

• C H A P T E R • 13 •

FAT SYNTHESIS AND DEGRADATION

•

Fatty Acid Synthesis Function

Fatty Acid Synthesis Location

Fatty Acid Synthesis Connections

Fatty Acid Synthesis Regulation

Fatty Acid Synthesis ATP Costs (for C_{16})

Fatty Acid Synthesis Equation

Elongation and Desaturation

Triglyceride and Phospholipid Synthesis

β-Oxidation Function

β-Oxidation Location

Carnitine Shuttle

β-Oxidation Connections

β-Oxidation Regulation

β-Oxidation ATP Yield

β-Oxidation Equation

β-Oxidation of Unsaturated Fatty Acids

β-Oxidation of Odd-Chain-Length Fatty Acids

• • • • • • • • • • • •

FATTY ACID SYNTHESIS FUNCTION

To synthesize fatty acids from acetyl-CoA (Fig. 13-1)

FATTY ACID SYNTHESIS LOCATION

Liver and adipose cytoplasm

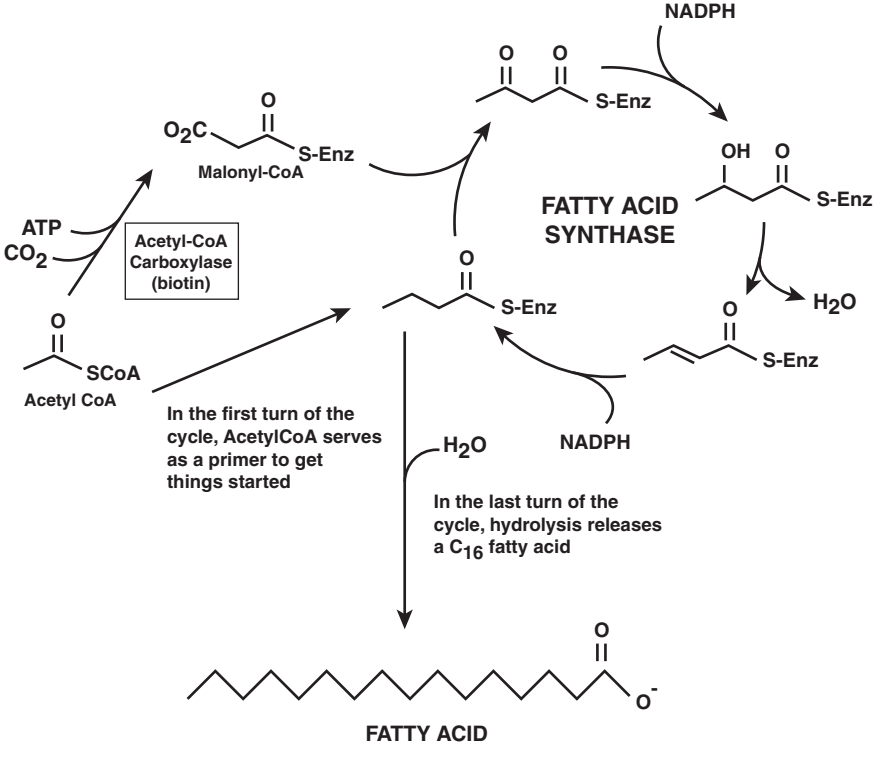


Figure 13-1 Fatty Acid Synthesis
The first formation of a carbon–carbon bond occurs between malonyl and acetyl units bound to fatty acid synthase. After reduction, dehydration, and further reduction, the acyl enzyme is condensed with more malonyl-CoA and the cycle is repeated until the acyl chain grows to C_{16}. When the growing fatty acid reaches a chain length of 16 carbons, the acyl group is hydrolyzed to give the free fatty acid.

FATTY ACID SYNTHESIS CONNECTIONS

From *TCA* and mitochondria through *citrate* to *C_{16} fatty acid*
Through C_{16}-acyl-CoA to *elongation* and *desaturation* pathways
Through C_{16}-acyl-CoA to *triglycerides*

FATTY ACID SYNTHESIS REGULATION

Primary signals: *Insulin* turns *on*.
Glucagon turns *off*.
Epinephrine turns *off*.
Phosphorylation turns *off*.

Secondary signals: *Citrate* activates (acetyl-CoA carboxylase).

The major control point for fatty acid synthesis is acetyl-CoA carboxylase. The enzyme is inactivated by phosphorylation and activated by high concentrations of citrate.

FATTY ACID SYNTHESIS ATP COSTS (FOR C_{16})

8 acetyl-CoA_{mito} $\longrightarrow$ 8 acetyl-CoA_{cyto}	−16 ATP
7 acetyl-CoA $\longrightarrow$ 7 malonyl-CoA	−7 ATP
14NADPH $\longrightarrow$ 14$NADP^+$	−42 ATP
Total cost:	−65 ATP

Calculating energy costs for the synthesis of a C_{16} fatty acid from acetyl-CoA is not as simple as you might first think. The major complication is that acetyl-CoA is made in the mitochondria, but fatty acid synthesis occurs in the cytosol—acetyl-CoA can't cross the mitochondrial membrane. Acetyl-CoA gets out of the mitochondria disguised as citrate. The acetyl-CoA is condensed with oxaloacetate to give citrate, and the citrate leaves the mitochondria. In the cytosol, the citrate is cleaved by an ATP-dependent citrate lyase into acetyl-CoA and oxaloacetate:

$$\text{Citrate} + \text{ATP} + \text{CoA} \longrightarrow \text{acetyl-CoA} + \text{ADP} + P_i + \text{oxaloacetate}$$

This reaction and the reactions required to get oxaloacetate back into the mitochondria set up the cycle shown in Fig. 13-2.

Another point that you should appreciate is that in cycles like this, writing a balanced equation for the reaction is terribly easy. You just write the stuff that goes into the cycle on the left and the stuff that comes out on the right. It's not necessary to write down all the individual reactions that make up the cycle itself. The compounds that are members of the cycle itself (such as oxaloacetate or citrate shown earlier) will not show up in the final balanced equation. The balanced equation for Fig. 13-2 is

$$\text{Acyl-CoA}_{\text{mito}} + 2\text{ATP} + \text{CoA} + \text{NADH} + \text{NADP}^+ + \text{CO}_2 \longrightarrow \text{CoA} + \text{acyl-CoA}_{\text{cyt}} + 2\text{ADP} + 2\text{P}_\text{i} + \text{NAD}^+ + \text{NADPH} + \text{CO}_2$$

If we cancel the things that appear on both the left and right, we have

$$\text{Acyl-CoA}_{\text{mito}} + 2\text{ATP} + \text{NADH} + \text{NADP}^+ \longrightarrow \text{acyl-CoA}_{\text{cyt}} + 2\text{ADP} + 2\text{P}_\text{i} + \text{NAD}^+ + \text{NADPH}$$

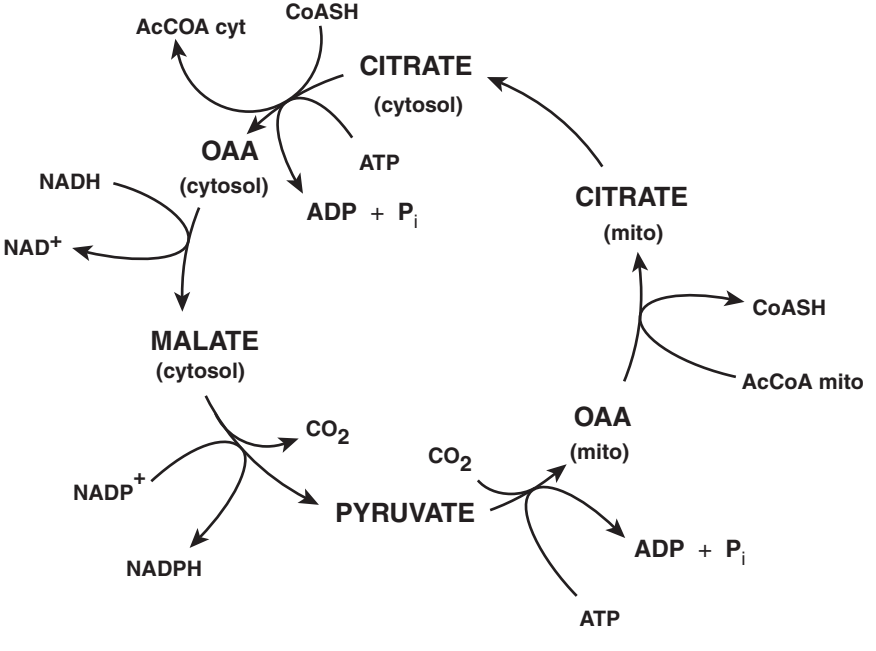


Figure 13-2
Getting **ACETYL-CoA OUT OF THE MITOCHONDRIA** and into the cytosol for fat synthesis.

In addition to moving acetyl-CoA from the mitochondria to the cytoplasm, this cycle also converts an NADH to an NADPH. If we assume that the amount of ATP that we could get from NADH and NADPH oxidation is the same, making NADPH from NADH and $NADP^+$ doesn't cost any energy. So we can conclude that the cost of just moving the acetyl-CoA out of the mitochondria is 2 ATPs per acetyl-CoA.

The synthesis of C_{16} fatty acid from acetyl-CoA requires 1 acetyl-CoA and 7 malonyl-CoA. The synthesis of each malonyl-CoA requires an ATP (and the cofactor biotin).

$$\text{Acetyl-CoA} + CO_2 + \text{ATP} \longrightarrow \text{malonyl-CoA} + \text{ADP} + P_i$$

From here it's just the reaction catalyzed by fatty acid synthase.

$$\text{Acetyl-CoA} + 7\ \text{malonyl-CoA} + 14\text{NADPH} \longrightarrow C_{16}\ \text{fat} + 14\text{NADP} + 7CO_2 + 8\text{CoA}$$

If we count the NADPH (cytosol) as 3 ATP equivalents, which could have been oxidized by the TCA cycle if they hadn't been used for fatty acid synthesis, then the synthesis of C_{16} fat requires

$8\ \text{acyl-CoA}_{\text{mito}} \longrightarrow 8\ \text{acyl-CoA}_{\text{cyto}}$	−16 ATP
$7\ \text{acyl-CoA} \longrightarrow 7\ \text{malonyl-CoA}$	−7 ATP
$14\text{NADPH} \longrightarrow 14\text{NADP}^+$	−42 ATP
Total cost:	−65 ATP

This is not the kind of number you want to remember, but if you're into ATP counting (and who isn't these days), you might want to understand how to go about figuring it out if you need to.

FATTY ACID SYNTHESIS EQUATION

$$\text{Acetyl-CoA} + 7\ \text{Malonyl-CoA} + 14\text{NADPH} + 14H^+ \longrightarrow C_{16}\ \text{fatty acid} + 14\text{NADP}^+ + 7CO_2 + 8\text{CoA}$$

Requires a phosphopantetheine cofactor

The reactions of fatty acid synthesis all occur on one enzyme—fatty acid synthase.[1] This enzyme has multiple catalytic activities on one polypeptide chain. The intermediates of the reaction are not released until

[1] A *synthase* is an enzyme that makes something but doesn't directly require the hydrolysis of ATP to do it. A *synthetase* requires the hydrolysis of ATP to make the reaction go.

the final C_{16} chain is completed. Each cycle of elongation adds 2 carbons to the growing chain. When the length gets up to 16 carbons, the fatty acid is released. In mammals, the product of fatty acid synthase is the free fatty acid, not the acyl-CoA.

• REACTIONS OF FATTY ACID SYNTHESIS:

Elongation by C_2:

$$R—C(=O)—S—Cys^{2} + Mal—S—Pant^{3} \longrightarrow R—C(=O)CH_2—C(=O)—S—Pant + CoA + CO_2$$

Reduction:

$$R—C(=O)—CH_2—C(=O)—S—Pant + NADPH \longrightarrow R—CH(OH)—CH_2—C(=O)—S—Pant + NADP^{+}$$

Dehydration:

$$R—CH(OH)—CH_2—C(=O)—S—Pant \longrightarrow R—CH=CH—C(=O)—S—Pant + H_2O$$

Reduction:

$$R—CH=CH—C(=O)—S—Pant + NADPH \longrightarrow R—CH_2—CH_2—C(=O)—S—Pant + NADP^{+}$$

Go to first step over and over until length is C_{16}.

Hydrolysis:

$$R—CH_2—CH_2—C(=O)—S—Pant + H_2O \longrightarrow R—CH_2—CH_2—CO_2^{-} + E—Pant—SH$$

ELONGATION AND DESATURATION

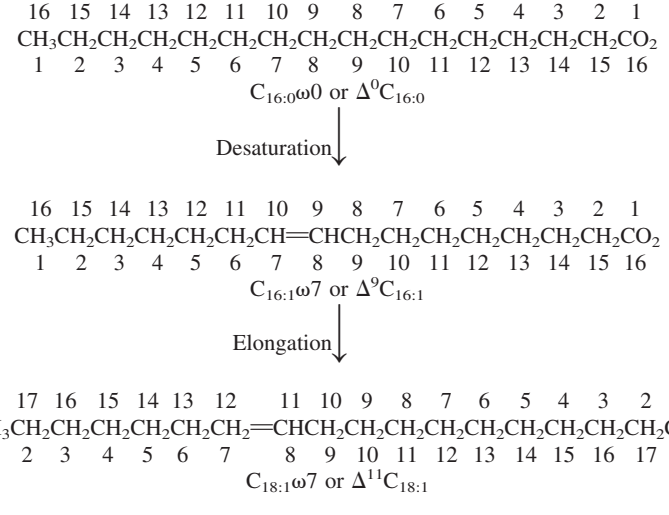
Elongated by 2 carbon atoms at a time.
Cis double bonds can be introduced no farther than C-9 from the carboxylate end in mammals.
Numbers between double bonds are different by 3.
Δ Nomenclature—counts from *carboxylate* end.
ω Nomenclature—counts from *methyl* end.

[2] In the first cycle, this is acetyl-CoA. In subsequent cycles, the R group grows by two carbons each cycle.

[3] There's a lot of shuffling of acyl groups between the pantetheine thiol and the thiol of a cysteine residue of the enzyme. They're shown in the correct position for all the reactions, so you have to do an acyl transfer at the end of each cycle to put the growing acyl chain back on the cysteine residues. The elongation step takes place with the growing acyl chain on cysteine and the malonyl-CoA on the pantetheine. At the end of the condensation reaction, the elongated chain is on the pantetheine.

Once fatty acids have been made 16 carbons long, they can be lengthened by adding 2 carbon atoms at a time with malonyl-CoA in a reaction that looks a lot like the first step of fatty acid synthesis. However, the elongation reaction is carried out on the fatty acyl-CoA and by an enzyme that is different from fatty acid synthase.[4]

The inability of animals to put in double bonds at positions farther than 9 carbons from the carboxylate carbon atom (it's numbered 1) makes for obvious exam questions about whether a given unsaturated fatty acid comes from a plant or animal source. Animals can still elongate fatty acids even after they have been desaturated, so you can't just look at the number of the position of the double bond and decide whether or not animals could have made it. For example, if we take a C_{18} fatty acid with a double bond at C-9 (the first carbon of the double bond that you encounter when walking from the carboxylate end is at C-9), it can be elongated by adding 2 carbons to the carboxylate end. This changes the number of the double bond from C-9 to C-11. Each elongation step increases the number of each double bond by 2. However, if we count the number of carbons from the CH_3 end of the fatty acid, you'll notice the number isn't changed by elongating the fatty acid.



[4] Notice that fatty acid synthesis makes the fatty acid rather than the fatty acyl-CoA as a product. It would be a chemically simple task to take the fatty acid off the fatty acid synthase by a reaction with CoA. In fact, *Escherichia coli* does it this way and makes fatty acyl-CoA as a product. Most reactions that use the fatty acid (such as desaturation, elongation, or triglyceride synthesis) require the fatty acyl-CoA, so we have to turn right around and spend some ATP to make it when we could have just made it in the first place without spending any ATP. This strategy was obviously designed by a government committee.

Notice that elongation doesn't change the number of carbon atoms between the double bond and the CH_3 group at the left end. If a double bond is closer than 7 carbon atoms to the CH_3 group (numbering the CH_3 as 1, the first double bond you bump into would start at carbon 7), a plant must have made it.

Two nomenclature camps have grown up around the naming of unsaturated fatty acids. The first camp calls C-1 the carboxyl group and numbers the double bonds from this end. This is the delta (Δ) nomenclature. The number of carbons is given, followed by the number of double bonds. The positions of the double bonds from the carboxylate carbon are indicated as a superscript to the delta. The other camp, the omega (ω) system, numbers the chain from the CH_3 end. The position of the first double bond is indicated after the ω. Often in the ω system, the other double bonds are not specified except in the $C_{22:3}$ part. For example, $C_{22:3}\omega 6$ would mean a C_{22} fatty acid with three double bonds, the first of which was 6 carbons from the CH_3 end. The other two double bonds would each be 3 carbons farther away from the CH_3 group (at 9 and 12 carbons from the CH_3 end). The ω nomenclature has the advantage that the position numbers of the double bonds do not change with elongation since the new carbons are added to the carboxylate end. In the Δ nomenclature, the $C_{22:3}\omega 6$ would be called $\Delta^{10,13,16}\ C_{22:3}$.

ω 1 2 3 4 5 6═7 8 9═10 11 12═13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22

Δ 22 21 20 19 18 17═16 15 14═13 12 11═10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

If you ever have to interconvert between these two nomenclatures, it may be easier for you to write down a representation of the structure rather than to try to figure out the relationships between the length, number of double bonds, and how you add and subtract what to get whatever.

TRIGLYCERIDE AND PHOSPHOLIPID SYNTHESIS

Glycerol phosphate comes from glycerol (*not in adipose*) or from dihydroxyacetone phosphate (in *liver* and *adipose*).

Nitrogen-containing phospholipids are made from diglyceride. Other phospholipids are made from phosphatidic acid.

(See Fig. 13-3.)

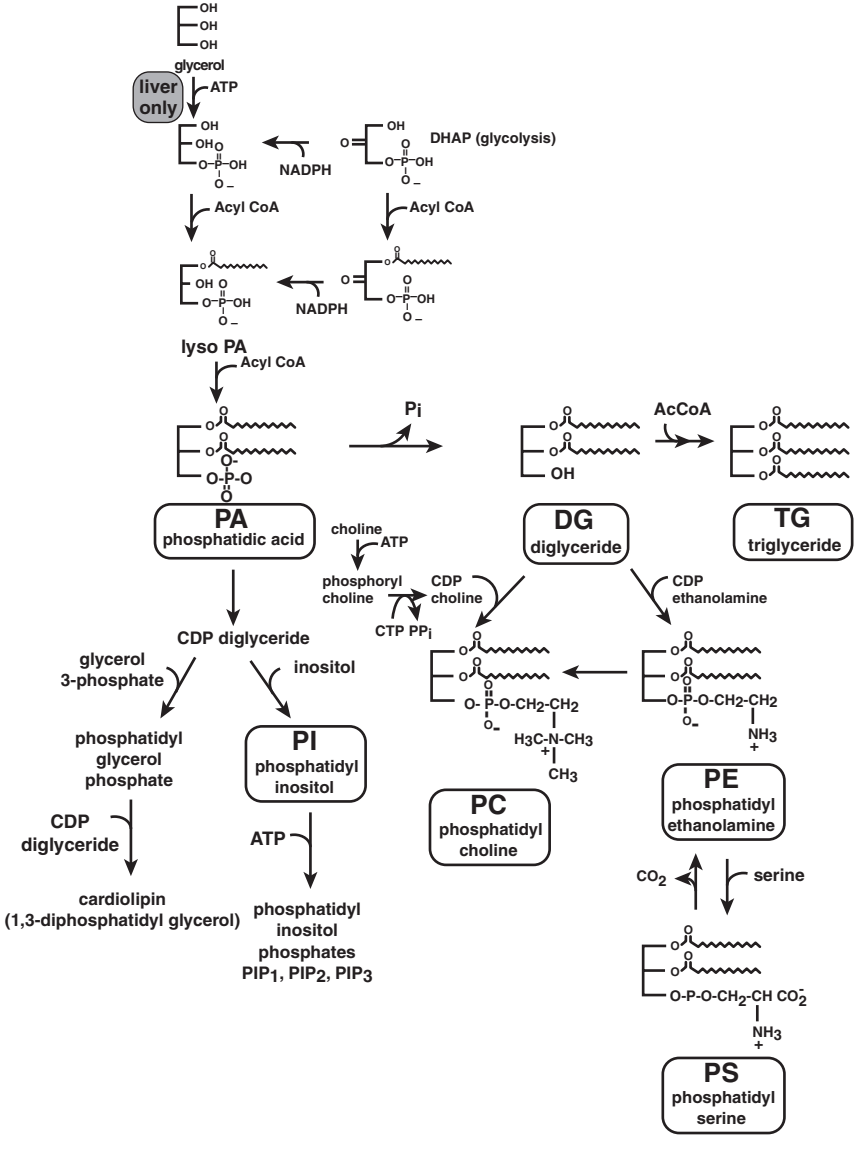


Figure 13-3 Synthesis of Phospholipids and Triglycerides
Glycerol utilization depends on the tissue. Adipose tissue can't use glycerol. Nitrogen-containing phospholipids are made from diglycerides, while other phospholipids are made from phosphatidic acid (PA). PI = phosphatidylinositol; PC = phosphatidylcholine; PE = phosphatidylethanolamine; PS = phosphatidylserine.

β-OXIDATION FUNCTION

To break down fatty acids to acetyl-CoA to provide fuel for the TCA cycle

(See Fig. 13-4.)

β-OXIDATION LOCATION

Mitochondria of all tissues

CARNITINE SHUTTLE

Transfers fatty acids form cytoplasm to mitochondria for β oxidation
Inhibited by malonyl-CoA

Long-chain fatty acids can slowly cross the mitochondrial membrane by themselves, but this is too slow to keep up with their metabolism. The carnitine shuttle provides a transport mechanism and allows control of β oxidation. Malonyl-CoA, a precursor for fatty acid synthesis, inhibits the carnitine shuttle and slows down β oxidation (Fig. 13-5).

β-OXIDATION CONNECTIONS

Fatty acyl-CoA *in*, acetyl-CoA and NADH, $FADH_2$ *out*
From triglycerides through hormone-sensitive lipase

β-OXIDATION REGULATION

Primary signals (effects on hormone-sensitive lipase):
Insulin turns *off*.
Glucagon turns *on*.
Epinephrine turns *on*.
Phosphorylation turns *on*.
Secondary signals: Malonyl-CoA inhibits carnitine acyltransferase.

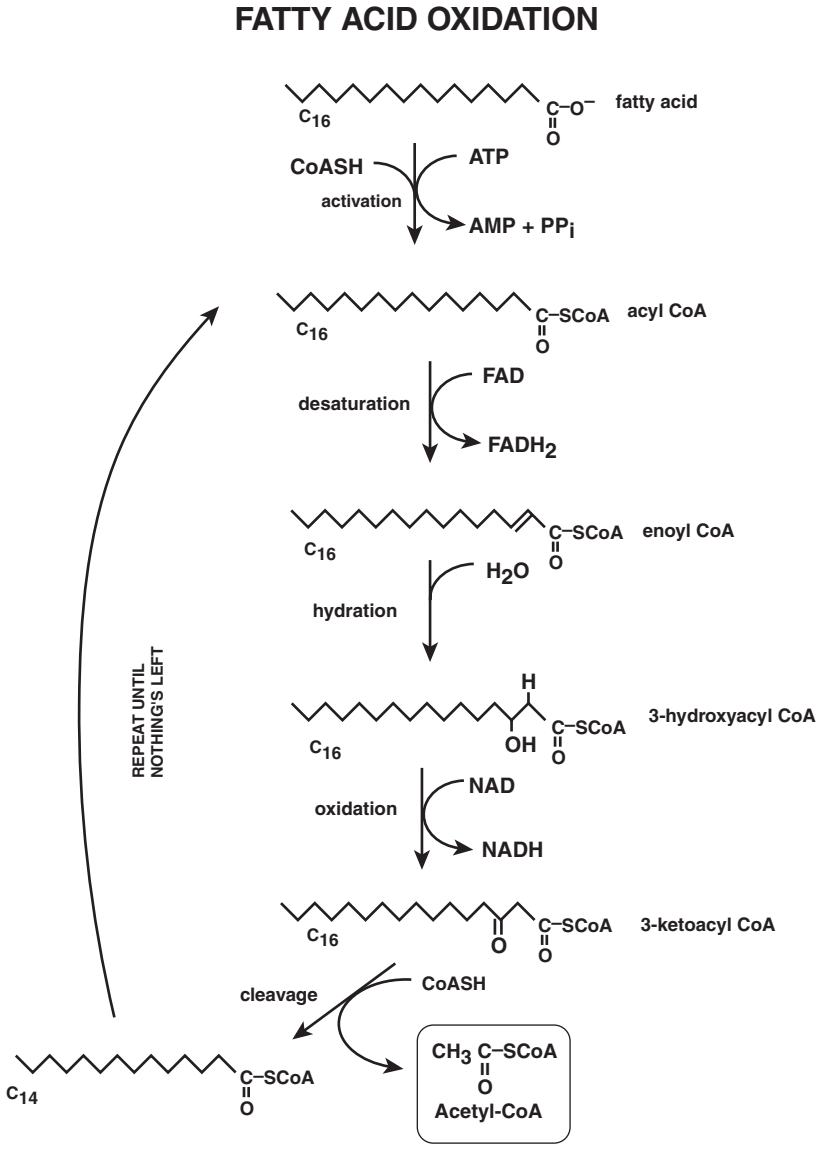


Figure 13-4 Fatty Acid Oxidation (β oxidation)

The major hormone-sensitive control point for the mobilization of fat and the β-oxidation pathway is the effect of phosphorylation on the activity of the hormone-sensitive lipase of the adipose tissue. The major direct control point for β oxidation is the inhibition of carnitine acyl-

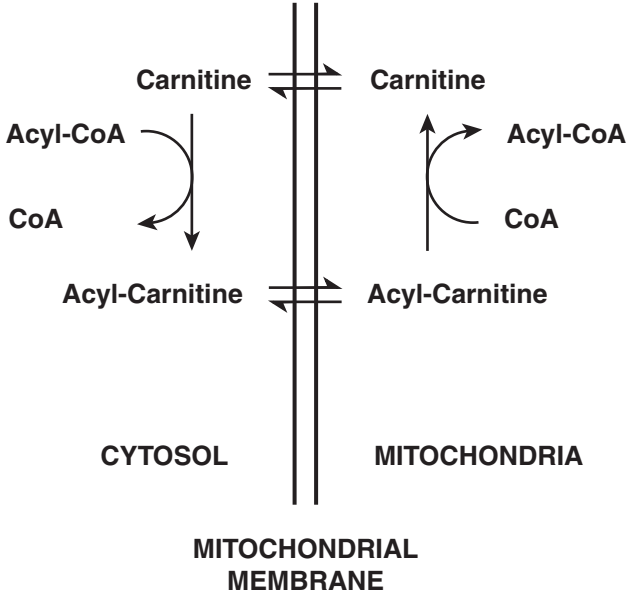


Figure 13-5
The **CARNITINE SHUTTLE** is used to transport fatty acids into the mitochondria.

transferase by malonyl-CoA. Since the malonyl-CoA required for fatty acid synthesis inhibits β oxidation, this regulation keeps the opposed pathways of fatty acid synthesis and β oxidation in check. You don't do synthesis and degradation at the same time.

β-OXIDATION ATP YIELD

C_{16} fatty acid $\longrightarrow$ $16CO_2$	129 ATP
C_{16} fatty acyl-CoA $\longrightarrow$ $16CO_2$ + CoA	131 ATP
Breakdown into steps:	
Activation of fatty acid to fatty acyl-CoA	−2 ATP
7 $FADH_2$ made from forming double bond at C-2 (7 × 2)	14 ATP
7 NADH made from oxidations during formation of 3-ketoacyl-CoA (7 × 3)	21 ATP
8 acetyl-CoA (8 × 12) through TCA cycle	96 ATP

When calculating ATP yields from β oxidation, you have to be careful to notice whether you start with the fatty acid or with the fatty acyl-

CoA. Two high-energy phosphate equivalents are required to activate fatty acids to the acyl-CoA.

$$\text{Fatty acid—}CO_2^- + \text{ATP} + \text{CoASH} \longrightarrow \text{fatty acyl—C(=O)—SCoA} + \text{AMP} + PP_i$$

All the ATP comes from oxidative phosphorylation coupled to the metabolism of acetyl-CoA by the TCA cycle. No oxygen, no β oxidation.

Each cycle of β oxidation reduces the length of the fatty acid chain by 2 carbons, produces 1 acetyl-CoA (12 ATP), 1 $FADH_2$ (2 ATP), and 1 NADH (3 ATP). Each 2-carbon unit of the fatty acid then results in the production of 17 ATPs. To figure out how much ATP a C_{20} fatty acid could make, you might remember that C_{16} fatty acid makes 129 and then add 17×2 for the additional 4 carbons ($129 + 34 = 163$). That seems like the hard way. It may be easier just to remember that each acetyl-CoA can give 12 ATPs and that each cycle generates 1 $FADH_2$ and 1 NADH. A C_{20} fatty acid would make 10 acetyl-CoA, 9 $FADH_2$, and 9 NADH and require 2 ATP equivalents for activation [$(12 \times 10) + (9 \times 2) + (9 \times 3) - 2 = 163$ ATP]. Notice that breaking a C_{20} fatty acid into 10 acetyl-CoA units requires only 9 β-oxidation cycles—the last cycle gives 2 acetyl-CoA as the product.

β-OXIDATION EQUATION

$$C_{16} \text{ fatty acid} + \text{CoA} + \text{ATP} \longrightarrow C_{16}\text{-acyl-CoA} + \text{AMP} + PP_i$$

$$C_{16}\text{-acyl-CoA} + 7NAD^+ + 7FAD \longrightarrow 8 \text{ acetyl-CoA} + 7\text{NADH} + 7FADH_2 + 7H^+$$

Each reaction of β oxidation is catalyzed by a different enzyme. Chemically, they're pretty much the same as the reverse of the individual reaction of fatty acid synthesis, with two exceptions: (1) β oxidation uses FAD for the formation of the double bond at the C-2 position, and (2) the reactions occur with the fatty acid attached to CoA rather than to the pantetheine of a multienzyme complex.

• INDIVIDUAL REACTIONS OF β OXIDATION:

Activation:

$$R—CH_2—CH_2—CO_2^- + \text{CoA} + \text{ATP} \longrightarrow R—CH_2—CH_2—C(=O)—\text{SCoA} + \text{AMP} + PP_i$$

Oxidation:

$$R—CH_2—CH_2—C(=O)—SCoA + FAD \longrightarrow R—CH=CH—C(=O)—SCoA + FADH_2$$

Hydration:

$$R—CH=CH—C(=O)—SCoA + H_2O \longrightarrow R—CH(OH)—CH_2—C(=O)—SCoA$$

Oxidation:

$$R—CH(OH)—CH_2—C(=O)—SCoA + NAD^+ \longrightarrow R—C(=O)—CH_2—C(=O)—SCoA + NADH$$

Cleavage:

$$R—C(=O)—CH_2—C(=O)—SCoA + CoA \longrightarrow R—C(=O)—SCoA + CH_3C(=O)—SCoA$$

What β oxidation actually accomplishes is the removal of a C-2 unit as acetyl-CoA from the carboxyl end of the fatty acid. This keeps happening until the fatty acid is completely converted to acetyl-CoA.

β OXIDATION OF UNSATURATED FATTY ACIDS

Double bond initially on *odd* carbon (Δ system):

- Isomerize *cis*-3 C═C to *trans*-2 C═C then proceed with normal β oxidation.
- 2 fewer ATPs per double bond

Double bond initially on *even* carbon (Δ system):

- Hydrate *cis*-2 C═C to D-3-hydroxyacyl-CoA, epimerize D-3-hydroxy to L and continue normal β oxidation.
- 2 fewer ATPs per double bond
- *Or* reduce 2-*trans*-4-*cis* C═C to 3-*trans* with NADPH; then isomerize the 3-*trans* to 2-*trans* and proceed as with normal β oxidation.
- 5 fewer ATPs per double bond

If a fatty acid already has a double bond in it, the scheme by which the fatty acid is oxidized depends on where the double bond ends up after several of the C-2 fragments have been removed by normal β oxidation. With a double bond already present, the enzyme that catalyzes the first step (insertion of the double bond at C-2) gets confused when there is already a double bond at C-2 or at C-3. The fact that the double bonds in unsaturated fatty acids are invariably *cis* also complicates life since the double bond introduced at C-2 by the desaturating enzyme of β oxidation is a *trans* double bond.

As the β-oxidation machinery chews off 2-carbon fragments, it nibbles down to one of two possible situations depending on whether the first double bond started out at an *even*- or an *odd*-numbered carbon when counting from the carboxylate end. If the double bond is on an odd-numbered carbon (as in *cis* $\Delta^9C_{18:1}$), it is metabolized slightly differently than a fatty acid in which the unsaturation is on an even-numbered carbon (as in *cis* $\Delta^{12}C_{18:1}$).

If the double bond is on an odd carbon, β oxidation removes 2-carbon fragments until it gets to the structure with a 3-*cis* double bond [R–CH═CH–CH_2–C(═O)–SCoA]. A new double bond can't be placed between C-2 and C-3 because there's already a double bond at C-3. In this situation, the activity of an isomerase simply moves the double bond from C-3 to C-2 and at the same time makes sure that the configuration is *trans*. From this point on, the metabolism is just like normal β oxidation (hydration, oxidation, cleavage). If you're counting ATPs, these unsaturated fatty acids produce 2 fewer ATPs for each double bond since there is no $FADH_2$ produced by putting in the double bond (see Fig. 13-6).

If the double bond starts out at an even carbon, β oxidation runs its normal course until the structure *cis*-2-R–CH═CH–C(═O)–SCoA is reached. The rub here is that the double bond is on an OK carbon (C-2), but it's in the wrong configuration. The double bonds in unsaturated fatty acids are invariably of the *cis* configuration, but β oxidation introduces the double bond at C-2 in the *trans* configuration. The pathway cited in most texts involves the addition of water to the 2-*cis* double bond to give the 3-hydroxy species just as in normal β oxidation, except for a mean twist. If the double bond is introduced in the *trans* configuration by β oxidation itself, hydration gives the L-3-hydroxy fatty acyl-CoA. But if the double bond is in the *cis* configuration, hydration gives the D-3-hydroxy fatty acyl-CoA. The configuration around C-3 (D vs. L) might appear trivial to you, but to the enzyme that oxidizes the C-3 (C–OH) to the carbonyl (C═O), it's night and day. The dehydrogenase won't touch the D configuration because the OH group is in the wrong place relative to the R and CoA groups. To get around this problem, there's an enzyme (an epimerase) that converts the D to the L epimer. The L epimer is then recognized by the dehydrogenase, and it's smooth sailing from there on. Since the isomerase and epimerase don't require ATP hydrolysis, ATP counting through this pathway would show that a double bond at an *even* position reduces the yield of ATP by 2 (no $FADH_2$ is formed in the first desaturation reaction).

A somewhat newer pathway, which may be the real pathway in many cells, has been discovered recently. This may or may not be described in your text. In this pathway, the fatty acyl-CoA is metabolized

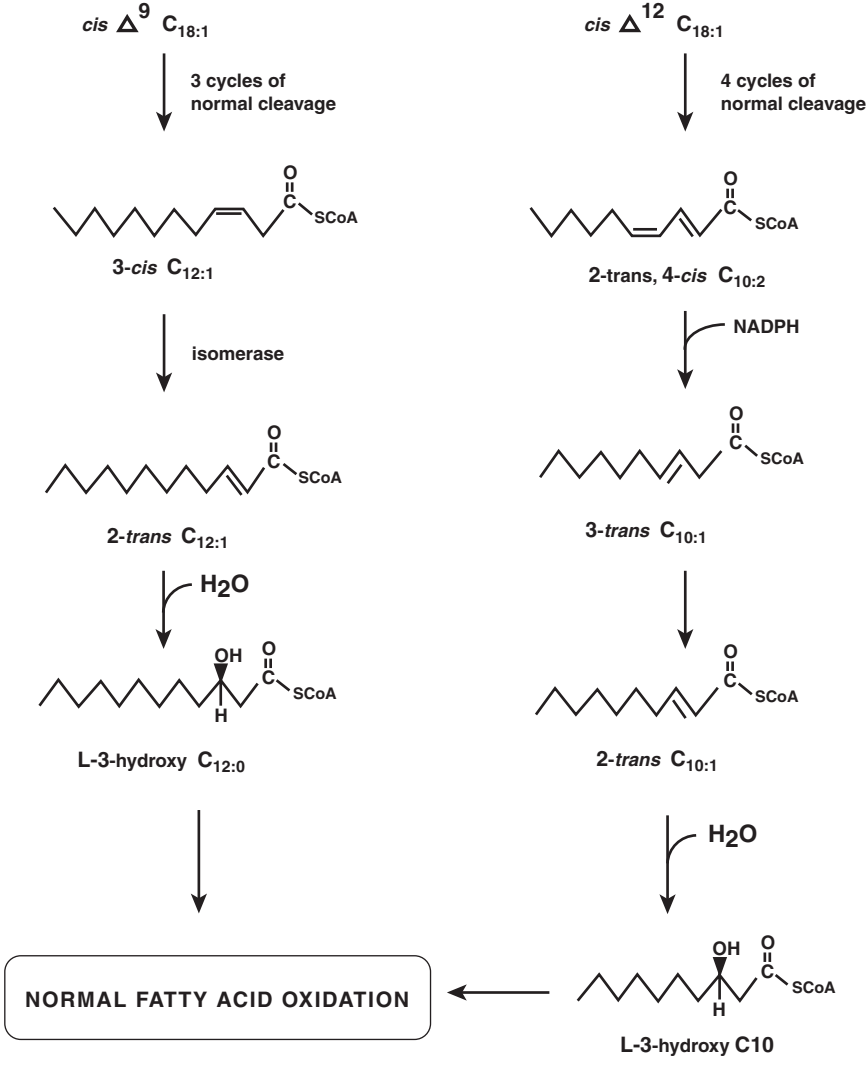


Figure 13-6 Metabolism of Unsaturated Fatty Acids
This may not be the pathway in your text. If you've not seen this mentioned, ignore it. The other (and possibly incorrect) pathway is simpler anyway.

normally, introducing a *cis* double bond at C-2 and removing 2-carbon fragments until the fatty acid contains two double bonds, 2-*trans*-4-*cis*-R–CH═CH–CH═CH–C(═O)–S–CoA. The 2-*trans* double bond is put in by the normal β oxidation, and the 4-*cis* is left from the original *cis* double bond in the unsaturated fatty acid. At this point, the 2-*trans*-4-*cis*

fatty acyl-CoA is reduced by an NADPH-dependent reductase to the *trans*-3-R–CH_2–CH═CH–CH_2–C(═O)–S–CoA. The 3-*trans* double bond is then isomerized to the 2-*trans* double bond, and β oxidation proceeds as normal. If you count ATPs by this pathway, each double bond at an even carbon would decrease the yield of ATP by 5 (assuming that the NADPH used is equivalent to NADH and would produce 3 ATPs if oxidized by the electron transport chain and that no $FADH_2$ is made in putting in the double bond).

β OXIDATION OF ODD-CHAIN-LENGTH FATTY ACIDS

Makes propionyl-CoA, which is metabolized by propionyl-CoA carboxylase (biotin) and methylmalonyl-CoA mutase (B_{12}) to give succinyl-CoA.

Since there's no good way to make a C-1 fragment during β oxidation, the metabolism of fatty acids with an odd number of carbons must finally give you a 3-carbon piece as propionyl-CoA. Odd-chain-length fatty acids aren't very abundant in nature (some shellfish and bacteria make odd-chain-length fatty acids), but they may be somewhat more common on exams. The propionyl-CoA resulting from the β oxidation of odd-chain fatty acids is metabolized by a weird pathway that is also used to metabolize the propionyl-CoA produced by the breakdown of the amino acid threonine. Two vitamins are required in this pathway, biotin and B_{12}. This is one of two places you'll see vitamin B_{12} (the other is in the metabolism of 1-carbon fragments; see Fig. 13-7).

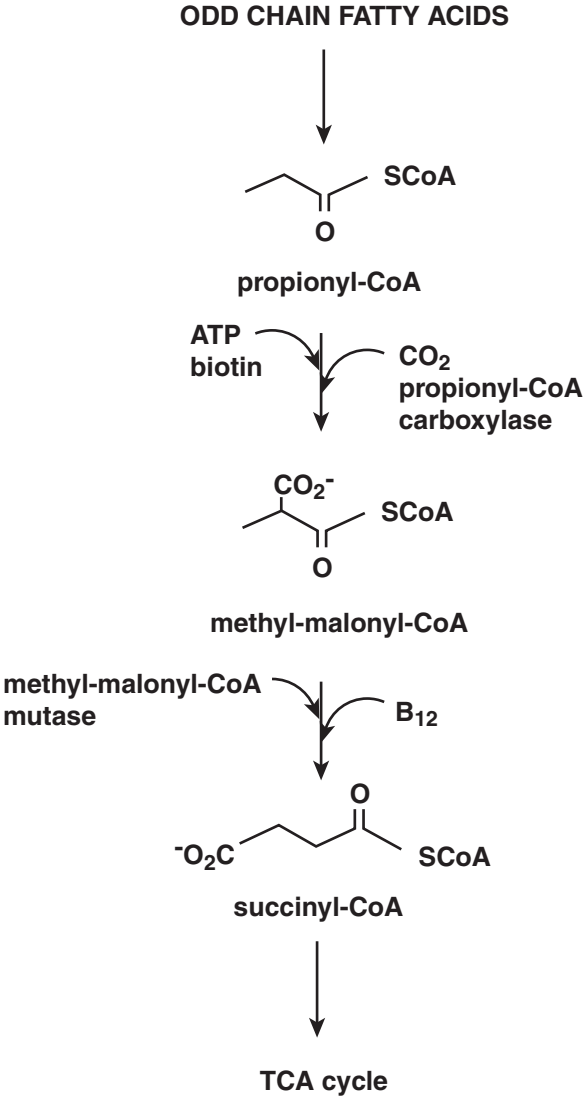


Figure 13-7
Metabolism of **ODD-CHAIN-LENGTH FATTY ACIDS** yields propionyl-CoA, which can be rearranged to succinyl-CoA and dumped into the TCA cycle.

· C H A P T E R · 14 ·

ELECTRON TRANSPORT AND OXIDATIVE PHOSPHORYLATION

Oxidation and Reduction

The Electron Transport Chain

Connections

Regulation

P/O Ratios

Uncouplers

Inhibitors

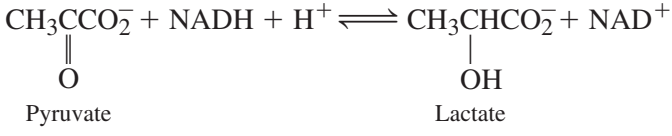
You only have to look at the ATP yield from the TCA cycle, 12 of them per molecule of acetyl-CoA, to know that oxidative phosphorylation must be important. That's where all the electrons from NADH and $FADH_2$ go after they're made by the TCA cycle.

OXIDATION AND REDUCTION

Oxidation is the loss of electrons.
NADH is oxidized to NAD^+.
Reduction is the gain of electrons.
O_2 is reduced to H_2O.

Electrons usually aren't floating around in space; they're stuck on some atom or other. The simple consequence of this is that when one

thing loses electrons, something else must gain them. Every oxidation of something must be coupled to the reduction of something else. The molecule or atom that loses the electrons has been oxidized; the one that gains them has been reduced. Oxidants, or oxidizing agents, are compounds that oxidize other compounds—they are reduced in the process. Reductants, or reducing agents, are compounds that reduce other compounds—they are oxidized in the process.



Pyruvate is reduced to lactate. Lactate is oxidized to pyruvate. NADH is oxidized to NAD^+. NAD^+ is reduced to NADH. Pyruvate and NAD^+ are oxidizing agents. Lactate and NADH are reducing agents.

As fuel molecules are oxidized, the electrons they have lost are used to make NADH and $FADH_2$. The function of the electron transport chain and oxidative phosphorylation is to take electrons from these molecules and transfer them to oxygen, making ATP in the process.

THE ELECTRON TRANSPORT CHAIN

Two electrons flowing down the chain make
- 3 ATP/NADH
- 2 ATP/$FADH_2$

As electrons move down the electron transport chain, the carriers become reduced (Fig. 14-1). The next carrier oxidizes the previous carrier, taking its electrons and transferring them on to the next carrier. Finally the electrons end up reducing oxygen to water. The cytochromes are named with letters in no particular order, making them tough to memorize, but you probably should learn them, at least right before the exam—after that you can look them up if you ever need to.

The energetics of the electron transport steps makes the process work. Overall there's a lot of free energy lost in the tranfer of electrons from NADH to oxygen—the overall reaction is very favorable, with an equilibrium constant that's overwhelmingly large. At the three sites where ATPs are made (labeled I, II, and III), the reaction is the most downhill.

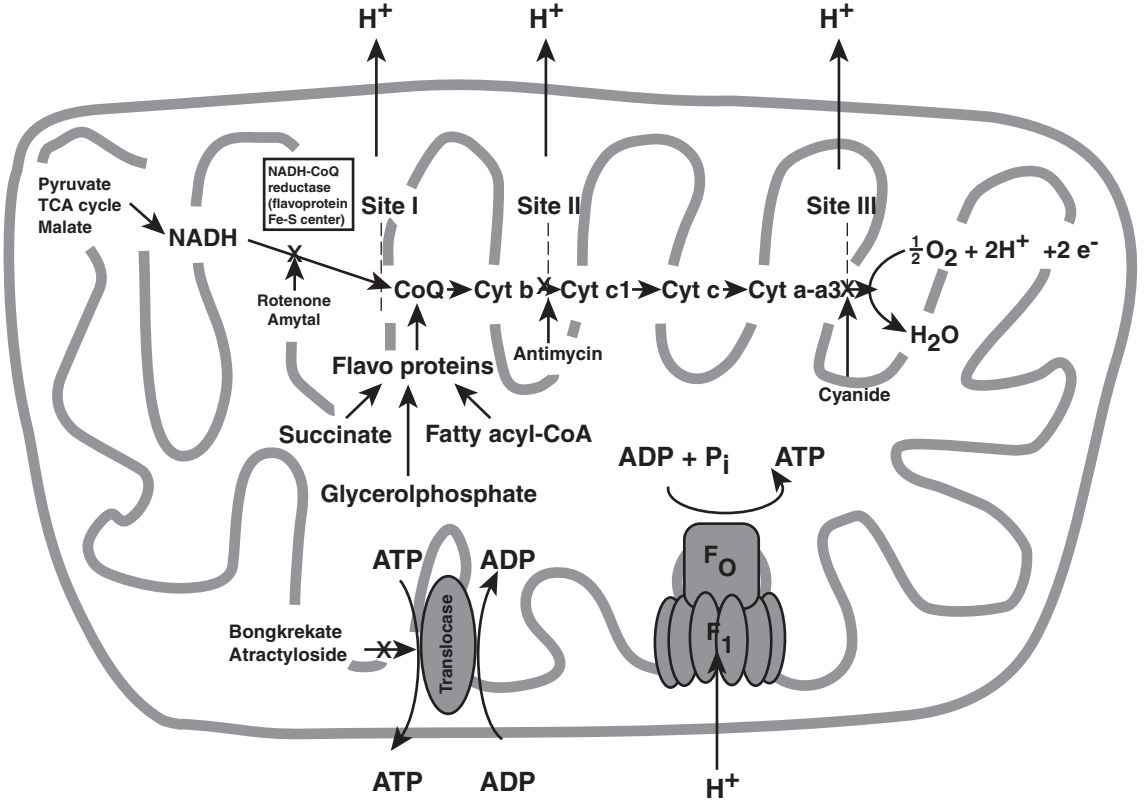


Figure 14-1 The Electron Transport Chain

During the electron tranfers at the three classic sites of phosphorylation (marked I, II, and III), protons are pumped out of the mitochondria into the cytoplasm. The exact number of protons pumped at each site is somewhat controversial; however, this proton pumping makes the interior of the mitochondria alkaline.

ATP is made by the F_1F_0 ATPase. This enzyme allows the protons back into the mitochondria. Since the interior is alkaline, the reaction is favorable—favorable enough to drive the synthesis of ATP by letting protons back into the mitochondria. Exactly how the F_1F_0 ATPase couples the flow of protons down their concentration gradient to the formation of ATP is not known in molecular detail. The proton flow through the F_1F_0 ATPase is required to release ATP from the active site where it was synthesized from ADP and P_i. The ATP is made in the interior of the mitochondria and must be exchanged for ADP outside the mitochondria to keep the cytosol supplied with ATP. The exchange of mitochondrial ATP for cytoplasmic ADP is catalyzed by the ATP/ADP translocase.

The complete transfer of 2 electrons from NADH through the entire electron transport chain to oxygen generates 3 ATPs.[1] $FADH_2$ feeds electrons into coenzyme Q (a quinone) after the first ATP-generating step. Flavin-linked substrates (those that make $FADH_2$) generate only 2 ATPs per 2 electrons transferred down the chain. Flavin-linked substrates generate less ATP, not only because they feed in after the first ATP has already been made; they make 2 ATPs because $FADH_2$ is not as strong a reducing agent as NADH. There is not enough energy in the oxidation of $FADH_2$ to generate 3 ATPs.

CONNECTIONS

NADH and $FADH_2$ from the TCA Cycle.
Electrons from NADH outside the mitochondria are transported into the mitochondria by the malate-aspartate shuttle or the α-glycerol phosphate shuttle.
O_2 is a gas supplied by the blood.
ADP outside the mitochondria is swapped for ATP inside the mitochondria by a specific translocase.
F_1F_0 ATPase couples H^+ gradient to ATP synthesis.

[1] The current estimate for the number of ATPs made per 2 electrons is actually about 2.5. This is because of the uncertainties in the number of protons pumped out at each electron transfer step. This affects ATP yields from glucose (30 instead of 36), so be sure you ask your professor which to use.

The electron transport chain gets its substrates from the NADH and $FADH_2$ supplied by the TCA cycle. Since the TCA cycle and electron transport are both mitochondrial, the NADH generated by the TCA cycle can feed directly into oxidative phosphorylation. NADH that is generated outside the mitochondria (for example, in aerobic glycolysis) is not transported directly into the mitochondria and oxidized—that would be too easy.

There are two shuttles involved in getting the electrons from NADH into mitochondria. The α-glycerol phosphate shuttle works most simply. In this shuttle, NADH in the cytoplasm is used to reduce dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP) to α-glycerol phosphate. The α-glycerol phosphate is actually the molecule transported into the mitochondrion, where it is oxidized back to DHAP, giving mitochondrial $FADH_2$. The DHAP then leaves the mitochondrion to complete the shuttle. With this shuttle in operation, there's a cost. Normally, the oxidation of mitochondrial NADH gives 3 ATPs. However, the mitochondrial enzyme that oxidizes α-glycerol phosphate uses FAD as the oxidizing agent. The $FADH_2$ that results gives only 2 ATP equivalents. Using this shuttle, the cytoplasmic NADH yields only 2 ATPs.

The other shuttle is the malate-aspartate shuttle. The advantage of this shuttle is that it gives you 3 ATPs for the oxidation of each cytoplasmic NADH. In red muscle, heart, and brain tissues the malate-aspartate shuttle is the major pathway for shuttling electrons into mitochondria. In white muscle, the α-glycerol phosphate shuttle predominates (Fig. 14-2).

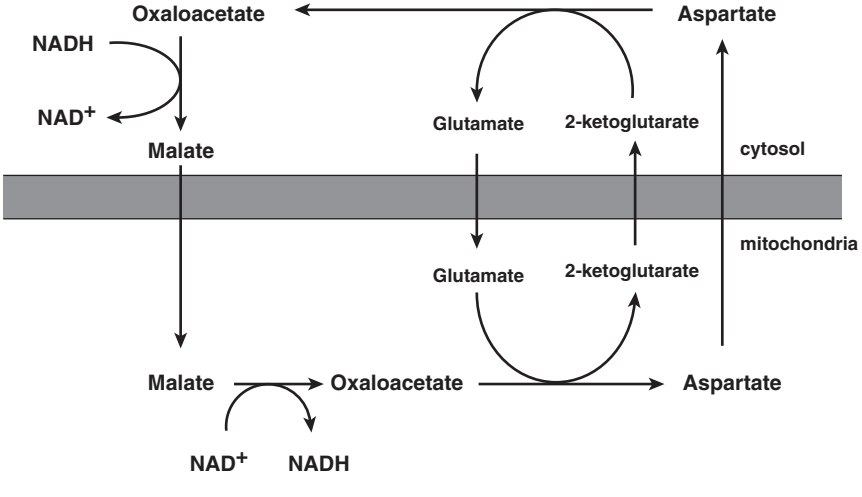


Figure 14-2
The **MALATE-ASPARTATE SHUTTLE** gets reducing equivalents (electrons) from cytosolic NADH into the mitochondria so that 3 ATPs can be made.

REGULATION

The rate of oxidative phosphorylation is controlled by the supply of ADP and phosphate.

Assuming that oxygen is available and that there is a supply of NADH- or $FADH_2$-generating substrates, the activity of oxidative phosphorylation is determined by the availability of ADP. If ADP is available and there is enough phosphate around (there usually is), the ADP and P_i are converted to ATP. If not, not.

P/O RATIOS

These are the numbers of ATP equivalents made per 2 electrons passed down the electron transport chain.

NADPH: P/O = 3
$FADH_2$: P/O = 2
Succinate (with rotenone present): P/O = 2
Acetate: P/O = 2.5

The P/O ratio is the number of ATPs made for each O atom consumed by mitochondrial respiration. The P stands for high-energy phosphate equivalents, and the O actually stands for the number of $\frac{1}{2}$ O_2's that are consumed by the electron transport chain. The full reduction of O_2 to 2 H_2O takes 4 electrons. Therefore, 2 electrons reduce $\frac{1}{2}$ of an O_2. The oxidation of NADH to NAD and the oxidation of $FADH_2$ to FAD are both 2-electron oxidations. O can be read as the transfer of 2 electrons. It's not quite as obscure as it sounds.[2]

To figure out a P/O ratio[3] you have to figure out two things—the P and the O. The P is easy if you've learned to count ATPs made by various metabolic pathways. The P is the net number of ATPs made by the metabolism of the substance you're dealing with. The O is a little harder. Here you must figure out how many times 2 electrons have been passed down the electron transport chain. For each NADH or each $FADH_2$ made during the metabolism of your substance, 1 O is consumed as 2 electrons are passed down the chain.

[2] It probably *is* as obscure as it sounds. Remember O = transfer of 2 electrons down the entire chain.

[3] Pronounced "pee to oh," "pee over oh," or "pee oh"—all are used.

In the presence of the inhibitor rotenone (to prevent the oxidation of NADH by the electron transport chain), succinate can be metabolized only to fumarate, producing an $FADH_2$ in the process.

$$\text{Succinate} + \text{FAD} \longrightarrow \text{fumarate} + \text{FADH}_2$$

The oxidation of the $FADH_2$ makes 2 ATPs and consumes 1 O. The P/O for succinate is 2.

In the absence of rotenone, the NADH that is made from the conversion of succinate to oxaloacetate can be oxidized by the electron transport chain. The metabolism of succinate then becomes

$$\begin{aligned}
&\text{Succinate} + \text{FAD} \longrightarrow \text{fumarate} + \text{FADH}_2\\
&\text{Fumarate} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \longrightarrow \text{malate}\\
&\text{Malate} + \text{NAD}^+ \longrightarrow \text{oxaloacetate} + \text{NADH} + \text{H}^+\\
\hline
&\text{Net: Succinate} + \text{FAD} + \text{H}_2\text{O} + \text{NAD}^+ \longrightarrow\\
&\qquad\qquad \text{oxaloacetate} + \text{FADH}_2 + \text{NADH} + \text{H}^+
\end{aligned}$$

In this case, succinate metabolism to oxaloacetate produces 5 ATPs from the oxidation of the NADH and $FADH_2$—2 from the $FADH_2$ and 3 from the NADH. Two O's are consumed, 1 for each of the NADH and $FADH_2$ molecules. The P/O is then $5/2 = 2.5$. Thus the P/O can be a nonintegral number.

Just one more. Let's do acetate. Before it can be metabolized, acetate must be activated in a reaction that uses 2 ATP equivalents.[4]

$$\text{Acetate} + \text{CoA} + \text{ATP} \longrightarrow \text{acetyl-CoA} + \text{ADP} + \text{PP}_\text{i}$$

Acetyl-CoA metabolized through the TCA cycle yields 3 NADH, 1 $FADH_2$, and 1 GTP—a total of 12 ATP equivalents (3 from each NADH, 2 from each $FADH_2$, and 1 GTP—12 in all). Four O's are used, 1 for each NADH and $FADH_2$. The P in this case is 10 ($12 - 2$ for the activation of acetate to acetyl-CoA). The $P/O = 10/4 = 2.5$. P/O ratios for anything else are calculated in the same way.

UNCOUPLERS

Allow protons back into the mitochondria without making any ATP
Stimulate oxygen consumption

[4] For reactions that make PP_i (pyrophosphate), the PP_i is rapidly hydrolyzed to 2 P_i in the cell, so we'll consider the formation of PP_i to use 2 high-energy-phosphate bonds.

Mitochondria do three things: oxidize substrates, consume oxygen, and make ATP. Uncouplers prevent the synthesis of ATP but do not inhibit oxygen consumption or substrate oxidation. Uncouplers work by destroying the pH gradient. The classic uncoupler is dinitrophenol (DNP). This phenol is a relatively strong acid and exists as the phenol and the phenolate anion.

$$\text{2,4-DNP—OH} + H_2O \rightleftharpoons \text{2,4-DNP—O}^- + H_3O^+$$

Because both the anion and the acid are lipophilic (greasy) enough to cross the mitochondrial membrane, DNP can transport protons across the membrane and destroy the pH gradient. The 2,4-DNP–OH crosses from the cytosol into the mitochondrion, carrying its proton with it. In the more alkaline environment of the mitochondrion, the DNP–OH loses its proton and the pH falls. The 2,4-DNP–O^- then leaves the mitochondrion and repeats the cycle again until the pH inside is the same as the pH outside. With no pH gradient, there is no ATP synthesis. However, there is still oxidation of substrates and consumption of oxygen. With no ATP synthesis, the ADP concentration is high and the electron transport chain keeps trying to pump out protons. In fact, uncouplers usually stimulate oxygen and substrate consumption. Long-chain fatty acids can uncouple mitochondria by the same mechanism. There are other ways to collapse the pH gradient. Valinomycin is a potassium ionophore[5] and collapses the electrochemical gradient[6] of the mitochondria. Collapsing the electrochemical gradient also prevents ATP synthesis.

INHIBITORS

Inhibitors block the flow of electrons at a specific site and inhibit electron flow and ATP synthesis.
Inhibitors inhibit oxygen consumption and ATP synthesis.

[5] An *ionophore* is a compound that is capable of selectively carrying ions across a membrane. The ion fits into a specific binding site in a molecule that is hydrophobic enough to cross the membrane. There are calcium-specific ionophores, proton ionophores, sodium ionophores, etc.

[6] *Electrochemical gradient* is the name given to the gradient of charge and ions that exists across the inside and the outside of a cellular membrane. The outside of the mitochondrion is more positively charged than the inside, and the concentration of potassium ions is higher outside than inside. When an ion falls through (an expression that gives a nice image, but *moves* would be just as good) the electrochemical gradient, it is driven by both its concentration gradient and the charge difference between the inside and the outside of the membrane. Ions tend to move from areas of high concentration to areas of low concentration. Positive ions tend to move toward the more negative compartment. The bigger the charge difference between the inside and the outside, the bigger the free-energy difference that drives the ion movement (see Chapter 3).

Inhibitors actually block one of the steps of oxidative phosphorylation. *Cyanide* blocks the last step of electron transfer by combining with and inhibiting cytochrome oxidase. The effect is similar to oxygen deprivation. The less obvious effect is that all the electron carriers become more reduced than they would be without the inhibitor. The reason is that the substrates are still pushing reducing equivalents (electrons) down the electron transport chain. But it's blocked at the end. The result is that all the carriers before the block become reduced. For the same reason, inhibiting electron transport also tends to keep the NADH and $FADH_2$ reduced (depending on where the inhibitor acts). Carriers after the block become more oxidized. Carriers after the block can still transfer their electrons to oxygen. Once they've done this, though, there are no more reducing equivalents available because of the block, and they are left in the oxidized state.

Different inhibitors block at different points of the chain. The general rule is that all electron carriers that occur before the block become reduced and all that occur after the block become oxidized.

INHIBITOR	SITE	EFFECT
Cyanide	Cytochrome oxidase	Blocks transfer of electrons to O_2. Blocks at site III.
Antimycin	Electron transfer from cyt b to cyt c_1	All intermediates before and including cyt a will be in the reduced state; all intermediates after and including cyt c_1 will be in the oxidized state. Blocks at site II.
Rotenone	NADH-CoQ reductase	Blocks oxidation of NADH (site I). NADH will become reduced; Substrates such as succinate that enter via FADH will still be oxidized and make 2 ATPs/mol.
Oligomycin	ADP phosphorylation	Blocks phosphorylation of ADP. Does not inhibit uncoupled oxidations.
Atractyloside and bongkrekate	ADP-ATP transporter	Inhibits entry of ADP into mitochondria and ATP export. Stops electron transport because of lack of ADP. Inside, all ADP is converted to ATP.

Rotenone inhibits the transfer of electrons from NADH into the electron transport chain. The oxidation of substrates that generate NADH is, therefore, blocked. However, substrates that are oxidized to generate $FADH_2$ (such as succinate or α-glycerol phosphate) can still be oxidized and still generate ATP. Because NADH oxidation is blocked, the NADH pool becomes more reduced in the presence of rotenone since there's nowhere to transfer the electrons.

Atractyloside and bongkrekate inhibit the entry of ADP into the mitochondria. After all the ADP in the mitochondria has been converted to ATP, oxidative phosphorylation stops, since the ATP that's made can't get out and new ADP can't get in from the outside.

· C H A P T E R · 15 ·

PENTOSE PHOSPHATE PATHWAY

·

· · · · · · · · · · · · ·

PENTOSE PHOSPHATE PATHWAY

Function: To supply reducing equivalents for biosynthesis (NADPH) and pentoses for DNA and RNA biosynthesis.

Location: Everywhere.

Connections: To *glycolysis* and *glycogen* through *glucose 6-phosphate*.
Shares some enzymes with glycolysis.
To *DNA-RNA synthesis* through *ribose 5-phosphate*.

Regulation: NADPH inhibits.
$NADP^+$ activates.
High glucose 6-phosphate activates.

EQUATIONS:

Making NADPH:

3 Glucose 6-P + $6NADP^+ \longrightarrow$
2 fructose 6-P + glyceraldehyde 3-P + $3CO_2$ + 6NADPH + $6H^+$

Making ribose 5-P:

Glucose 6-P + $2NADP^+ \longrightarrow$
ribose 5-P + CO_2 + 2NADPH + $2H^+$

The hexose monophosphate pathway has several names just to confuse you. It's called the hexose monophosphate shunt or pathway (HMP shunt or pathway), or the pentose phosphate pathway, or the phosphogluconate pathway (Fig. 15-1). The pathway in its full form is complicated and has complicated stoichiometry. Usually it's not necessary to remember all of it. The important points are that it makes NADPH for biosynthesis and riboses (C-5 sugars) for DNA and RNA synthesis.

NADPH is a reducing agent that is reserved for biosynthetic pathways—notably fatty acid synthesis. Thus, the HMP pathway is called upon when reducing equivalents and fatty acid synthesis are turned on. Primarily, the regulation of the pathway is through the supply and demand of NADPH.

NADPH is also used to keep the cellular (and mitochondrial) glutathione in the reduced form through the action of glutathione reductase:[1]

$$GSSG + NADPH + H^+ \longrightarrow 2GSH + NADP^+$$

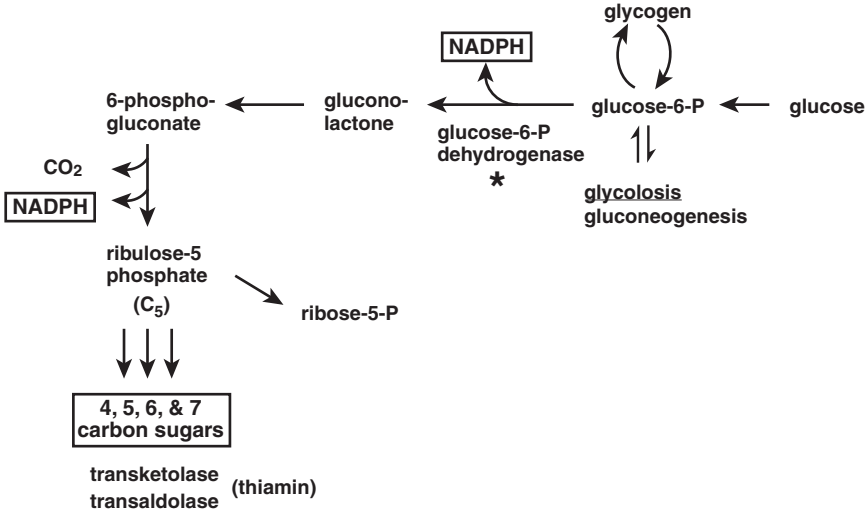


Figure 15-1 The Pentose Phosphate Pathway

[1] Glutathione (GSH) is a tripeptide, γ-glutamylcysteinylglycine. The γ-glutamyl part means that the amino group of the cysteine is attached to the side chain carboxyl group of the glutamic acid rather than to the α-carboxyl. GSH is a thiol (sulfhydryl)-containing molecule that can be oxidized to the disulfide, GSSG, by cellular oxidants such as hydrogen peroxide. It helps protect cells against damage that can be caused by oxidants.

This reaction also protects proteins with cysteine residues from becoming oxidized to the disulfide since the GSH can be used to reduce the protein disulfide back to the thiol form:

$$\text{Protein—SS—Protein} + 2\text{GSH} \rightleftharpoons 2\ \text{protein—SH} + \text{GSSG}$$

A somewhat more trivial thing to remember about the HMP pathway is that this is one of the places you've seen the vitamin thiamin pyrophosphate. This cofactor is necessary for the transketolase reaction that is in the middle of the HMP pathway. The transketolase reaction converts two C-5 sugars to a C-7 and a C-3. The other place you've seen thiamin pyrophosphate as a cofactor is in the pyruvate dehydrogenase and α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase reactions.

CHAPTER 16

AMINO ACID METABOLISM

Nonessential Amino Acid Synthesis

Essential Amino Acids

Amino Acid Degradation

Generalities of Amino Acid Catabolism

Products of Amino Acid Degradation

NONESSENTIAL AMINO ACID SYNTHESIS

AMINO ACID	SYNTHETIC ROUTE
Ala	From Pyruvate by transamination
Glu	From α-Ketoglutarate by transamination
Asp	From Oxaloacetate by transamination
Gln	Glu + NH_4^+ + ATP → Gln
Asn	Asp + Gln + ATP → Asn + AMP + PP_i + Glu
Ser	Glucose → hydroxypyruvate → Ser
	Glucose → phosphohydroxypyruvate → Ser
Gly	Ser + THfolate → Gly + CH_2-THfolate
Arg	Glu → Glu-semialdehyde → ornithine → Arg
Pro	Glu → Glu-semialdehyde → Pro
Tyr	Phe → Tyr (phenylalanine hydroxylase, biopterin cofactor)
Cys	Met → homoCys + Ser → cystathionine → Cys

The other *nine* amino acids are essential and must be taken from the diet. Notice that some of the amino acids require other amino acids for their synthesis. Exam questions usually center on whether or not an amino acid is essential and the metabolites that serve as precursors for specific amino acids.

ESSENTIAL AMINO ACIDS

His, Ile, Leu, Lys, Met, Phe, Thr, Trp, Val

AMINO ACID DEGRADATION

Ketogenic:	Leu, Lys Degraded to acetyl-CoA. Glucose cannot be made from these.
Glucogenic and Ketogenic:	Ile, Phe, Tyr, Trp Goes both ways.
Glucogenic:	*Everything else* Degraded to pyruvate or a member of the TCA cycle Glucose can be made from these.

The complete catabolic pathways of the individual amino acids are a complex set of pathways that are probably not worth remembering in detail (this is obviously opinion). This doesn't mean they're not important. In fact, there are diseases that are caused by inherited defects in most of the pathways. The preceding table is a general guide that shows where the amino acids go and points out significant intermediates.

GENERALITIES OF AMINO ACID CATABOLISM

If a vitamin or cofactor is involved in amino acid metabolism, it's most likely pyridoxal phosphate (B_6), unless it involves serine, and then it's B_6 and folic acid.

Nitrogen is dumped into the urea cycle by transamination to make Asp or Glu or by deamination to make ammonia.

PRODUCTS OF AMINO ACID DEGRADATION

Ala to *pyruvate* by transamination
Arg to urea and *glutamate*
Asp to *oxaloacetate* by transamination or to fumarate via urea cycle
Asn to Asp
Cys carbon to *pyruvate*, sulfur to *sulfate*
Glu to α-*ketoglutarate* by transamination, then to glucose
Gln to *glutamate* by hydrolysis
Gly to *glyoxylate* or *serine*
His to *glutamate* and *one-carbon pool*
Met to *propionyl-CoA* via homocysteine → cystathionine → ketobutyrate
Pro to *glutamate*
Ser to *glycine* and *$CH_2THfolate$*
Thr to *propionyl-CoA* through ketobutyrate
Val to *propionyl-CoA* through transamination, decarboxylation, and a bunch of rearrangements
Leu to *acetoacetate* and *acetyl-CoA* through transamination, decarboxylation, and a bunch of rearrangements
Ile to *propionyl-CoA* through transamination, decarboxylation, and a bunch of rearrangements
Phe to *Tyr*, then to *acetoacetate* and *fumarate*
Tyr to *acetoacetate* and *fumarate*
Try to *acetyl-CoA* via ring oxidation and cleavage to ketoadipate
Lys to *acetyl-CoA* via transamination and deamination to ketoadipate

The nitrogen contained in the amino acids is usually disposed of through the urea cycle. One of the early, if not the first, steps in amino acid catabolism involves a transamination using oxaloacetate or α-ketoglutarate as the amino-group acceptor. This converts the amino acid into a 2-keto acid, which can then be metabolized further.

$$R\text{—}CH(NH_3^+)CO_2^- + \text{oxaloacetate} \rightleftharpoons R\text{—}(C{=}O)CO_2^- + \text{Asp}$$

These enzymes invariably involve a cofactor, pyridoxal phosphate (vitamin B_6). In addition, pyridoxal phosphate is also required for most decarboxylations, racemizations, or elimination reactions in which an amino acid is a substrate. Pyridoxal phosphate is not involved in decarboxylations in which the substrate is not an amino acid. So if a question

asks something about an amino acid and a vitamin, the answer will most likely be pyridoxal phosphate. There are a couple of exceptions in which pyridoxal phosphate may not be the answer to a vitamins-amino acid question. If the amino acid is serine, then the answer might also include folic acid (the reaction here is the conversion of serine to glycine with the formation of methylene tetrahydrofolic acid–see the section in Chap. 21 on one-carbon metabolism). The other place you might see a vitamin other than pyridoxal phosphate is in the metabolism of propionyl-CoA, a product of the catabolism of some amino acids. In this case, the vitamin may be B_{12} (the conversion of methylmalonyl-CoA to succinyl-CoA—see "β-Oxidation Odd-Chain-Fatty Acids" in Chap. 13).

The nitrogen from the amino groups of most amino acids is transaminated into glutamate or aspartate at some point in the degradative scheme. This nitrogen enters the urea cycle as glutamate, which is reductively deaminated by glutamate dehydrogenase to yield ammonia or by the reaction of aspartate with citrulline to give argininosuccinate (urea cycle).

• C H A P T E R • 17 •

INTEGRATION OF ENERGY METABOLISM

•

Integrating Metabolic Pathways

ATP

Glucose

Storage Molecules

Metabolic States and Signals

Insulin

Glucagon

Epinephrine

Secondary Signals

Generalities of Metabolism

Phosphorylation

Glycogen

Metabolic Movements of Glycogen

Fat

Metabolic Movements of Fat

Protein

Metabolic Movements of Protein

Tissue Cooperation

Liver

Muscle

Adipose

Brain

Connection of Storage Pools

Feeding

Fasting

Starvation

Excitement

Interorgan Cycles

Cori Cycle

Alanine Cycle

Ketone Bodies

• • • • • • • • • • • •

Welcome to energy metabolism. It's the nuts and bolts of life at the cellular level.[1] Energy metabolism is responsible for maintaining a constant supply of ATP in all different tissues. Since some tissues, such as red cells and brain, rely heavily on glucose to make ATP, maintaining the ATP levels in all tissues requires maintaining the availability of glucose. The purpose of all the pathways we'll discuss is to maintain ATP and glucose supplies.

As you prowl around the individual metabolic pathways of energy metabolism, you need to get a feel for the kinds of things you should be looking for as you examine each metabolic scheme. There are four individual pathways involved in energy metabolism: glycolysis-gluconeogenesis, fatty acid synthesis–β oxidation, glycogen synthesis-degradation, and the TCA cycle. First look for the overall function of each pathway: What does it do? This involves knowing the molecules coming into the pathway and those going out. Next, understand when the pathway should be on or off—what metabolic states require the pathway to function. Then, figure out which tissues use the pathway and how. Finally, see how the behavior of the pathway may be integrated into the cooperation between organs and tissues.

Energy metabolism makes sense if you realize that each individual pathway and each organ has a function. Understanding metabolism in every detail may well be impossible, but understanding the general themes is not only possible but important.

Energy metabolism maintains the supply of ATP and glucose by making storage molecules (*glycogen*, *fat*, *protein*) when food is available and by retrieving ATP and glucose from storage when they are needed. The need for glucose or ATP may constitute a demand for massive amounts of immediate energy or it may simply be the need to maintain energy and glucose levels between meals. Energy metabolism is regulated in a manner that involves extensive cooperation between different organs, but the goal is always the same: to maintain adequate ATP and glucose levels.

INTEGRATING METABOLIC PATHWAYS

Metabolic pathways interconnect glycogen, fat, and protein reserves to store and retrieve ATP and glucose.

Most of energy metabolism should make sense—don't forget that. The function of energy metabolism is reasonably simple—*all* of it is con-

[1] At least the nuts part is right.

cerned with putting energy into storage when it's not needed and taking energy out of storage when it is needed. It's the details that complicate the picture.

There are only three types of storage molecules: glycogen, fat, and protein. These three storage forms are all connected, and that's what energy metabolism is all about—the connections. When metabolism works normally, we're assured of a relatively constant supply of energy and glucose.

No one tissue can survive metabolically without the others. Each of the four major tissue types (liver, muscle, adipose, brain) has a specialized metabolic function. There are some differences in the metabolic pathways in each tissue; however, these differences are relatively simple and serve to specialize the metabolic functions of the different tissue types. There is real cooperation between the different organs. Each organ has its own metabolic profile, its own needs, and its own capabilities.

ATP

ATP is the immediate source of energy for cellular processes.

Ultimately, the energy source for all cellular processes is the hydrolysis of ATP. There are only two major sources of ATP—the TCA cycle-electron transport and glycolysis. The major source of ATP is the mitochondrial electron transport chain fueled by the TCA cycle. Since mitochondrial electron transport requires oxygen, much of our ATP production is directly linked to the supply of oxygen. Red cells, since they don't have any mitochondria, must rely totally on anaerobic glycolysis for energy, and muscle may be forced to rely on anaerobic glycolysis when strenuous exercise uses up oxygen faster than it can be delivered to the muscle. When there is no oxygen glycolysis is the only way to make ATP.

GLUCOSE

Glucose is essential for the metabolism of fat and for providing ATP in red cells and brain.
Glucose cannot be made from fat.
Anaplerotic reactions keep the TCA cycle turning.
  Pyruvate carboxylase
  Malic enzyme

Glucose (or more correctly its metabolites) is essential for the functioning of the TCA cycle. For the TCA cycle to keep turning, the intermediates of the cycle must be maintained at a reasonable level. Since these intermediates are used for things other than the TCA cycle, they must be replaced constantly. The trouble is that the intermediates of the TCA cycle cannot be synthesized from fat (our most abundant storage form of energy). So we're got to have glucose or its equivalent to burn fat.

The reactions that convert pyruvate to intermediates of the TCA cycle are called the *anaplerotic reactions*. Pyruvate, which can be made only from glucose or some of the amino acids, can be converted to oxaloacetate by the enzyme pyruvate carboxylase or to malate by malic enzyme.

Pyruvate carboxylase (a biotin-dependent carboxylase):

$$\underset{\text{Pyruvate}}{CH_3C(=O)CO_2^-} + ATP + CO_2 \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Oxaloacetate}}{{}^-O_2CCH_2C(=O)CO_2^-} + ADP + P_i$$

Malic enzyme:

$$\underset{\text{Pyruvate}}{CH_3C(=O)CO_2^-} + NADPH + CO_2 + H^+ \longrightarrow \underset{\text{Malate}}{{}^-O_2CCH_2CH(OH)CO_2^-} + NADP^+$$

These reactions result in the net synthesis of TCA-cycle intermediates. They are necessary to replace TCA-cycle intermediates that are withdrawn from the cycle and used for other things.

Cells that do not have mitochondria (such as red blood cells) must use glucose for energy since they have no TCA cycle or oxidative phosphorylation. Without a constant glucose supply, these cells would die. The brain relies heavily on glucose metabolism for energy; however, the brain can adapt to use alternative energy sources if glucose is not available.

STORAGE MOLECULES

Glycogen: Glucose storage
Fat: ATP storage
Protein: ATP and glucose storage

The way energy metabolism is set up, there are actually two things that must be stored—glucose and energy. Glycogen is a branched polymer of glucose that is accumulated in liver, kidney, and muscle as a short-term glucose supply. The glycogen stores of muscle, because of the amount of muscle we have, are the largest stores in terms of mass. However, the muscle stores glycogen only for its own needs. Because muscle is missing the enzyme glucose 6-phosphatase, it cannot convert glycogen (or anything else) into glucose. The liver and kidney do have glucose 6-phosphatase activity and share their glycogen stores to help maintain glucose levels throughout the body.

Fat is the major way we store energy. Fat is stored principally in adipose tissue and can be stored in virtually unlimited amounts. Fat is metabolized through β oxidation to acetyl-CoA and then through the TCA cycle, where it's burned completely to CO_2 to make ATP. Fat cannot be used to make carbohydrate because acetyl-CoA *cannot* be converted directly to precursors of glucose without losing its carbon atoms first (you'll see what this really means later).

Protein molecules make up the structural and functional elements of cells; however, they can be used to provide energy. Proteins are undergoing a constant cycle of synthesis and degradation. In times of need, the protein mass of the body can be used to generate both energy and glucose. The amino acids derived from protein breakdown can be used for energy or the production of glucose equivalents. Protein is a storage form for both glucose and ATP.

METABOLIC STATES AND SIGNALS

STATE	RESPONSE	SIGNAL
Feeding:	*Store fat, glucose, protein*	High insulin, low glucagon
Fasting:	*Retrieve glucose and fat*	Low insulin, high glucagon
Starvation:	*Retrieve fat and protein*	Low insulin, high glucagon
Diabetes:	*Retrieve fat and protein*	Low insulin, high glucagon
Excitement:	*Retrieve glucose and fat quickly*	High epinephrine

We'll distinguish five basic metabolic states. There are three major metabolic signals that we'll consider—insulin, glucagon, and epinephrine.

Feeding is eating, which we do several times a day. After feeding, the precursors of the storage molecules are in abundant supply. Some of the food intake is simply burned to supply immediate energy, but the general theme after eating is to store some of the food intake as glycogen, fat, and protein so that we can use it later.

After eating, blood glucose levels are high and the pancreas secretes insulin as a signal that tells the rest of the body that glucose can be had. Insulin is a signal that means high blood glucose levels. Insulin promotes the entry of glucose into insulin-sensitive cells.

Fasting is not eating. Hopefully, we fast several times a day, the longest one being overnight. During fasting, we withdraw some of the energy supplies we stored after eating. As blood glucose levels begin to fall because we haven't eaten lately, the levels of insulin begin to fall and the levels of glucagon, a hormone that signals low blood glucose levels, begin to rise. Glucagon promotes the retrieval of energy from all its storage forms.

Starvation is not eating for days—or longer. Humans can adapt to survive food deprivation for quite a long period of time—30 to 60 days. We store enough glycogen for about 24 hours without glucose intake. After this time, glycogen stores are depleted and we must turn to alternative sources for glucose equivalents—protein. A number of other adaptations occur that prolong the survival of some tissues, particularly brain.

Diabetes results from a lack of insulin secretion by the pancreas. Without insulin, cells take up glucose very slowly. The lack of insulin results in an inability to use blood glucose for fuel. Consequently, the body behaves as if it were starving even though food is available. The metabolic responses of the untreated insulin-dependent diabetic are essentially the metabolic responses of starvation.

Excitement is the rapid onset of an immediate need for energy. It can be considered a short-term, intense starvation. The adrenal medulla in response to an excitement signal (each of us has our own) dumps epinephrine into the circulation.

INSULIN

Insulin is a signal for high blood glucose levels.
It *stimulates synthesis* of glycogen, fat, and protein.
It *inhibits breakdown* of glycogen, fat, and protein.
It increases glucose transport into cells.

Insulin, secreted by the β cells of the pancreas in response to rising blood glucose levels, is a signal that glucose is abundant. It's saying,

"Store it while it's here." Insulin binds to a specific receptor on the cell surface and exerts its metabolic effect by a signaling pathway that involves a receptor tyrosine kinase phosphorylation cascade. Note that insulin stimulates storage processes and at the same time inhibits degradative pathways.

GLUCAGON

Glucagon is a signal for low blood glucose levels.
It *stimulates breakdown* of glycogen, fat, and protein.
It *inhibits synthesis* of glycogen, fat, and protein.
It *increases protein phosphorylation.*
It activates cAMP-dependent protein kinase.

Glucagon, made by the α cells of the pancreas, is the antithesis of insulin. Its effects are just the opposite. Glucagon is a signal that says, "Remove things from storage." A good bit is known about how glucagon exerts its effect on cells. Glucagon increases the activity of specific cellular protein kinases (enzymes that use ATP to phosphorylate a serine or a threonine, and occasionally a tyrosine residue of some specific proteins).

When glucagon levels are high, specific proteins (we'll see which ones later) are phosphorylated—high glucagon levels mean increased phosphorylation. *Phosphorylation activates specific enzymes that need to be active when energy and glucose supplies are low. Conversely, phosphorylation inactivates enzymes that are involved in energy storage.*

Glucagon binds to a cell-surface receptor. When it is occupied, the receptor, through the intermediacy of a coupling protein (a G-protein), activates adenylate cyclase. Activated adenylate cyclase takes ATP and makes cAMP and P_i from it. The cAMP then activates cAMP-dependent protein kinase by binding to the inactive enzyme and releasing an inhibitory subunit. The active protein kinase then goes about kinasing (phosphorylating) other proteins, some of which are kinases themselves. The net result is a huge amplification of the original signal—kinases activating kinases activating kinases—and increased phosphorylation of cellular proteins (Fig. 17-1).

The G-protein serves as a timekeeper and binds GTP, and with GTP bound, it can couple the receptor and activate the adenylate cyclase. However, the G-protein slowly hydrolyzes the bound GTP to GDP and P_i. When this happens, the whole complex falls apart and the adenylate kinase is inactivated.

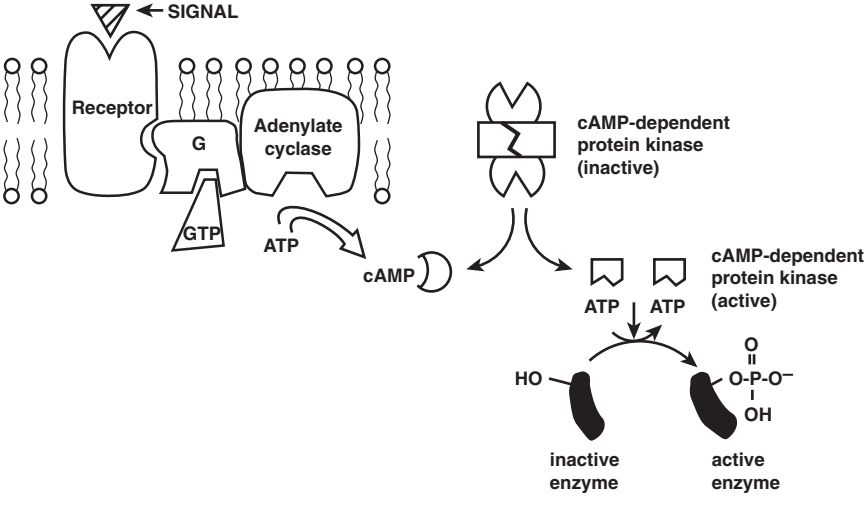


Figure 17-1
The **PROTEIN KINASE CASCADE** amplifies the original extracellular signal by increasing levels of cAMP, which activates cAMP-dependent protein kinase, which phosphorylates specific proteins.

When glucagon levels fall, cAMP phosphodiesterase destroys the accumulated cAMP, and specific protein phosphatases remove the phosphate from the phosphoproteins. These phosphatases themselves are often regulated by phosphorylation—yes, there are phosphatase kinases and phosphatase phosphatases. It's really easy to lose it here, but the key factor is that increased glucagon levels lead to increased protein phosphorylation, and decreased glucagon levels lead to decreased protein phosphorylation.

EPINEPHRINE

Epinephrine is a signal that energy is needed immediately.
It *stimulates breakdown* of glycogen, fat, and protein.
It *inhibits synthesis* of glycogen, fat, and protein.

Epinephrine, a hormone made in the adrenal medulla and sympathetic nerve endings, calls for rapid mobilization of energy and glucose. Epinephrine, like glucagon, binds to specific cellular receptors and activates adenylate cyclase. For the most part, epinephrine can be considered

to have an effect similar to that of glucagon. Epinephrine, too, leads to increased protein phosphorylation.

SECONDARY SIGNALS

HIGH ENERGY	LOW ENERGY	HIGH GLUCOSE	LOW GLUCOSE
ATP	cAMP	Fructose 2,6-P_2	cAMP
Citrate	AMP	Glucose 6-P	
Fatty acids	ADP		
NADH	P_i		
Acetyl-CoA			

The primary hormonal signals serve as extracellular signals that are interpreted by a signal transduction apparatus and turned into signals within the cell—these second messengers such as cAMP and fructose 2,6-bisphosphate warn individual enzymes within the cell about what's happening outside.

The levels of other cellular molecules may also affect the activities of specific enzyme and metabolic pathways. These secondary signals can be grouped into four classes: high-energy signals, low-energy signals, high-glucose signals, and low-glucose signals. The consequence of a rise in the concentration of one of these metabolites is just what you would expect. Not all these molecules affect all enzymes and/or pathways. It's just that if they do have an effect, it will be in the direction indicated by the type of the signal. For example, fructose 2,6-bisphosphate is a signal for the presence of glucose. Therefore, you would expect that increased levels of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate would increase the metabolism of glucose through glycolysis, increase fatty acid synthesis, and increase the storage of glycogen and protein. However, all that fructose 2,6-bisphosphate does is to increase the activity of glycolysis and decrease gluconeogenesis by affecting the activities of phosphofructokinase and fructose 1,6-bisphosphatase. It doesn't directly affect the activities of other enzymes. Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate is a local signal.

There are two ways to go here, particularly with such effectors as citrate, ATP, AMP, P_i, and the like. You could memorize exactly which enzymes are affected by these secondary signals, or you could just realize that the signals should make sense. Rather than just memorize, try to decide what the effector should do—most of the time you'll be right. It's

not necessary to know that ATP inhibits phosphofructokinase, the regulatory enzyme of glycolysis. Just reason that ATP is a high-energy signal; glycolysis makes energy; and ATP should inhibit phosphofructokinase—it does.

GENERALITIES OF METABOLISM

1. ATP and glucose levels must be reasonably constant.
2. The utilization of fat for energy requires carbohydrate.
3. Glucose cannot be made from fat.
4. Synthesis and degradative pathways don't happen at the same time.
5. Low energy levels turn on glycolysis and lipolysis.
6. Low glucose levels turn on gluconeogenesis and protein degradation.
7. Protein phosphorylation in response to rising cAMP levels activates enzymes involved in maintaining blood glucose levels and in making ATP.

There are a few generalities of metabolism that will help you understand metabolism and why a lot of things work the way they do.

• 1. ATP AND GLUCOSE MUST BE AVAILABLE AT ALL TIMES. Much of metabolism is involved with generating just enough ATP to balance the demands. When energy and glucose are plentiful, ATP and glucose are stored by the synthesis of fat, protein, and glycogen. When energy and glucose are needed, they are generated by converting the storage molecules to glucose and energy. The constant demand for ATP is obvious. It's always needed to drive energy-dependent processes such as movement and thinking. The need for glucose or the need to consider it apart from its ability to generate ATP by direct metabolism may be less obvious. First, some tissues can use only glucose as an energy source, and their energy supply must be protected. Second, all tissues require glucose or an equivalent molecule to burn fat as an energy source (generality 2). When ATP and glucose supplies are abundant, energy and glucose equivalents are stored so that later they can be withdrawn and used when energy and glucose supplies are low.

• 2. GLUCOSE IS REQUIRED TO METABOLIZE FAT. While fat provides much ATP, it cannot be metabolized without some source of carbohydrate. As we'll see below, glucose (or the intermediates of the

TCA cycle) cannot be made from acetyl-CoA. The only place we can get the TCA-cycle intermediates is from glucose or protein (amino acids). TCA-cycle intermediates are used for a variety of things (amino acid synthesis, purine synthesis, etc.) so that they are continuously being consumed and must be resupplied to keep the TCA cycle going. When glucose or its storage form, glycogen, is plentiful, the TCA-cycle intermediates, malate and oxaloacetate, can be made directly from pyruvate (the anaplerotic reactions). When glucose is not plentiful, the TCA-cycle intermediates must be derived from the degradation of amino acids (proteins). Not only do we have to have glucose to keep red cells going, but we have to have glucose to keep burning fat for energy.

• 3. GLUCOSE CANNOT BE MADE FROM FAT. The end product of fat metabolism is acetyl-CoA. Acetyl-CoA cannot be used to generate glucose. There are arrows that you can follow on metabolic pathways that will take you from acetyl-CoA to glucose, but you really can't get there with anything left. The problem is that to make the oxaloacetate needed for the synthesis of glucose from acetyl-CoA you need oxaloacetate. As we go around the TCA cycle back to oxaloacetate, two carbons are added from acetyl-CoA, but two carbon atoms are lost as CO_2. The result is that there can be no net synthesis of new oxaloacetate (or malate) from acetyl-CoA—basically because oxaloacetate synthesis from acetyl-CoA requires oxaloacetate. This means that metabolism of fat cannot supply glucose. Normally dietary intake and glycogen stores provide this supply. Under conditions of starvation, protein and the glycerol from triglyceride degradation serve as sources of glucose.

• 4. SYNTHESIS AND DEGRADATION DON'T HAPPEN AT THE SAME TIME. Although they may share some common steps (such as in glycolysis and gluconeogenesis), synthetic and degradative pathways are not the simple reverse of each other. Synthetic pathways always use more ATP than you can make by the degradative pathway. If both synthetic and degradative pathways were on at the same time, the net result would be the hydrolysis of ATP (Fig. 17-2).

This "wasteful" hydrolysis of ATP has been termed a *futile cycle* since it apparently doesn't do anything. However, there may be some advantages to a few futile cycles. Some ATP hydrolysis may be used to generate heat. There may also be some control benefits to futile cycles. Keeping the engine running in a car is wasteful, but it allows you to respond rapidly to changes in situation. Keeping a futile cycle going can allow rapid changes in the flux through the cycle in either direction and, as a consequence, more sensitive control.

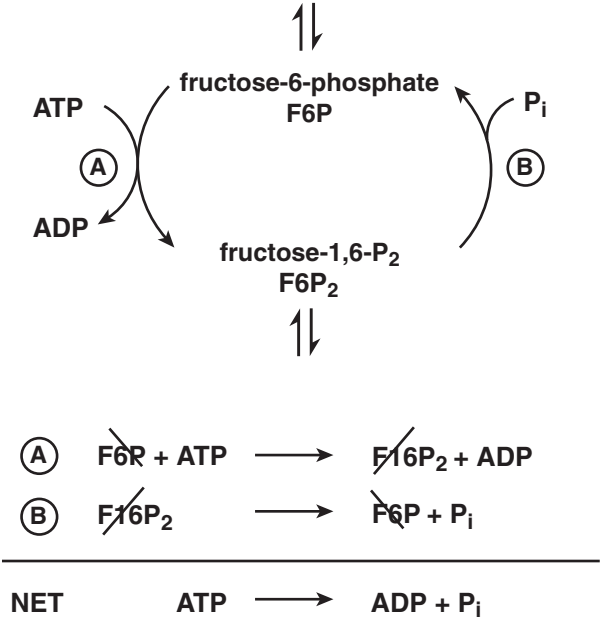


Figure 17-2
A **FUTILE CYCLE** is set up when both synthetic and degradative pathways are operating at the same time. The net reaction of a futile cycle is just ATP hydrolysis.

To minimize futile cycling, signals that turn on a synthetic pathway always turn off the opposing degradative pathway.

• 5. LOW ENERGY LEVELS TURN ON LIPOLYSIS AND GLYCOLYSIS. The TCA cycle coupled to mitochondrial oxidative phosphorylation is the major way of generating ATP. Acetyl-CoA destined for the TCA cycle can be generated by either the metabolism of glucose (glycolysis) or the degradation of fat (β oxidation). Low energy then mobilizes the stores of glycogen and lipids.

• 6. LOW GLUCOSE LEVELS TURN ON GLUCONEOGENESIS AND PROTEIN DEGRADATION. There are two ways to maintain blood glucose levels—degradation of glycogen and synthesis of glucose from pyruvate (gluconeogenesis). Glycogen is stored in the liver and muscle. Gluconeogenesis is the major domain of the liver and kidney. When the glucose level is low, liver and kidney supply glucose to the blood to maintain the supply by stimulating the degradation of glycogen and by stimulating the synthesis of glucose through gluconeogenesis.

Glycogen has somewhat different functions in different tissues. In the liver and kidney, glycogen can be degraded to supply glucose to the rest of the body or it can be used for energy. In muscle, glycogen can only be used locally, for generating energy through glycolysis. The muscle glycogen stores cannot make significant free glucose because skeletal muscle is missing the enzyme glucose 6-phosphatase. Thus, what happens to glycogen depends on the tissue as well as the overall metabolic state.

• 7. PROTEIN PHOSPHORYLATION IN RESPONSE TO RISING cAMP LEVELS ACTIVATES ENZYMES THAT MAINTAIN GLUCOSE LEVELS AND RETRIEVE ENERGY. PHOSPHORYLATION INACTIVATES ENZYMES THAT STORE GLUCOSE, FAT, AND PROTEIN.

PHOSPHORYLATION

Low-energy and low-glucose levels are associated with an increased activity of cAMP-dependent protein kinase and *increased phosphorylation*.

Enzymes required only during *low-energy or low-glucose* situations are *activated by phosphorylation*.

Enzymes required only during *high-energy or high-glucose* situations are *inactivated by phosphorylation*.

A major way to control enzyme activity is the reversible phosphorylation of serine or threonine residues. It's such a major way to regulate enzymes that you will spend much of your time trying to remember whether or not enzyme X is activated or inactivated by phosphorylation, and you will invariably forget one or two of them on the exam. By remembering a couple of generalities,[2] you can actually figure out a lot of the effects of phosphorylation on specific enzymes without really memorizing them.

Protein phosphorylation is an ATP-dependent reaction catalyzed by numerous protein kinases:[3]

$$\text{Protein—OH} + \text{ATP} \longrightarrow \text{Protein—O—}PO_3^{2-} + \text{ADP}$$

[2] As with most generalities, there are invariably exceptions. If you have time to memorize the few exceptions, go ahead.

[3] These generalities are for metabolism only. They may not always apply to phosphorylation that is involved in other signal transduction pathways.

This modification is not directly reversible, but the phosphate group can be removed from the protein by the action of protein phosphatases.

$$\text{Protein—O—}PO_3^{2-} + H_2O \longrightarrow \text{Protein—OH} + P_i$$

Phosphorylation activates some proteins and inactivates others. The actual phosphorylation of a regulated protein is often catalyzed by a protein kinase that is specific for one or just a few proteins; however, the protein kinases themselves are often regulated by phosphorylation-dephosphorylation mechanisms. At least for the regulatory enzymes of energy metabolism, the thing that usually starts the whole phosphorylation mess is cAMP-dependent protein kinase. This enzyme is activated by increases in the levels of cAMP, a second messenger for low-energy and low-glucose levels. Activation of cAMP-dependent protein kinase ultimately leads to increased protein phosphorylation.

For example, phosphorylation of phosphorylase, the enzyme responsible for degrading glycogen to glucose 1-phosphate, activates the enzyme. Glycogen degradation in both liver and muscle is required under low-glucose or low-energy conditions, conditions associated with increased protein phosphorylation. In contrast, glycogen synthase, which must be turned *off* under conditions of low glucose levels, is inactivated by phosphorylation.

The easy way to decide if phosphorylation activates or inactivates a given enzyme is to decide whether the pathway that uses the enzyme should be on or off under conditions favoring phosphorylation (low energy or low glucose). If the pathway should be on under low-energy or low-glucose conditions, phosphorylation should activate the pathway and the enzyme in question. If the pathway should be off, phosphorylation should inactivate the enzyme. Phosphorylase is simple enough, and the regulation of most other enzymes can be figured out using the principle outlined earlier. The following example taken from the regulation of glycolysis and gluconeogenesis, is probably the most complicated one you'll see.

How does phosphorylation affect the activity of phosphofructo-2-kinase (PFK-2), the enzyme that synthesizes fructose 2,6-bisphosphate, a regulator of glycolysis? There are two possible answers: it either activates it or inactivates it. The simplest approach to the question is just to flip a coin. You should stand a 50:50 chance of getting it right. The next simplest way is to figure it out.

Fructose 2,6-bisphosphate stimulates glycolysis by allosterically activating phosphofructo-1-kinase (PFK-1).[4] First, decide what should

[4] It's unfortunate that we have to deal with PFK-1 and PFK-2. PFK-1 is the enzyme that catalyzes the formation of fructose 1,6-bisphospate from fructose 6-phosphate. PFK-2 makes the 2,6-bisphosphate.

happen to the overall pathway (glycolysis) when cAMP levels are high, because this will tell you what has to happen to the activity of the enzyme upon phosphorylation. If the activity of the overall pathway must be high, the phosphorylation should work to increase the activities of enzymes in the pathway and decrease the activities of enzymes in opposing pathways. The answer to this question may depend on the tissue, but the thinking process does not.

In liver, cAMP activates gluconeogenesis, but in muscle, it activates glycolysis. Let's do liver first, and the muscle answer will just be the opposite. So, we want to activate gluconeogenesis in liver in response to increased phosphorylation (increased levels of cAMP). Phosphorylation of our enzyme (PFK-2) must have an effect that is consistent with the activation of gluconeogenesis. If gluconeogenesis is on and glycolysis is off, the level of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate (an activator of glycolysis) must fall. If fructose 2,6-bisphosphate is to fall, the PFK-2 that synthesizes it must be made inactive. So, in liver, phosphorylation of PFK-2 must inactivate the enzyme.

In muscle, phosphorylation of PFK-2 in response to increased cAMP activates the enzyme, the level of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate rises, and glycolysis is activated.

There's also a fructose 2,6-bisphosphatase that hydrolyzes fructose 2,6-bisphosphate; see if you can figure out what happens to the phosphatase activity in liver and muscle when the enzyme is phosphorylated. As a check to your answer, you might recall the PFK-2 and fructose 2,6-bisphosphatase are one and the same protein. Phosphorylation-dephosphorylation actually shifts the activity of this single protein between the kinase and the phosphatase. So the answer you get should be opposite to the one we got earlier.

GLYCOGEN

Glycogen is a short-term reserve of glucose.

Liver and Kidney: 24-hour supply to share with brain and red cells
Muscle: Stores glycogen for its own needs; lack of glucose 6-phosphatase prevents release of glucose for other tissues
Adipose: No significant glycogen stores
Red blood cells: No significant glycogen stores
Brain: No significant glycogen stores

METABOLIC MOVEMENTS OF GLYCOGEN

Feeding (↓ glucagon ↑ *insulin*): *Glycogen synthesis*
Fasting (↑ *glucagon* ↓ insulin): *Glycogen degradation*
Starvation (↑ *glucagon* ↓ insulin): *Glycogen exhaustion*
Diabetes (↑ *glucagon* ↓ insulin): *Glycogen degradation*
Excitement (↑ *epinephrine*): *Glycogen degradation*

Glycogen serves two roles. In muscle, glycogen is an energy reserve that is degraded when muscle ATP demands are high. In liver and kidney, glycogen is a storage form of glucose and is specifically degraded when blood glucose levels drop (Fig. 17-3).

After eating, when glucose is abundant, liver, kidney, and muscle put glucose equivalents into storage for retrieval later. Between meals, when glucose is absent from the diet, liver and kidney break down glycogen to supply blood glucose. Muscle, in contrast, is selfish. Skeletal muscle does not supply other organs with glucose from its glycogen; it uses it to supply glucose 6-phosphate and energy for itself. Muscle doesn't make free glucose because it doesn't have the enzyme glucose 6-phosphatase.

$$\text{Glucose 6-phosphate} + H_2O \xrightleftharpoons{\text{Glucose 6-phosphatase}} \text{Glucose} + P_i$$

In muscle, all the glucose 6-phosphate arising from glycogen degradation (via glucose 1-phosphate) either goes down glycolysis or enters the HMP pathway.

Glycogen is basically a short-term supply. In the absence of food intake, glycogen stores are depleted in about 24 hours. Over longer periods of fasting or starvation, glucose equivalents cannot be provided by glycogen stores and must come from protein sources.

Low-insulin and high-glucagon levels indicate that blood glucose levels are low. This stimulates glycogenolysis and inhibits glycogen synthesis. The net result is the breakdown of glycogen to glucose 1-phosphate. In contrast, high-insulin and low-glucagon levels indicate that glucose levels are high and that the extra glucose should be stored as glycogen. This signal turns on glycogen synthesis and turns off glycogen degradation.

Glycogen can also help supply glucose to meet short-term demands for energy. The glycogen in muscle is intended to provide a short-term energy supply that can be turned on immediately in times of excitement. In muscle, epinephrine turns on glycogen degradation to provide glucose

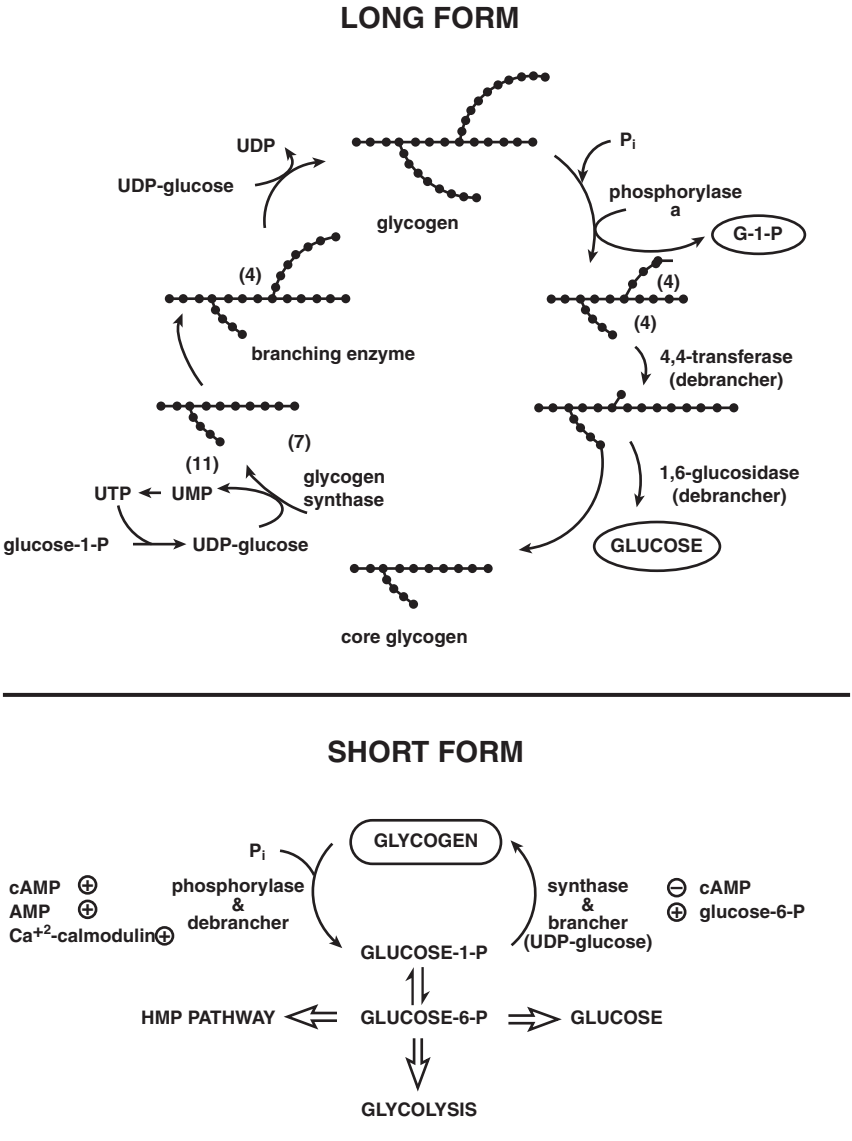


Figure 17-3 Glycogen Metabolism

6-phosphate for local use through glycolysis, particularly if the muscle exerts itself so much that it restricts its blood supply and becomes anaerobic. Epinephrine has the same effect on liver glycogen (↑ degradation); however, liver ships the glucose out for consumption by other tissues, including muscle.

FAT

Fat provides a long-term storage form for energy (ATP). Fat provides zero glucose equivalents.

Liver: Liver makes fat for export to other tissues.
Muscle: Resting muscle prefers fatty acids as an energy supply. However, glucose provides short-term, high-intensity supply.
Adipose: Adipose tissue is the primary storage facility for fat. Fat is stored in these tissues as an intracellular droplet of insoluble triglyceride. A hormone-sensitive lipase mobilizes triglyceride stores by hydrolysis to free fatty acids.
Red blood cells: These cells can't use fat at all for energy since they have no mitochondria.
Brain: Brain does not burn fat as an energy source; however, after adapting to long-term starvation, brain can use ketone bodies for fuel.

METABOLIC MOVEMENTS OF FAT

Feeding (↓ glucagon ↑ *insulin*): *Fat synthesis*
Fasting (↑ *glucagon* ↓ insulin): *Fat degradation*
Starvation (↑ glucagon ↓ insulin): *Fat degradation*
Diabetes (↑ *glucagon* ↓ insulin): *Fat degradation*
Excitement (↑ *epinephrine*): *Fat degradation*

Fat is only an energy storage form (Fig. 17-4). Fat cannot be converted to carbohydrate equivalents. This is a very important point. Remember it! The reason for this is a bit subtle. The carbon skeleton of fatty acids is metabolized to acetyl-CoA only. Glucose precursors such as oxaloacetate can be synthesized from acetyl-CoA by going around the TCA cycle. However, acetyl-CoA has 2 carbon atoms. Going around the TCA cycle burns off 2 carbon atoms (as CO_2). The net number of carbon atoms that ends up in oxaloacetate is then zero. No carbohydrate can be made from fat.[5]

[5] Odd-chain fatty acids are an exception. While they are relatively rare in the diet, odd-chain-length fatty acids end up at propionyl-CoA (C_3). Propionyl-CoA is carboxylated by propionyl-CoA carboxylase to give methylmalonyl-CoA. Methylmalonyl-CoA is rearranged to succinyl-CoA by the enzyme methylmalonyl-CoA mutase, a vitamin-B_{12}-requiring enzyme.

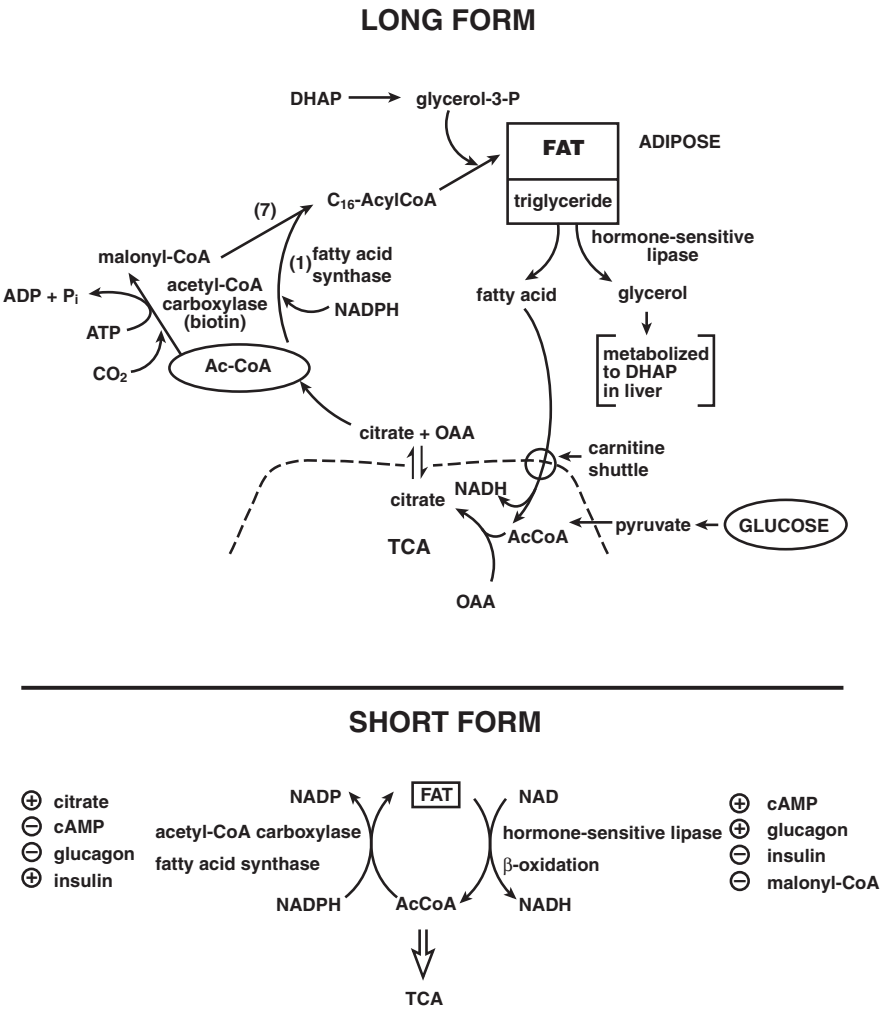


Figure 17-4 Fat Metabolism

Fat is synthesized as long-chain fatty acids and then stored by making triglyceride. Most of the body's fat is stored in adipose tissue. While glycogen storage is limited to about a 24-hour supply, fat can be stored in unlimited amounts. Most calories in excess of those required to maintain energy demands are stored as fat. In contrast to glucose metabolism, the metabolism of fat can produce ATP only when coupled to mitochondrial respiration. Fat is an aerobic source of energy.

The formation of a triglyceride that requires the presence of glycerol introduces a carbohydrate requirement for the storage of fat. When

energy and glucose equivalents are available, adipose tissue stores fat. Strangely enough, adipose tissue can synthesize the glycerol (actually the 3-phosphoglycerate) required for triglyceride synthesis. However, adipose tissue cannot simply reuse the glycerol produced from triglyceride hydrolysis. This glycerol is shipped to the liver, where it can be converted to glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate and either burned as fuel (during starvation) or used to make more triglyceride.

Many tissues (muscle, liver, renal cortex) prefer fat for an energy supply, at least in the resting state. The exception is red blood cells and brain. These tissues depend heavily on glycolysis for energy. Red cells cannot survive without glucose (no mitochondria), but during prolonged starvation, brain can adapt to utilize fat metabolites produced by the liver (ketone bodies).

The regulation of fat metabolism is relatively simple. During fasting, the rising glucagon levels inactivate fatty acid synthesis at the level of acetyl-CoA carboxylase and induce the lipolysis of triglycerides in the adipose tissue by stimulation of a hormone-sensitive lipase. This hormone-sensitive lipase is activated by glucagon and epinephrine (via a cAMP mechanism). This releases fatty acids into the blood. These are transported to the various tissues, where they are used.

PROTEIN

Protein is a long-term reserve of glucose and energy. Protein is also an important structural component of cells. Prolonged protein use for energy and glucose supplies depletes muscle mass.

Liver: Minor protein stores; helps muscle metabolize protein
Muscle: Major site of protein stores for metabolic needs
Adipose: No significant protein stores
Red blood cells: No significant protein stores
Brain: No significant protein stores

METABOLIC MOVEMENTS OF PROTEIN

Feeding (↓ glucagon ↑ *insulin*): *Protein synthesis*
Fasting (↑ *glucagon* ↓ insulin): *Protein degradation*
Starvation (↑ glucagon ↓ insulin): *Extensive protein degradation*
Diabetes (↑ *glucagon* ↓ insulin): *Protein degradation*
Excitement (↑ *epinephrine*): *Protein degradation*

Protein is not just an energy-glucose storage pool (Fig. 17-5). Proteins are essential structural and functional components of cells. Rampant, nonspecific protein degradation does not occur. The process is selective. Some proteins are degraded rapidly even under normal conditions. This type of synthesis-degradation is used as a mechanism to control the metabolic pathways that use the proteins as enzymes. This cyclic synthesis-degradation does not provide a significant amount of amino acids for metabolic demands. Protein is degraded to provide for metabolic needs only as a last resort.

The overriding consideration here is generating a supply of glucose equivalents for the rest of the body. Glucose equivalents are essential. When there is limited intake of glucose (fasting) or limited capability to utilize glucose (diabetes), protein is degraded to provide this essential supply of glucose. Each amino acid has its own pathway for degradation. Some amino acids are degraded either to pyruvate or to one of the intermediates of the TCA cycle. These are called the *glucogenic* amino acids, and it's these that we're after if we don't have glucose available. Unfortunately, we have to degrade the whole protein to get at them.

The glucogenic amino acids are those that produce degradation products that can be converted *only to* glucose (there are a bunch of these).

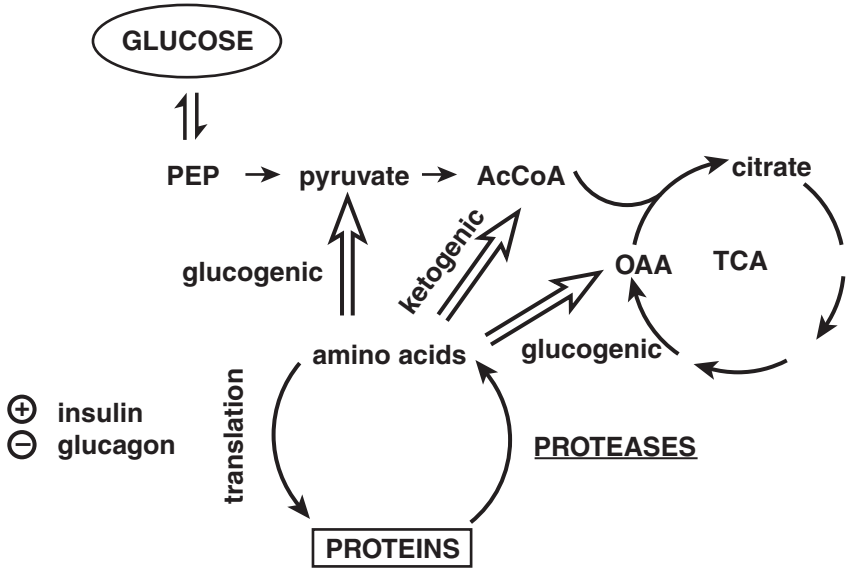


Figure 17-5 Protein Metabolism

Two of the amino acids (Leu and Lys) are degraded only to acetyl-CoA or molecules that cannot be used to synthesize glucose. These are the *ketogenic* amino acids. Some amino acids are degraded to different products, one of which is ketogenic and one of which is glucogenic. These amino acids (Ile, Phe, Tyr, Trp) are *both ketogenic and glucogenic*.

Protein may also be degraded in order to supply essential amino acids for the synthesis of more essential proteins. This may occur in the case of an essential–amino acid deficiency. If the dietary intake of one or more essential amino acids is insufficient, nonessential proteins are degraded to provide this supply. This may result not only in protein degradation but also in the oversupply of nonessential amino acids and their metabolites. The degradation of proteins to make up for a limited supply of an essential amino acid causes a negative nitrogen balance. Nitrogen balance is essentially nitrogen in minus nitrogen out. When protein is degraded because of a short supply of an essential amino acid, the extra amino acids that you get in the process must be degraded, and the nitrogen has to go somewhere—usually out as urea and ammonia. More nitrogen out than nitrogen in means that protein is being degraded. This phenomenon can be used to tell if an amino acid is essential or not: Delete it from the diet and watch for negative nitrogen balance.

The primary location for metabolically useful protein storage is muscle. As long as sufficient glucose is available, either from the diet or from glycogen degradation, protein is spared from degradation. Significant protein degradation for metabolic needs occurs primarily upon long-term starvation or in cases such as uncontrolled diabetes, which is effectively the same as starvation. Protein is constantly being degraded; however, it is constantly being synthesized. Normally, the processes are balanced and the amount of protein stays relatively constant. Although protein in other tissues is degraded under conditions of starvation, muscle protein provides the most mass and the most extensive protein pool for metabolic needs.

TISSUE COOPERATION

Individual tissues have specific roles in maintaining a constant supply of glucose and energy for the whole organism.

LIVER

The liver maintains blood glucose levels, makes fat, makes ketone bodies, and stores glycogen.

Feeding: Stores glycogen and makes fat
Fasting: Degrades glycogen, makes glucose, and burns fat
Starving: Makes glucose, burns fat, makes ketone bodies, burns amino acids, and handles nitrogen
Diabetes: Makes glucose, burns fat, makes ketone bodies, burns amino acids, and handles nitrogen
Excitement: Degrades glycogen and makes glucose

MUSCLE

Muscle provides movement, stores glycogen for its own use, and stores protein.

Feeding: Stores glycogen, burns fat and glucose, and makes protein
Fasting: Degrades glycogen and burns fat
Starving: Burns fat and ketone bodies and degrades proteins
Diabetes: Burns fat and ketone bodies and degrades proteins
Excitement: Degrades glycogen and burns glucose

ADIPOSE

Adipose tissue manages fat stores.

Feeding: Stores fat
Fasting: Releases stored fat
Starving: Releases stored fat
Diabetes: Releases stored fat
Excitement: Releases stored fat

BRAIN

The brain thinks (hopefully).

Feeding: Uses glucose
Fasting: Uses glucose
Starving: Induces enzymes to use ketone bodies
Diabetes: Induces enzymes to use ketone bodies
Excitement: Sits back and enjoys it

CONNECTION OF STORAGE POOLS

The flow of energy through glycogen, fat, and protein makes sense. For the most part, the players you'll see are the hormones insulin, glucagon, and epinephrine and the interrelationships that they orchestrate between the various tissues. The reason for all this complexity is, for the most part, because we don't eat constantly. We have food coming in several times a day, and this has to last until we eat again. Immediate dietary supplies are exhausted in a few hours after eating. Glycogen stores are depleted about 24 hours after the last meal. Assuming an adequate water supply, individuals have survived starvation conditions for long periods. The various metabolic pathways and tissue-cooperative effects are set up to keep us fed between meals and to protect us as long as possible in the absence of food.

The connections between the storage pools and the directions of flow depend on the metabolic condition. There are a couple of generalities. Cells always need energy. There will always need to be some utilization of fat or glucose for energy through the TCA cycle. Metabolic switches (control points) are not usually on–off switches—they are up–down switches. Flux through a pathway is rarely zero, even when the pathway is "off." The purpose of the whole scheme is to maintain a constant supply of energy and glucose. When glucose and energy are plentiful, they are stored, and the flux of metabolism is increased in the direction of storage. When glucose and energy are needed and cannot be obtained directly from dietary intake, the carbon flux shifts to withdraw material from storage. Other pathways, such as the Cori and alanine cycles, ketone body synthesis and utilization, and increased nitrogen metabolism, are adaptations that use cooperation between various tissues and organs to enhance the flow of energy and glucose.

FEEDING

Signals:
Insulin: *Up*
Glucagon: *Down*
Storage forms:
Glycogen: *Up*
Fat: *Up*
Protein: *Up*

Right after feeding, the digestive system is breaking down food and dumping nutrients (amino acids, free fatty acids, and carbohydrate) into the portal system and then to liver and ultimately into the rest of the circulation (Fig. 17-6). The key here is that all tissues take in these nutrients, burn only what they need at the moment, and store the rest.

One of the major signals here is an increase in the level of insulin. This tells the tissues that glucose is abundant, and it increases the flow of glucose into cells. At the same time, the glucagon level is falling. This is also a signal for an adequate supply of glucose in the blood. Because of this, cAMP levels are low and regulated proteins become less phosphorylated.

All tissues are doing essentially the same thing: taking in glucose, fat, and amino acids and storing them. All tissues have some storage capacity. However, for the most part, different organs and tissues store different things. Liver stores glycogen, adipose tissue stores fat, and muscle stores glycogen (for itself) and protein.

FASTING

Signals:
Insulin: *Down*
Glucagon: *Up*

Storage forms:
Glycogen: *Down*
Fat: *Down*
Protein: *Down*

A few hours after eating, the supply of easily available nutrients has been used up and stores must be mobilized to maintain relatively constant supplies of energy and glucose (Fig. 17-7). Insulin levels drop and glucagon levels rise. Because of the increased glucagon levels, cAMP levels rise and regulated proteins become more phosphorylated.

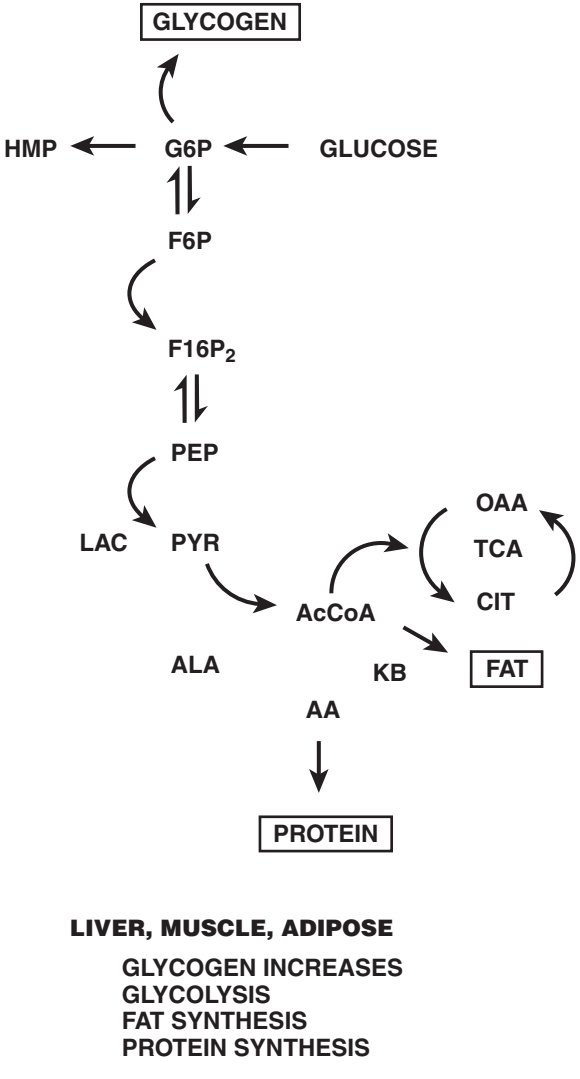


Figure 17-6 Metabolic Movements after Feeding
Synthesis and storage pathways are on; degradative pathways are off. AA = amino acids; KB = ketone bodies; ALA = alanine; LAC = lactate.

Liver's main job is to keep up the levels of blood glucose. To do this, it breaks down glycogen and turns on gluconeogenesis. The liver takes lactate and alanine from the circulation and through gluconeogenesis converts it into glucose. The ammonia from the alanine is pushed

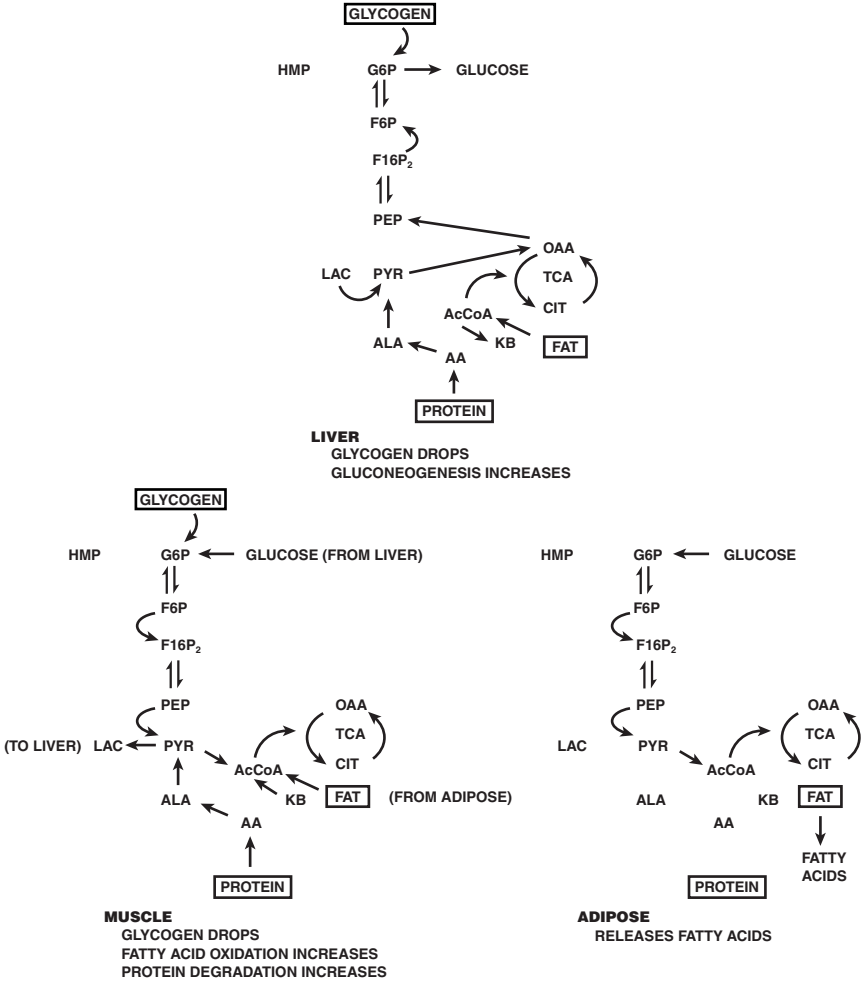


Figure 17-7 Metabolic Movements after Fasting
Storage pathways are off; degradative pathways are on. AA = amino acids; KB = ketone bodies; ALA = alanine; LAC = lactate.

through the urea cycle. For its own energy supply, the liver takes in free fatty acids (released from the adipose tissue) and metabolizes them to acetyl-CoA. Fatty acid synthesis is inhibited. The increased reliance on fat for energy and the increased supply of acetyl-CoA increases ketone body synthesis somewhat, but not to the extent that is observed during starvation.

Muscle breaks down glycogen during fasting to meet its own needs. Skeletal muscle is missing the enzyme glucose 6-phosphatase, and it can't generate any free glucose for the rest of the body to use. The lactate from glycolysis is shipped to the liver. Muscle also picks up free fatty acids and metabolizes them to acetyl-CoA and on through the TCA to CO_2.

Adipose tissue releases fat by activation of the hormone-sensitive lipase. The glycerol released by adipose tissue can provide some glucose equivalents to the liver. Adipose tissue itself can't use glycerol—it's missing glycerol kinase to make glycerol 3-phosphate.

STARVATION

Signals:		**Storage forms:**	
Insulin:	*Down*	Glycogen:	*Exhausted*
Glucagon:	*Up*	Fat:	*Down*
		Protein:	*Down*

Glycogen stores in liver and kidney are exhausted in about 24 hours. After this, the body must find glucose equivalents somewhere. The major metabolic adaptations of starvation are the result of having to maintain glucose levels without any direct source of it (Fig. 17-8).

During starvation, liver continues in the gluconeogenic mode. It's making glucose for the rest of the body. Lactate and alanine from other tissues are taken in and used through gluconeogenesis to make glucose. Protein is degraded to get at amino acids that can be degraded into glucose equivalents. Fat is increasingly relied on for energy. This excess demand for β oxidation results in the increased synthesis of ketone bodies, which are made by the liver and exported to the other tissues.

Because it lacks glucose 6-phosphatase activity, muscle can't directly participate in maintaining glucose levels during starvation. However, the increased availability of glucogenic amino acids from the increased degradation of muscle protein can be used by the liver to synthesize glucose. Muscle also utilizes ketone bodies (and fat) for energy.

Adipose tissue continues to dump free fatty acids into the circulation until its supplies are exhausted.

Brain, which is usually very reliant on glucose for energy, adapts in a few days of starvation to use ketone bodies as a source of energy. This spares the body some glucose, which is still essential to maintain red cell function.

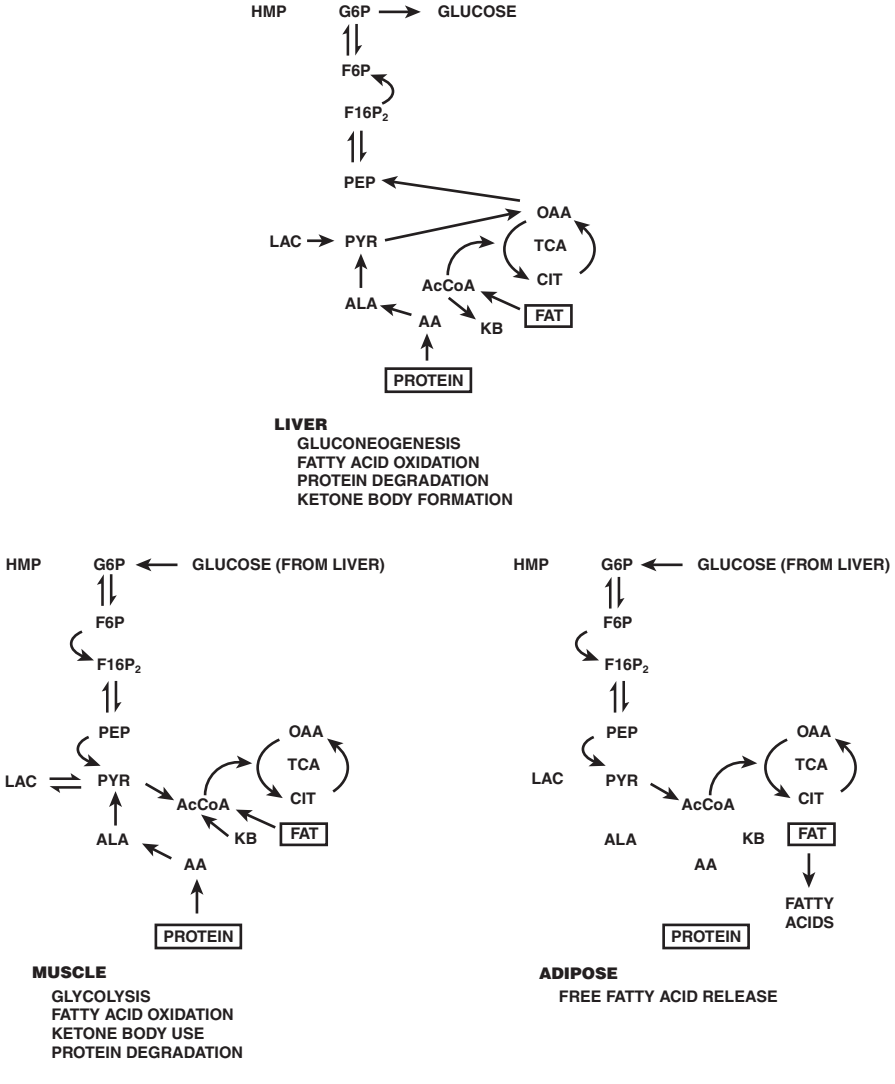


Figure 17-8 Metabolic Movements during Starvation
Storage pathways are off; degradative pathways are on. Glycogen has been depleted, and maintaining glucose levels becomes a big problem. AA = amino acids; KB = ketone bodies; ALA = alanine; LAC = lactate.

EXCITEMENT

Signals:
Epinephrine: *Up*
Storage forms:
Glycogen: *Down*
Fat: *Down*
Protein: *Down*

Excitement produces a short-term demand for energy and glucose by the muscle (Fig. 17-9). In the muscle, epinephrine stimulates glycogenolysis and glycolysis to provide immediate fuel and ATP. But the other tissues help out. In the liver, epinephrine stimulates glycogenolysis and gluconeogenesis in order to maintain an adequate supply of glucose to meet the increased demands of muscle. Fatty acid oxidation is stimulated to supply energy. Adipose tissue is stimulated to release free fatty acids for the other tissues.

Note that the effects of epinephrine on glycolysis are different in the liver and muscle. This is because liver must make glucose under these conditions, not burn it. The different responses of liver and muscle come from a difference in the effect of phosphorylation on the enzyme that makes and degrades fructose 2,6-bisphosphate, a major regulator of glycolysis and gluconeogenesis. In muscle, glycolysis is stimulated by epinephrine. Since epinephrine causes increased phosphorylation of proteins and since the concentration of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate must rise to activate glycolysis, phosphorylation in muscle must activate the enzyme that makes fructose 2,6-bisphosphate and inactivate the enzyme that hydrolyzes it. In liver, gluconeogenesis is activated by epinephrine. Since epinephrine causes increased phosphorylation of proteins and since the concentration of fructose 2,6-bisphosphate must fall to activate gluconeogenesis, phosphorylation in the liver must activate the enzyme that hydrolyzes fructose 2,6-bisphosphate and inhibit the enzyme that makes it. Believe it or not, this is actually what happens. The liver and muscle forms of the kinase that makes fructose 2,6-bisphosphate show exactly the opposite effects of phosphorylation on activity. Note that in order for you to be able to reconstruct all the effects of phosphorylation of all these enzyme activities all you needed to know was two facts: cAMP increases protein phosphorylation and fructose 2,6-bisphosphate activates glycolysis and inhibits gluconeogenesis.

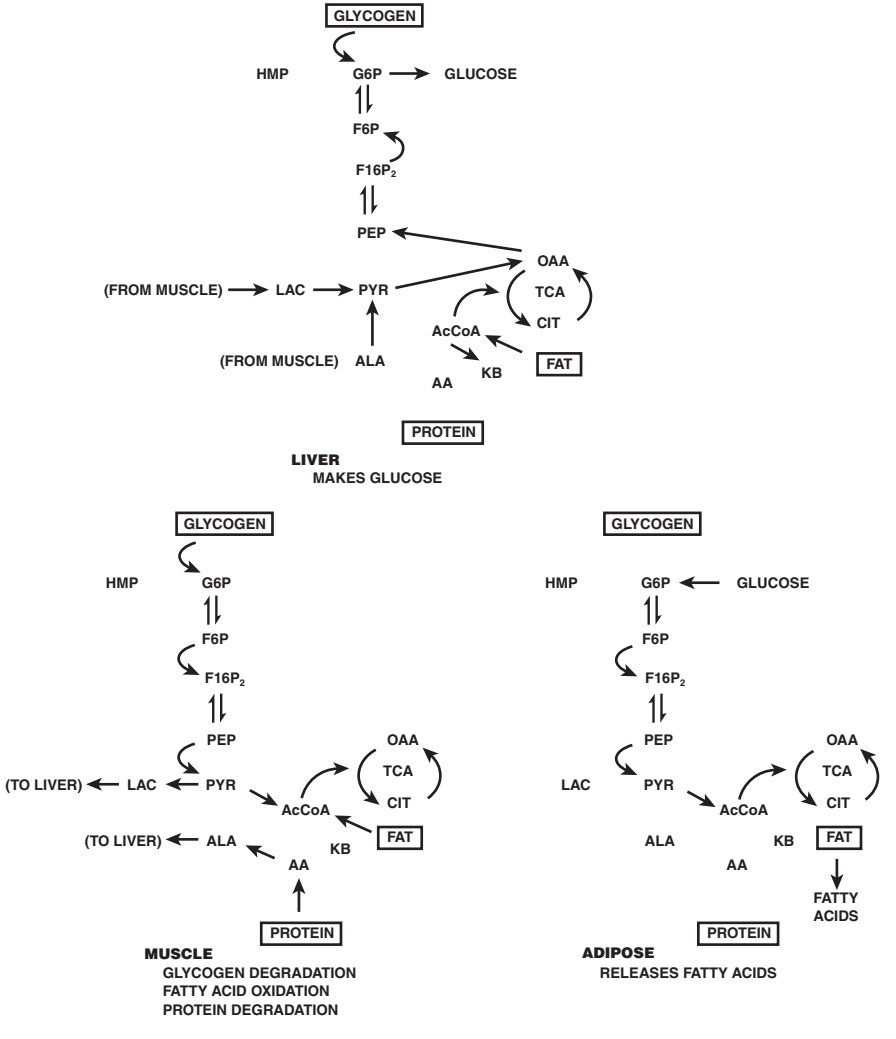


Figure 17-9 Metabolic Movements during Excitement
Storage pathways are off; degradative pathways are on. Glycogen is degraded by liver and muscle to provide glucose and energy. AA = amino acids; KB = ketone bodies; ALA = alanine; LAC = lactate.

INTERORGAN CYCLES

Several interorgan cycles of carbon flow shift the metabolic burden from one tissue type to another.

CORI CYCLE

Muscle uses glucose from the liver to make lactate.
Liver uses lactate from muscle to make glucose.

In the Cori cycle (Fig. 17-10), the muscle produces lactate from glucose as a result of using glycolysis for energy. If glycolysis is faster than the ability of the muscle to metabolize the pyruvate aerobically through the TCA cycle, the pyruvate is reduced to lactate and exported from the muscle. The lactate circulates through the blood to the liver, where gluconeogenesis converts the lactate to glucose. The glucose travels through the blood back to the muscle, where it is reutilized. The recycling of the lactate extends the supply of glucose stores and provides an indirect way to get muscle glycogen into the glucose pool. The cycle is not without cost. It's not a perpetual motion machine.

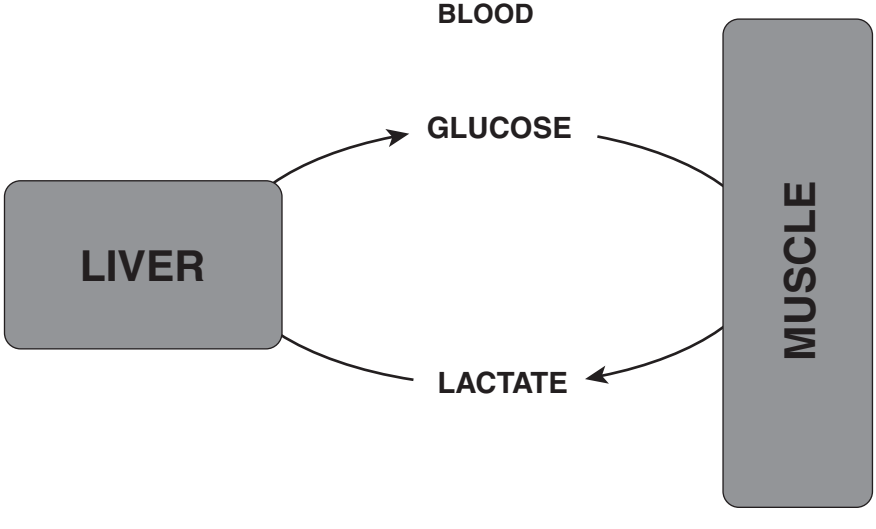


Figure 17-10 The Cori Cycle
Cooperation between liver and muscle recycles lactate into glucose.

The conversion of glucose to lactate produces 2 ATPs for muscle:

$$\text{Glucose} + 2\text{ADP} + 2\text{P}_\text{i} \longrightarrow 2 \text{ lactate} + 2\text{ATP}$$

However, the conversion of lactate to glucose requires the expenditure of 6 ATP equivalents by the liver:

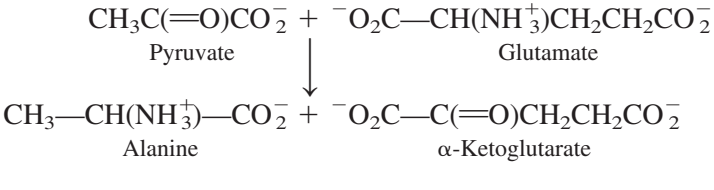
$$\begin{aligned}
&2 \text{ lactate} + 2\text{NAD}^+ \longrightarrow 2 \text{ pyruvate} + 2\text{NADH} \\
&2 \text{ pyruvate} + 2\text{ATP} + 2\text{CO}_2 \longrightarrow 2 \text{ oxaloacetate} + 2\text{ADP} + 2\text{P}_\text{i} \\
&2 \text{ oxaloacetate} + 2\text{GTP} \longrightarrow 2\text{PEP} + 2\text{GDP} + 2\text{P}_\text{i} + 2\text{CO}_2 \\
&2\text{PEP} + 2\text{ATP} + 2\text{NADH} \longrightarrow \text{glucose} + 2\text{ADP} + 2\text{P}_\text{i} + 2\text{NAD}^+ \\
\hline
&\text{Net: } 2 \text{ lactate} + 4\text{ATP} + 2\text{GTP} \longrightarrow 4\text{ADP} + 2\text{GDP} + 6\text{P}_\text{i}
\end{aligned}$$

Each mole of glucose that goes through the Cori cycle costs the liver 6 ATP equivalents. If the Cori cycle were perfect and there were an endless supply of ATP, liver could supply glucose equivalents forever just using the same carbon atoms (6 in as lactate, 6 out as glucose). However, some of the lactate (pyruvate) in the nonliver tissues is burned to CO_2 by the TCA cycle in the muscle and other tissues. It's this pool that must be replaced by fresh glucose from liver.

ALANINE CYCLE

Liver takes carbon and nitrogen waste from muscle (alanine), disposes of the nitrogen, and recycles the carbon into glucose.

The alanine cycle accomplishes the same thing as the Cori cycle, except with an add-on feature (Fig. 17-11). Under conditions under which muscle is degrading protein (fasting, starvation, exhaustion), muscle must get rid of excess carbon waste (lactate and pyruvate) but also nitrogen waste from the metabolism of amino acids. Muscle (and other tissues) removes amino groups from amino acids by transamination with a 2-keto acid such as pyruvate (oxaloacetate is the other common 2-keto acid).



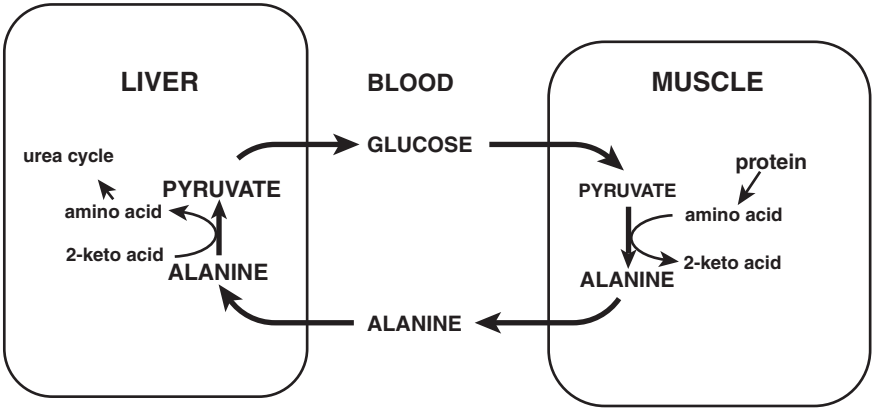


Figure 17-11 The Alanine Cycle
Cooperation between liver and muscle allows muscle to get rid of nitrogen waste and recycle the carbon skeleton into glucose.

The result is that the amino groups can be dumped out as alanine (the transamination product of pyruvate). In the liver and kidney, alanine is transaminated to yield pyruvate and glutamate. As in the Cori cycle, the pyruvate is converted to glucose by the liver and is shipped out. The glutamate is fed into the urea cycle–nitrogen disposal system to get rid of the excess nitrogen.

KETONE BODIES

Acetoacetate: $CH_3C(=O)CH_2CO_2^-$
β-Hydroxybutyrate: $CH_3CH(OH)CH_2CO_2^-$
Formed in liver to free up CoA for β oxidation
Metabolized in other tissues, including brain, as an energy source

The formation of ketone bodies is a consequence of prolonged metabolism of fat (Fig. 17-12). Their formation in the liver actually enables liver to metabolize even more fat by freeing up CoA that would otherwise be tied up as acetyl-CoA waiting to get into the TCA cycle. The liver exports the ketone bodies; and other tissues, particularly the brain, can adapt to use them.

With increasing metabolism of fat through β oxidation, much of the mitochondrial CoA pool may become tied up as acyl- or acetyl-CoA. In such cases, the supply of free CoA can be diminished, and this may limit the rate of β oxidation. Upon prolonged fasting and heavy reliance on fat for energy, the liver induces the enzymes required for the formation of ketone bodies and brain induces enzymes required for their metabolism.

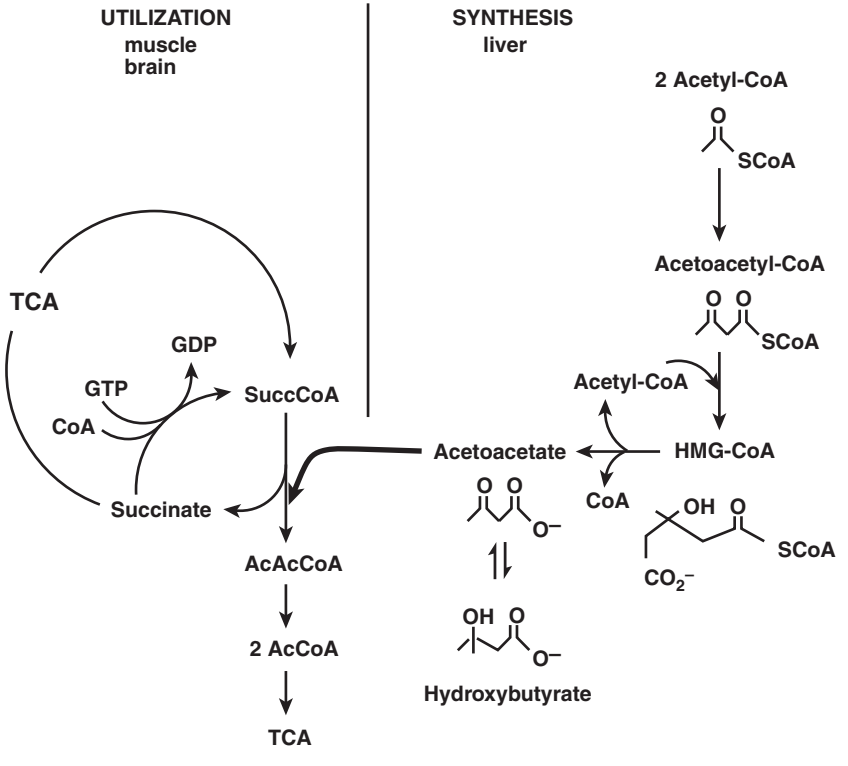


Figure 17-12
KETONE BODIES are generated by the liver and used by muscle and brain (after adaptation during starvation).

Ketone bodies are formed in the liver mitochondria by the condensation of three acetyl-CoA units. The mechanism of ketone body formation is one of those pathways that doesn't look like a very good way to do things. Two acetyl-CoAs are condensed to form acetoacetyl-CoA. We could have had an enzyme that just hydrolyzed the acetoacetyl-CoA directly to acetoacetate, but no, it's got to be done in a more complicated fashion. The acetoacetyl-CoA is condensed with another acetyl-CoA to give hydroxymethylglutaryl-CoA (HMG-CoA). This is then split by HMG-CoA lyase to acetyl-CoA and acetoacetate. The hydroxybutyrate arises from acetoacetate by reduction. The overall sum of ketone body formation is the generation of acetoacetate (or hydroxybutyrate) and the freeing-up of the 2 CoAs that were trapped as acetyl-CoA.

Ketone bodies are utilized in other tissues (but not the liver) by converting the acetoacetate to acetoacetyl-CoA and then converting the acetoacetyl-CoA to 2 acetyl-CoA, which are burned in the muscle mitochondria.

CHAPTER 18

UREA CYCLE

UREA CYCLE

Function: To provide a route to dispose of the amino groups from amino acids during their metabolism.
Location: Liver, kidney
Connections: *From* amino groups of amino acids through glutamate and glutamate dehydrogenase
From amino groups of amino acids through aspartate and argininosuccinate synthase
From ammonia through carbamoyl phosphate synthetase
To urea
Regulation: Primarily by availability of amino groups and ammonia
Equation:

$$NH_4^+ + CO_2 + Asp + 2ATP \longrightarrow NH_2C(=O)NH_2 + fumarate + 2ADP + 2P_i$$

$$Glu + NAD^+ + CO_2 + Asp + 2ATP \longrightarrow NH_2C(=O)NH_2 + \alpha\text{-ketoglutarate} + fumarate + 2ADP + 2P_i$$

(See Fig. 18-1.)

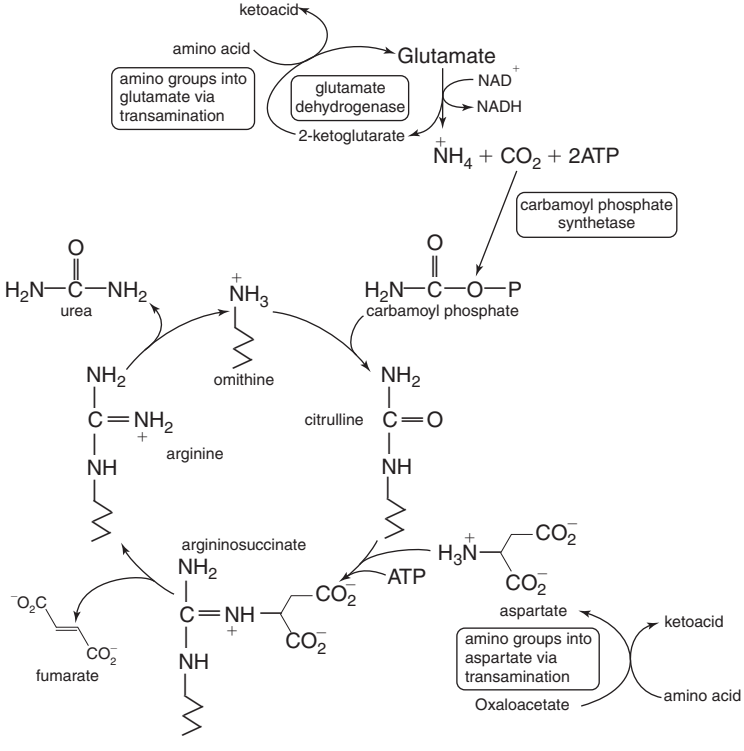


Figure 18-1 The Urea Cycle

· CHAPTER · 19 ·

PURINE METABOLISM

Purine Synthesis

Purine Salvage

Deoxynucleotides

Purine Degradation

PURINE SYNTHESIS

Function: To provide purines (A and G) for energy metabolism and for DNA-RNA synthesis.
Location: Cytoplasm of most cells.
Connections: To folate metabolism and one-carbon metabolism in de novo synthesis.
From HMP pathway via ribose and PRPP.
To deoxyribonucleotides through ribonucleotide reductase.
Regulation: Availability of PRPP.
Activity of the enzyme catalyzing the formation of the 5-phosphoribosyl-1-amine from PRPP is inhibited by purines.
Synthesis of GMP requires ATP.
Synthesis of AMP requires GTP.
Equation:

PRPP + glutamine + glycine + formyl-THF + aspartate + some ATP $\longrightarrow$ purines

(See Fig. 19-1.)

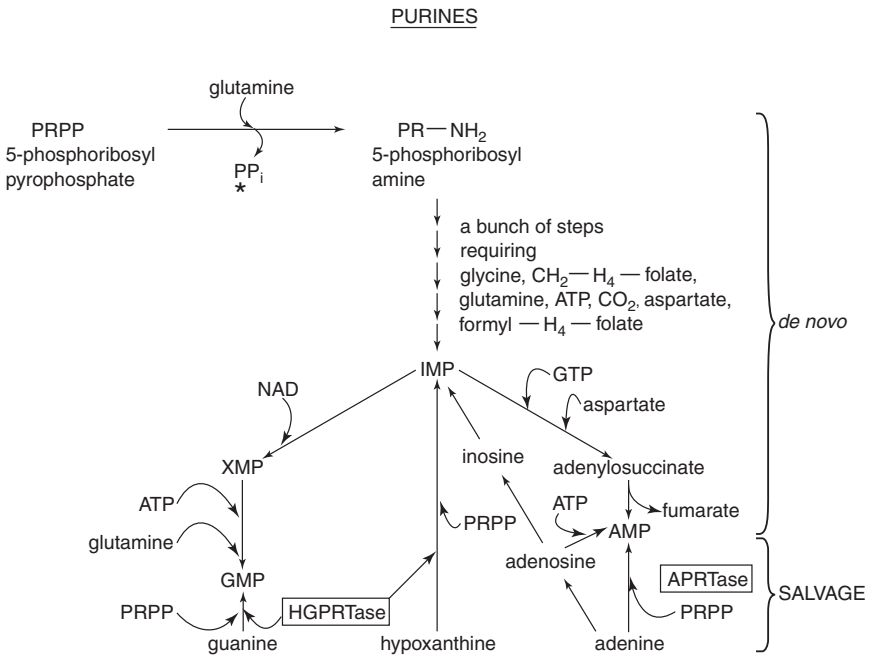


Figure 19-1 Purine Synthesis and Salvage

PURINE SALVAGE

HGPRTase: Hypoxanthine or Guanine + PRPP ⟶ IMP or GMP + PP_i

APRTase: Adenine + PRPP ⟶ AMP + PP_i

The free bases of the purines can be salvaged to spare *de novo* synthesis. The only hard thing is remembering what the names stand for. HGPRTase is hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase, and it makes both IMP and GMP. A separate enzyme exists for the salvage of adenine. The salvage pathways are included in Fig. 19-1.

DEOXYNUCLEOTIDES

NDP + thioredoxin (SH_2) ⟶ (ribonucleotide reductase) dNDP + thioredoxin (SS)

dTMP made from dUMP with CH_2—THF

Deoxynucleotides for DNA synthesis are made at the nucleoside *diphosphate* level and then have to be phosphorylated up to the triphosphate using a kinase and ATP. The reducing equivalents for the reaction come from a small protein, thioredoxin, that contains an active site with two cysteine residues. Upon reduction of the ribose to the 2′-deoxyribose, the thioredoxin is oxidized to the disulfide. The thioredoxin(SS) made during the reaction is recycled by reduction with NADPH by the enzyme thioredoxin reductase.

Ribonucleotide reductase works on ribo-A, -U, -G, -C diphosphates to give the deoxynucleotide. The deoxyuridine, which is useless for RNA synthesis, is converted to deoxythymidine by the enzyme thymidylate synthase, which uses methylene tetrahydrofolate as a one-carbon donor. The odd thing here is that ribonucleotide reductase uses the UDP as a substrate to give the dUDP. This must then be hydrolyzed to the dUMP before thymidylate synthase will use it to make dTMP. Then the dTMP has to be kinased (phosphorylated) up to dTTP before DNA can be made.

Regulation of ribonucleotide reductase is a bear. There appear to be two regulatory sites, one that affects the overall activity and another that changes the relative specificity for the various purine and pyrimidine substrates. ATP binding to the activity regulatory site turns on the activity toward all substrates, while dATP binding to the same site turns it off. A complex pattern of specificity changes is observed when one of the deoxynucleotides binds to the second regulatory site. The general idea is to keep the levels of the various deoxynucleotides at the proper levels and ratios for DNA synthesis. ATP binding to the specificity site activates the formation of dCDP, while dTTP binding to the site activates dGDP formation and inhibits dCDP formation. The dGTP activates the formation of dADP but inhibits the formation of dCDP and dGDP. Simple . . .? Don't put this one too high on your trivia list.

PURINE DEGRADATION

GMP → guanosine → guanine → xanthine → urate
AMP → adenosine → inosine → hypoxanthine → xanthine → urate
AMP → IMP → inosine → → → urate

Name changes may be confusing here; when AMP loses the phosphate to become adenosine and adenosine loses the ribose to become adenine, it's still easy to tell who came from where. When IMP loses the phosphate, it becomes inosine, but when inosine loses the ribose it becomes hypoxanthine. It may be a little confusing, but it's still better than trying to pronounce *inonine*.

· C H A P T E R · 20 ·

PYRIMIDINE METABOLISM

·

Pyrimidine Synthesis

Pyrimidine Salvage

Pyrimidine Degradation

PYRIMIDINE SYNTHESIS

Function: To make pyrimidine nucleotides (U, T, C) for DNA and RNA synthesis.
Location: Cytoplasm of most cells.
Connections: To amino acid metabolism by the requirement for glutamine and aspartate.
Regulation: UTP inhibits synthesis of carbamoylphosphate.
Equation:

$$\text{Gln} + CO_2 + \text{Asp} + \text{PRPP} + \text{some ATP} \longrightarrow \text{UTP} + \text{CTP}$$

The major difference between purine and pyrimidine *de novo* biosynthesis is that the pyrimidine ring is assembled and then added to PRPP (Fig. 20-1). With purines, the purine ring is built directly on the PRPP.

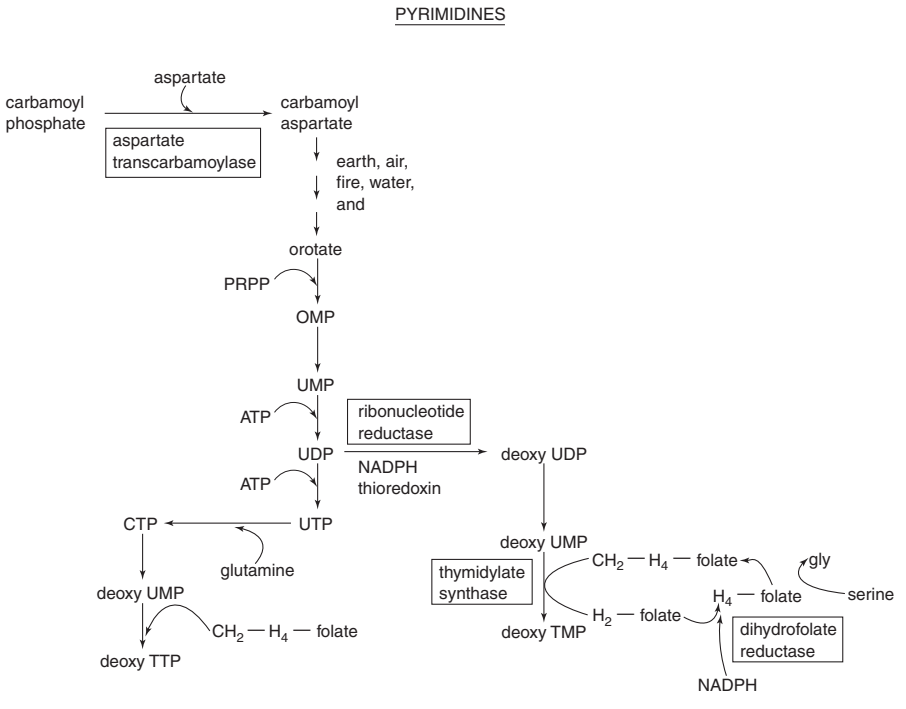


Figure 20-1 Pyrimidine Synthesis and Salvage

PYRIMIDINE SALVAGE

$$\text{Uracil} + \text{PRPP} \longrightarrow \text{UMP} + \text{PP}_i \text{ (only uracil)}$$

Nucleoside phosphorylase:

$$\text{U, C, T} + \text{ribose 1-phosphate} \longrightarrow \text{nucleosides} + \text{P}_i$$

There are basically two types of salvage. The first involves attachment of the base to PRPP with the formation of pyrophosphate. This pathway is available for salvage of purines and uracil but not for cytosine or thymine. The other pathway involves attachment of the base to ribose 1-phosphate, which occurs to some extent for most of the purines and pyrimidines. This second pathway requires the presence of specific

kinases to convert the nucleoside to the monophosphate. Except for thymidine kinase, these kinases do not exist in most cells.

PYRIMIDINE DEGRADATION

CMP ⟶ cytidine ⟶ uridine ⟶ uracil ⟶ ⟶
β-alanine ⟶ malonate semialdehyde ⟶ CO_2

Thymidine ⟶ thymine ⟶ β-aminobutyrate ⟶
methylmalonate semialdehyde ⟶ CO_2

After removal of the phosphates by various phosphatases, the nucleosides are cleaved to the base by the same nucleoside phosphorylase that catalyzes the salvage reaction. The equilibrium constant for this reaction is near 1, so that it can go in either direction depending on the relative levels of the substrates and products.

$$\text{Base–ribose} + P_i \rightleftharpoons \text{base} + \text{ribose 1-phosphate}$$

The nitrogen from the pyrimidine bases is removed by transamination and dumped onto glutamate. The carbon skeleton ends up as CO_2.

CHAPTER 21

ONE-CARBON METABOLISM

One-Carbon Metabolism

Oxidation States of Carbon

ONE-CARBON METABOLISM

Function: To donate methyl groups to phospholipid, biogenic amines, thymidine, and amino acid biosynthesis
To provide one-carbon fragments at the level of formaldehyde and formic acid for purine and pyrimidine biosynthesis

Location: Most everywhere

Connections: One-carbon fragments *in* from serine, glycine, formate, and histidine
One-carbon fragments *out* from SAM, formyl-THF, methylene-THF, and methyl-THF

Regulation: At individual enzyme level

(See Fig. 21-1.)

OXIDATION STATES OF CARBON

Count the number of carbons and hydrogens connected to the carbon in question. Carbon–carbon double bonds count only once. The lower the number, the more oxidized the carbon. Conversions between levels require oxidizing or reducing agents. Conversions within a given level require no oxidizing or reducing agents.

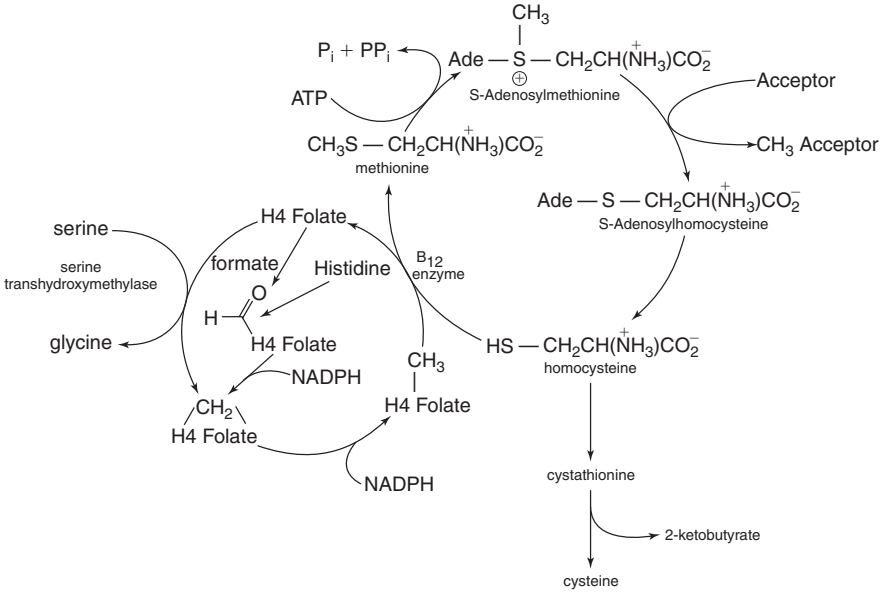


Figure 21-1 One-Carbon Metabolism

Determining the oxidation state of a specific carbon atom is simple. Just count the number of carbon and hydrogen atoms that the carbon atom in question is connected to. Carbon–carbon double bonds count only once. A more reduced carbon has a higher number, and a more oxidized carbon has a lower number. Carbon atoms can be in five different oxidation states.[1] Being in a different oxidation state means that some source of oxidizing or reducing agent must be used to convert carbon in one oxidation state to carbon in another oxidation state. In terms of the table following, this means that to move up in the table (to a more reduced form of carbon) requires a reducing agent such as NADH. Moving down the table requires an oxidizing agent such as NAD^+ or oxygen. Moving between successive oxidation states represents a two-electron oxidation or reduction. Conversion of carbon within a given redox state does not require an oxidizing or reducing agent.

[1] This doesn't count carbon atoms with single electrons (free radicals). You've got to draw the line somewhere, and I've chosen to eliminate the more radical elements. If you want to put them in, you can draw your own table.

For example, converting methylene-THF [−N−CH_2−N−, state 2][2] to formyl-THF [−N−C(═O)−H, state 1] would require an oxidizing agent. In contrast, conversion of formyl-THF [−N−C(═O)−H, state 1][2] to methenyl-THF (−N−CH═N−, state 1) would not require an oxidizing or a reducing agent. The way to think about the conversion between methenyl-THF and formyl-THF is that the reaction is simply the addition of another amino group from the THF to the C═O of the formyl group followed by the elimination of water. In none of the reactions does the carbon atom change its oxidation state.[2]

$$\text{—N—CH(=O)} + \text{NH}_2\text{—R} \rightleftharpoons \text{—N—CH(OH)—NH—R}$$

$$\text{—N—CH(OH)—NH—R} \rightleftharpoons \text{—N—CH=N—R} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

By comparison, the conversion of methenyl-THF (−N−CH═N−R, state 1) to methylene-THF (−N−CH_2−N−, state 2) requires a reducing agent, NADPH.

REDUCTION LEVEL	NAME	TYPICAL STRUCTURES	FOLIC ACID EQUIVALENT[2]
4	Methane	CH_4 CH_3—C C—CH_2—C	None
3	Methanol	CH_3OH CH_3C1 CH_2═C—	Methyl-THF (—N—CH_3)
2	Formaldehyde	H—C(═O)—H H—$C(OH)_2$—H	Methylene-THF (—N—CH_2—N—)
1	Formic acid	H—C(═O)—OH	Formyl-THF (—N—C(═O)—H) Methenyl-THF (—N—CH═N—)
0	Carbon dioxide	O═C═O HO—C(═O)—OH H_2N—C(═O)—NH_2	None

[2] The structural features shown in parentheses or brackets represent the structure of the one-carbon fragment attached to the N^5 and N^{10} of tetrahydrofolate. The bonds to carbon are as shown, but for simplicity all the bonds to N may not be shown.

· C H A P T E R · 22 ·

TRACKING CARBONS

·

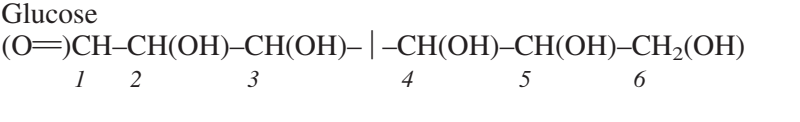
Glucose to Pyruvate

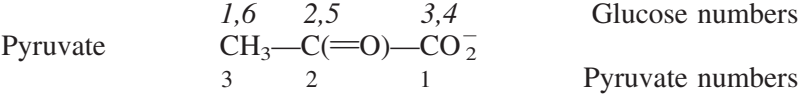
TCA Cycle

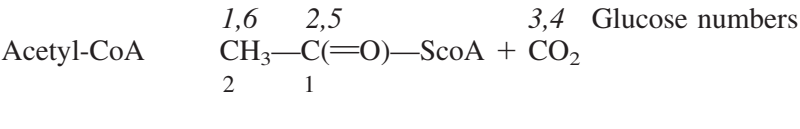
· · · · · · · · · · · · ·

GLUCOSE TO PYRUVATE

Glucose







Tracing labeled carbon atoms through metabolic pathways would, at first glance,[1] appear to be a pretty irrelevant thing to make you do. But if you've got to do it, there are a couple of conceptual tricks that make it somewhat easier.

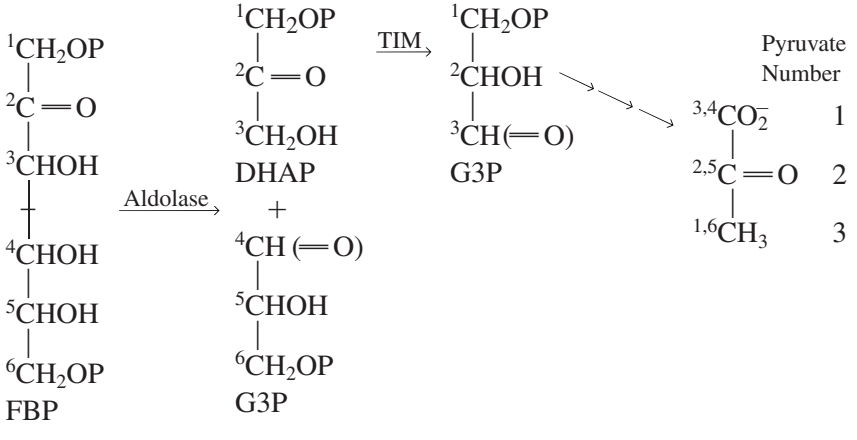
The first concept is that organic compounds are numbered starting with the end of the molecule that is closest to the most oxidized carbon.

[1] The second and third glances may appear this way too.

In glucose, C-1 is the carbon of the aldehyde. In fructose [CH_2(OH)–C(=O)–CH(OH)–CH(OH)–CH(OH)–CH_2(OH)], C-1 is the carbon at the end closest to the C=O; the C=O itself is C-2.

Labeling a given molecule at a specific carbon atom means that an isotopically labeled carbon atom (^{14}C or ^{13}C) has been introduced at a given position in the starting molecule. For example, the statement that glucose has been labeled at C-2 means that only carbon number 2 of glucose has been tagged with a ^{14}C or ^{13}C carbon atom. The other carbon atoms are not labeled (they are ^{12}C). The problem is to determine where this label ends up after the glucose is metabolized to some other compound.

Tracing the carbons of glucose to pyruvate gets complicated when fructose 1,6-bisphosphate (FBP) is cleaved into two 3-carbon fragments, glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P) and dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP). The numbers of the original carbons of *glucose* are indicated by the superscripts next to the carbon.



The guilty party is the triose phosphate isomerase (TIM) reaction that interconverts DHAP and G3P. To be converted to pyruvate, the DHAP first has to be converted to G3P. TIM just moves the carbonyl group between the two carbons that don't have phosphate attached. TIM doesn't touch the phosphate. So, if the DHAP is labeled at the carbon that has the phosphate attached, the G3P that comes from DHAP will be labeled at the carbon with the phosphate attached. The carbon with the phosphate attached in the G3P that was produced directly by the aldolase reaction came from C-6 of glucose, but the carbon with the phosphate attached in the G3P that was produced from DHAP came from C-1 of glucose. After TIM does it stuff, the carbon of G3P that has the phosphate will be

labeled if *either C-1 or C-6* of the original glucose was labeled. This all makes sense if you remember that pyruvate only has 3 carbons but glucose has 6. Each carbon atom of pyruvate must come from 2 different carbons of the original glucose molecule.

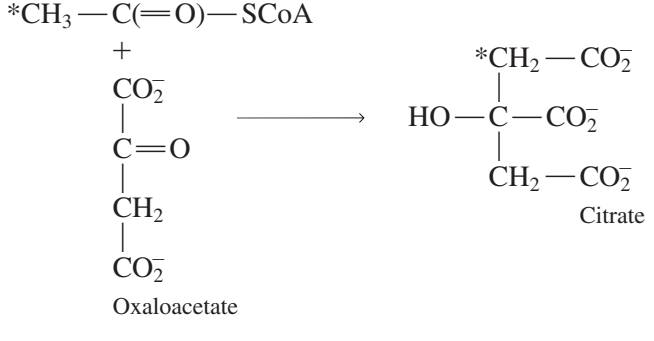
The carboxylate group of pyruvate, being the most oxidized, is called C-1, and the CH_3 group is called C-3. The carboxylate group of pyruvate comes from the aldehyde of G3P, so C-4 and C-3 of glucose end up at C-1 of pyruvate. There is an easy way to remember which carbons of glucose end up on the same carbon of pyruvate—the numbers of the equivalent carbons sum to 7.

The labeling trick also works backward. You could have to decide which carbons of glucose become labeled when you use pyruvate labeled on a given carbon. Labeling pyruvate on C-1 will result in a glucose molecule that is labeled on both C-3 and C-4, again because of the TIM reaction.

TCA CYCLE

The two carbons entering from acetyl-CoA do not leave as CO_2 on the first cycle.
Carbons 2 and 3 of succinate are equivalent.
Carbons 1 and 4 of succinate are equivalent.

To actually understand how labeled carbons travel through the TCA cycle, you have to draw out the chemical structures of the cycle members, put a tiny little asterisk by the labeled carbon, and follow it around and around. There are two concepts, however, that you have to know in order to do this. First, the two carbons entering the cycle as acetyl-CoA are not lost as CO_2 during the first turn of the TCA cycle.



The two CH_2–CO_2^- arms of citrate are different (Fig. 22-1). They can be (and are) distinguished by the aconitase enzyme. To see that they're dif-

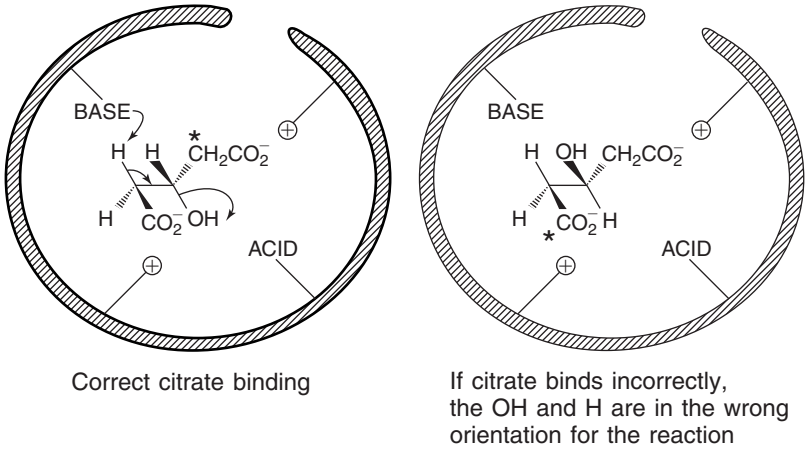
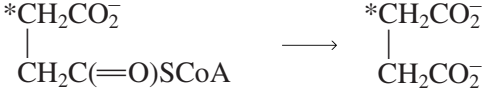


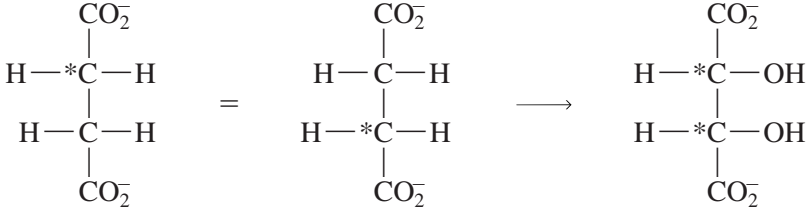
Figure 22-1
THE TWO $CH_2CO_2^-$ ARMS OF CITRATE ARE NOT IDENTICAL, and the enzyme aconitase can tell them apart. The $CH_2CO_2^-$ arm that was derived from acetyl-CoA (*) is not metabolized to CO_2 during the first turn of the TCA cycle.

ferent, imagine grabbing the CO_2^- group of the central carbon of citrate in your right hand, and the OH group of the central carbon in your left hand. The CH_2–CO_2^- that came from acetyl-CoA will be pointing up while the CH_2–CO_2^- that came from oxaloacetate will be pointing down. Aconitase holds onto citrate in the same way, and when it moves the hydroxyl group of citrate, it moves it specifically from the central carbon to the CH_2 group on the bottom. Aconitase can move the OH group only because the catalytic apparatus is in the right place. If we were to try to bind citrate to aconitase with the CH_2–CO_2^- that came from acetyl-CoA in the down position, the CO_2^- on the central carbon would be on the left, and this wouldn't do. Aconitase is set up to expect the CO_2^- group on the central carbon to be on the right.

As we follow the label from citrate to succinyl-CoA, there are no problems. But at succinate, it all seems to fall apart.



Unlike the CH_2–CO_2^- groups of citrate, the two CH_2–CO_2^- groups of succinate are indistinguishable. If you pick up succinate by the labeled CH_2 group, you will always be able to pick up succinate by the unlabeled CH_2 group so that it looks exactly the same (except for the label).



Malate

The consequence of the symmetry of succinate is that the enzyme succinate dehydrogenase has a fifty-fifty chance of picking up succinate in either of the equivalent orientations. By the time you get to malate, in which all the carbons are obviously different, one-half of the original label is found at the CH_2 group of malate while the other half of the label is on the CH–OH group of malate. Each molecule of malate has only one labeled carbon; however, in the collection of all malate molecules, the label is equally distributed between the two carbons in the middle [if it started out on the CH_3 group of acetyl-CoA (C-2)]. The same thing happens with the label that comes into the TCA cycle from the C-1 of acetyl-CoA except that the label ends up equally distributed between the two carboxyl groups of the malate.

Since neither of the carbons that come in from acetyl-CoA is lost during the first turn of the TCA cycle, it's reasonable to wonder when they are lost. If the label was originally at C-1 (the C═O) of acetyl-CoA, it ends up in the two carboxylate groups of oxaloacetate. On the next turn of the TCA cycle (go around again without bringing any more label in from acetyl-CoA) both of these carboxyl groups are lost as CO_2. So when C-1 of acetyl-CoA is labeled, all the label is lost from the TCA-cycle intermediates on the second turn of the cycle.

It's a lot more complicated when C-2 of the acetyl-CoA is labeled. After the first turn of the cycle, this label ends up on the central carbons of oxaloacetate, and neither of these is lost during the second turn of the cycle. However, on the third turn of the cycle, half the label is lost because half the total label is on the carboxylates of oxaloacetate. On each subsequent turn of the cycle, half the remaining label is lost. The only way to sort this out for yourself is to sit down with the TCA cycle and go round and round. It's a dizzying experience that leaves you a little bit nauseated when it's over.

• C H A P T E R • 23 •

pH, pK_a, pROBLEMS

•

Proton: H^+ or H_3O^+

Acid

Base

Not All Acids and Bases Are Created Equal

pK_a = −log(K_a)

Weak Acids Make Strong Bases (and Vice Versa)

Who Gets the Proton?

Don't Forget Stoichiometry

The Sadistic Little p

Taking $\log_{10}(x)$

Taking $-\log_{10}(x)$

pH = $-\log_{10}[H^+]$

pK_a = $-\log_{10}(K_a)$

Buffers

Henderson-Hasselbalch Equation

Titration Curves

p*I*—Isoelectric Point

The Bicarbonate Buffer

Imbalance in Blood pH

Acidosis and Alkalosis

• • • • • • • • • • • •

The usual concerns about acid–base behavior (other than knowing in your soul that it really can't be very important) are where protons go if they're given a choice, how buffers work, and logarithms. Your professor's job is to try to convince you that acid–base behavior has a place in biochemistry. Your job is to learn it—just in case your professor is right.

PROTON: H^+ OR H_3O^+

A hydrogen nucleus without electrons

It's interesting that the simplest molecule in biology has succeeded in terrifying generations of chemistry and biochemistry students.

ACID

Something that has a proton it's willing to give up

BASE

Something that has a place to put a proton

The thing that may be confusing here is that when an acid gives up a proton, it becomes a base, and when a base picks up a proton, it becomes an acid. It's a constant identity crisis. To make it even worse, some molecules with protons aren't acids. Every proton could be an acid if the base removing it were strong enough. In water (which limits the strength of acids and bases that can be used) RNH_3^+ is an acid but RNH_2 is not. The difference between the protons in RNH_3^+ and RNH_2 is that RNH_2 is such a weak acid that the strongest base available in water (hydroxide, ^-OH) is too weak a base to remove it (to give RNH^-). In contrast, RNH_3^+ is a sufficiently strong acid that ^-OH can easily remove one proton to give RNH_2. Whether or not something is an acid (for our purposes) comes down to whether or not the strongest base available in water (^-OH) can remove a proton from it. The same sort of reasoning can be applied to a base. A base (for our purposes) is something that can be protonated by the strongest acid in water (H_3O^+).

There's no easy, foolproof way to decide whether something is an acid or a base. Fortunately, there are only a few types of acids and bases you will encounter in biochemistry. Notice that all bases will be more negatively charged than the acids they came from.

ACID	BASE	pK_a
Asp, Glu		
$R—CO—OH$ + $H_2O \rightleftharpoons$ $R—CO—O^-$ + H_3O^+		3–5
Carboxylic acid	Carboxylate	
Lys, His, Arg (*not* NH of peptide bond)		
$R—NH_3^+$ + $H_2O \rightleftharpoons$ RNH_2 + H_3O^+		9–10 (amines)
Protonated amine	Amine	6–7 (His)
Cys		
$R—SH$ + $H_2O \rightleftharpoons$ $R—S^-$ + H_3O^+		8–9
Thiol	Thiolate	
Tyr (*not* Ser or Thr)		
$R—OH$ + $H_2O \rightleftharpoons$ $R—O^-$ + H_3O^+		9–11
Phenol	Phenolate	
CO_2 + $H_2O \rightleftharpoons$ HCO_3^- + H_3O^+		6.1
Carbon dioxide	Bicarbonate	
H_3PO_4 + $H_2O \rightleftharpoons$ H_2PO + H_3O^+		1.9
$H_2PO_4^-$ + $H_2O \rightleftharpoons$ HPO_4^{2-} + H_3O^+		6.8
HPO_4^{2-} + $H_2O \rightleftharpoons$ PO_4^{3-} + H_3O^+		10.5
Phosphoric Acid	Phosphate	
HCl + $H_2O \rightleftharpoons$ Cl^- + H_3O^+		−4
Hydrochloric acid	Chloride	
H_3O^+ + $H_2O \rightleftharpoons$ H_2O + H_3O^+		−1.6
The proton	Water	
H_2O + $H_2O \rightleftharpoons$ HO^- + H_3O^+		15.8
Water	Hydroxide	

NOT ALL ACIDS AND BASES ARE CREATED EQUAL

Strong acids completely dissociate in water; weak acids don't. Strong acids = high K_a = low pK_a.

There are acids and then there are ACIDS. Acids such as HCI and H_2SO_4 are strong acids. When you add a mole of HCl to water, you get a mole of protons (H_3O^+) and a mole of CI^-. HCl and other strong acids are, in fact, stronger acids than H_3O^+ so that the equilibrium

$$HCl + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + Cl^-$$

is far to the right. For a weaker acid, such as acetic acid, the equilibrium

$$HOAc + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_3O^+ + {}^-OAc$$

is far to the left. This means that when you add acetic acid to water, most of it stays as acetic acid—it doesn't dissociate very much at all.

The strength of an acid can be defined by the tendency of the acid to give up its proton to water. The stronger the acid, the larger the equilibrium constant for the reaction

$$HA + H_2O \rightleftharpoons A^- + H_3O^+$$

$$K_a = \frac{[A^-][H_3O^+]}{[HA]}$$

For strong acids, this equilibrium constant is greater than 1, and for weak acids, K_a is much less than 1. For most acids you find in biochemistry, K_a is much less than 1 and proton transfer from HA to water is not very favorable (nor complete).

$pK_a = -\log(K_a)$

The lower the pK_a, the stronger the acid.

The pK_a is one of those unfortunate concepts that turns everything around. It also puts acid strengths on a logarithmic scale similar to earthquakes and other natural disasters. Logarithms will be discussed later. For right now, just remember that stronger acids have lower pK_a's.

WEAK ACIDS MAKE STRONG BASES (AND VICE VERSA)

The conjugate base of a strong acid is a weak base. The conjugate acid of a strong base is a weak acid.

If something is a strong acid, it naturally gives up a proton easily, and the base that results must not want it back. The conjugate base of a strong acid is, then, a weak base. For the same reason, the conjugate acids of strong bases are weak acids. The word *conjugate* is just thrown in to make it sound similar to real chemistry. The K_a's can also be used to describe base strengths. Bases don't have K_a's, but their conjugate acids do. A strong acid (high K_a) has a weak conjugate base, and a weak acid (low K_a) has a strong conjugate base.

WHO GETS THE PROTON?

The weakest acid (strongest base)

What happens when you mix an acid and base, or, worse still, two acids and a base—Who gets the proton? Often there's no choice. If there's only one base present (other than water), the base gets the proton. If you add an acid to a mixture of bases, the stronger base takes the proton first. Because we only discuss acid strengths, the stronger base is the one that comes from the weakest acid (has the highest pK_a).

RNH_2	RS^-
pK_a = 10.5	pK_a = 8.6

Here, when you add an acid, the amino group, the strongest base, gets the proton first. If you add a base to a mixture of acids, the strongest acid gives up protons first.

RCO_2H	RNH_3^+
pK_a = 4.5	pK_a = 10.5

When titrating acids with a strong base, the acids titrate in order of increasing pK_a. A carboxylic acid titrates before a protonated amine when strong base is added.

DON'T FORGET STOICHIOMETRY

When a weak acid is neutralized by a strong base, the concentration of the acid (HA) decreases by the same amount [in molar units (*M*)] as the concentration of the conjugate base increases.

When you add a strong acid to a solution of a base, the base is converted to an acid. There's not really much to remember here, but it still seems to be confusing to a lot of people. In the example in Fig. 23-1, the acetate that is converted to acetic acid when HCl is added has to come from somewhere (acetate) and has to go somewhere (acetic acid). Not only does the concentration of acetic acid increase, but the concentration of the acetate must *decrease*.

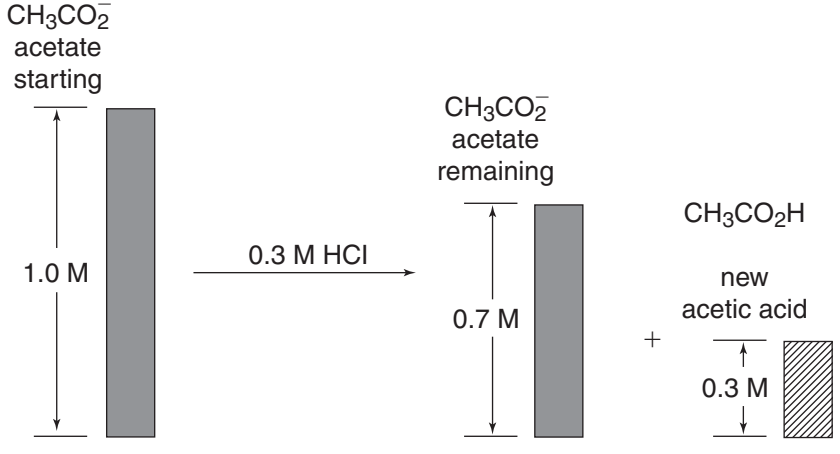


Figure 23-1 A Strong Acid Converts a Base to its Acid Form
Don't forget that the amount of the acid form that's produced has to come from somewhere.

THE SADISTIC LITTLE p

$$pH = -\log_{10}[H^+] = \log_{10}\frac{1}{[H^+]}$$

H^+ must be in *M* units

The little *p* is what screws it all up. In an attempt to avoid writing lots of 0's and the − sign, some physical chemist in prehistory condemned whole generations to backward thinking. Perhaps it's what little *p* stands for that is so confusing: *p* means, "Take the negative logarithm (base 10) of the next thing that follows." $pH = -\log [H^+]$. This has the

effect of making very little numbers (e.g., 0.000000001, or 10^{-9}) much bigger, that is, 9. The smaller the number, the bigger the *p* of that number is. The little *p* makes things backward—remember *backward*.

TAKING $\log_{10}(x)$

$$\log (10^x) = x$$
$$\log 1000 = \log (10^3) = 3$$
$$\log 0.001 = \log (10^{-3}) = -3$$

Logarithms are the answers you get when you put a number in your calculator and press the $\log_{10}$ button (not to be confused with the ln button). The $\log_{10}$ of something is the power to which 10 has to be raised to give the number you just entered: $\log (10^{\text{something}}) = \text{something}$, or $10^{\log(\text{somethingelse})} = \text{somethingelse}$. To undo what log does, use the 10^x button on your calculator. The logarithm of 1 is zero ($10^0 = 1$). If a number is greater than 1, its logarithm is greater than zero (positive). If a number is less than 1, the logarithm is less than zero (negative). If a number is negative, then it won't have a logarithm—your calculator knows this, so don't worry about it.

TAKING $-\log_{10}(x)$

$$-\log (10^x) = -x$$
$$-\log 1000 = -\log (10^3) = -3$$
$$-\log 0.001 = -\log (10^{-3}) = 3$$

or $$-\log 0.001 = \log \frac{1}{0.001} = \log 1000 = \log (10^3) = 3$$

Taking $-\log_{10}$ of something is the same as taking the $\log_{10}$ and then changing the sign of the answer. There's another way to do this. Enter the number, take the reciprocal ($1/x$ button), and then take the log (don't change the sign of anything). Taking the $-\log_{10}$ is the same as taking the $\log_{10}$ of the reciprocal: $-\log_{10} x = \log_{10} (1/x)$. This is what turns everything upside-down when dealing with pH, pK_a, and so forth.

$pH = -\log_{10} [H^+]$

$[H^+] = 10^{-pH}$

Low pH means high $[H^+]$.

Because pH is a little *p* function, pH and $[H^+]$ are related in a backward manner. The lower the pH, the higher the $[H^+]$. To get pH when you know $[H^+]$, enter the $[H^+]$ (this may require that you use the scientific notation feature on your calculator), press log, and change the sign from − to + (you can do this part in your head). To calculate the $[H^+]$ from the pH, enter the pH on your calculator, change the sign from + to − (+/− button), and hit 10^x. The pH's you'll be dealing with will usually be in the range of 0 to 14, so the $[H^+]$ will be between 1 *M* (10^{-0}) and 1×10^{-14} *M*. For pH's that are integers or $[H^+]$'s that are integral powers of 10, you should be able to do it in your head.

$pK_a = -\log_{10}(K_a)$

Lower pK_a = stronger acid, weaker base.

Like pH, pK_a is a "little p" function. Again this turns things backward. The lower the pK_a (higher K_a), the stronger the acid.

BUFFERS

Buffers are solutions that contain both the acidic and the basic forms of a weak acid.

Buffers minimize changes in pH when strong acids and bases are added.

A buffer's job is to keep the pH of a solution from changing very much when either strong acids or strong bases are added to it. To handle the addition of both acids and bases, a buffer contains an acid (to react with added base) and a base (to react with added acid). Take a glass of water (*beaker* sounds too chemical, and *blood* sounds too gruesome)

and add enough strong acid (HCl) to make the final concentration 10^{-3} *M*. The pH will change from 7 to 3 (Fig. 23-2). Now do the same thing but with a solution of 0.1 *M* KH_2PO_4 (acid) and 0.1 *M* K_2HPO_4 (base) (Fig. 23-3). The pH changes from 6.8 to 6.79.

In this example, the starting buffer solution is a little more complicated than usual[1] because in a phosphate buffer there are two bases present—$H_2PO_4^-$ and HPO_4^{-2}. The pK_a leading to $H_2PO_4^-$ is about 1.9 ($H_3PO_4 \rightleftharpoons H_2PO_4^- + H^+$), but the p$K_a$ for the ionization leading to HPO_4^{2-} is 6.8 ($H_2PO_4^- \rightleftharpoons HPO_4^{2-} + H^+$). So HPO_4^{2-} is a stronger base than $H_2PO_4^-$ and gets the proton from HCl. When HPO_4^{2-} gets the proton, it turns into $H_2PO_4^-$. The HPO_4^{2-} concentration then drops by 0.001 *M*, and the concentration of $H_2PO_4^-$ increases by the same amount. What we're assuming when we do this is that all the protons added with the strong acid end up on the buffer and not in solution. This is basically true. In our example, the initial pH was 6.8, so that $[H^+] = 10^{-6.8} = 1.58 \times 10^{-7}$ *M*. The final pH was 6.79 ($[H^+] = 10^{-6.79} = 1.62 \times 10^{-7}$ *M*). Even though we added 0.001 *M* HCl, we only generated 0.04×10^{-7} *M* $[H^+]$—99.96 percent of the protons added ended up on the strongest buffer base and not in the water. This is really the secret of how buffers work; the base and acid forms of the buffer soak up the acids and bases that are added, and very little H^+ escapes to change the pH.

HENDERSON-HASSELBALCH EQUATION

$$\text{pH} = \text{p}K_a + \log \frac{[\text{base}]}{[\text{acid}]}$$

All concentrations must be in molar units (*M*).
[base] is the concentration of the form of the buffer without the proton.
[acid] is the concentration of the form of the buffer with the proton.
[base]>[acid] means pH>pK_a
[base]=[acid] means pH=pK_a
[base]<[acid] means pH<pK_a

This is one of the two equations you might have to deal with in introductory biochemistry. Like the other equation (the Michaelis-Menten equation), this one took two people to derive (wonder which one was

[1] If an acetate ($CH_3CO_2^-$) and acetic acid (CH_3CO_2H) buffer had been used, the only base present would be acetate, and it would have to get the proton.

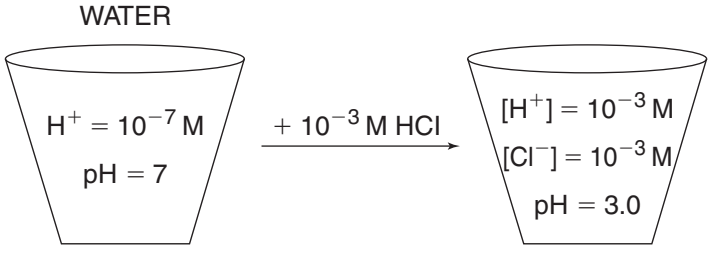


Figure 23-2
WITHOUT BUFFERING, adding a little bit of a strong acid to water decreases the pH a lot. Note that I have assumed that $10^{-7} + 10^{-3} = 10^{-3}$.

responsible for deciding to take −log?).[2] If you know pH and pK_a for any buffer, you can calculate [base]/[acid]. If you know pK_a and [base]/[acid], then you can calculate pH. Given two of the three, you can find the other.

The key to understanding the behavior of buffers is in the ratio [base]/[acid]. The ratio [base]/[acid] = 1.0 represents a special point (one that's easy to remember). When [base]/[acid] = 1.0, log ([base]/[acid]) = 0 and pH = pK_a. If [base]/[acid] > 1, then pH must be bigger than the pK_a. If [base]/[acid] < 1, the pH must be lower than the pK_a. You may actually be able to get by without memorizing the equation if you realize the general relationships.

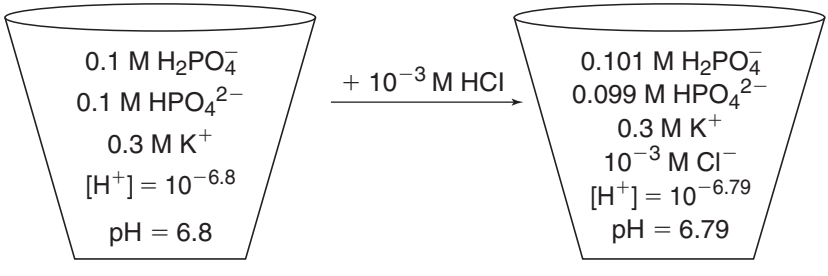


Figure 23-3
WITH BUFFERING, adding a little bit of a strong acid to a buffer doesn't change the pH very much.

TITRATION CURVES

Buffers buffer best within 2 pH units of the pK_a.

[2] To get the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation, start with $K_a = [H^+][A^-]/[HA]$ and take −log of both sides: $-\log(K_a) = -\log[H^+] - \log([A^-]/[HA])$, or $pK_a = pH - \log([A^-]/[HA])$, or $pH = pK_a + \log([base]/[acid])$.

Using the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation in a semiquantitative way can help you understand why buffers buffer best when the pH is near the pK_a of the buffer. When the pH is far away from the pK_a, the ratio [base]/[acid] is either very large or very small (depending on whether the pH is greater than or less than the pK_a). When the ratio [base]/[acid] is large or small, the pH is far from the pK_a (for a pH that is 2 units away from the pK_a, the ratio [base]/[acid] is 100 or 0.01). At these extremes, the buffer is about 99 percent base or 99 percent acid (depending on whether pH is above or below the pK_a). Adding a little bit of strong acid or base causes the ratio [base]/[acid] to change a lot if the ratio is very large or very small. However, when the ratio is near 1, adding a little bit of strong acid or base has less of an effect on the ratio.

Now let's do it numerically. Let's assume the total concentration of a carboxylic acid is 0.1 *M*. When we start the titration, the group with the lowest pK_a will start with a [acid]/[base] of 99, [base] = 0.001 *M*, acid = 0.099 *M*, and the pH will be about 2 units lower than the lowest pK_a (log 99 is about 2). The amount of dissociation of the carboxylic acid can actually be calculated, but nobody will ask you to do it. But, remember that it won't dissociate much. Now add enough strong base to make a final concentration of 0.01 *M*. This will convert 0.01 *M* of the carboxylic acid to the carboxylate (base) form, resulting in 0.089 *M* acid and 0.011 *M* base. The [acid]/[base] ratio will change from about 100 to about 10, and the pH will change by 1 unit. (I'm saying 0.089/0.011 is about 10.[3]) Now let's try the same thing at the pK_a. At the pK_a, the ratio [acid]/[base] will be 1, [base] = 0.05 *M*, and [acid] = 0.05 *M*. When we add 0.01 *M* base, we will convert 0.01 mole of acid to base; the [base] = 0.06, and the [acid] = 0.04 *M*. The [acid]/[base] ratio will have changed from 1 to 0.75 (a pH change of 0.18 units). When [acid]/[base] is near 1 (near the pK_a), the buffer will buffer best (Fig. 23-4).

With multiple ionizable groups, such as in amino acids and proteins, each group titrates separately according to its pK_a. The titration curves shown in Fig. 23-5 are for the amino acids glycine, histidine, and glutamate.

In the titration curves shown in Fig. 23-5, you start with the fully protonated form of the amino acid. Notice that at pH's that are not near the pK_a of any functional group, the pH changes more when base is added. Also notice that there are multiple buffer regions (where the pH doesn't change rapidly when base is added) when there are multiple acid and base groups present. If the pK_a's of two groups are close to each

[3] I balance my checkbook using the same method, and most of the time it works well, but be aware that there can be some hazards when the account balance approaches the size of the checks that you write.

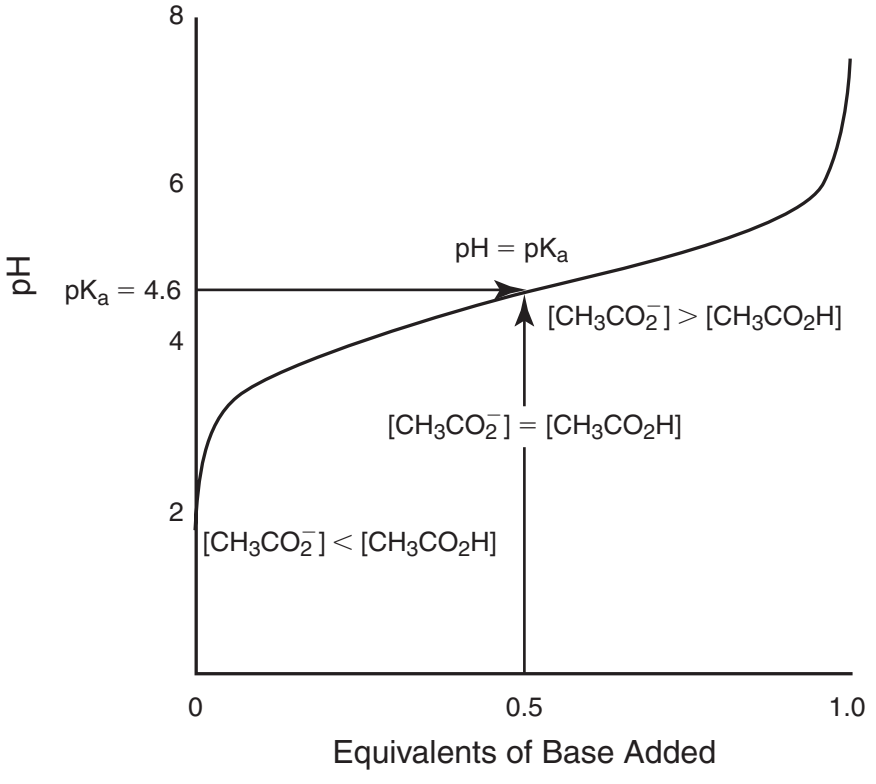
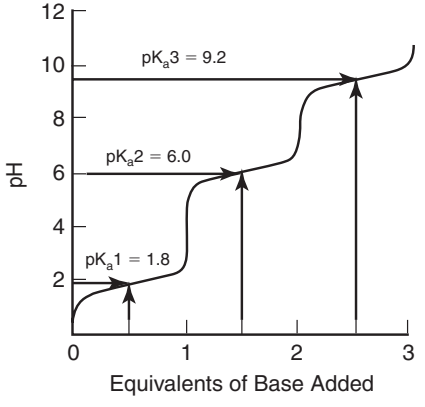


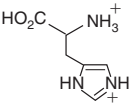
Figure 23-4 Titration of Acetic Acid
At the pK_a, the concentrations of acetate and acetic acid are equal.

other (closer than about 2 units), the higher-pK_a group starts titrating before the lower-pK_a group finishes, and there are no sharp transitions between the two titrations. This is most obvious for the titration of glutamate, aspartate, or lysine, which all have two groups with similar pK_a's.

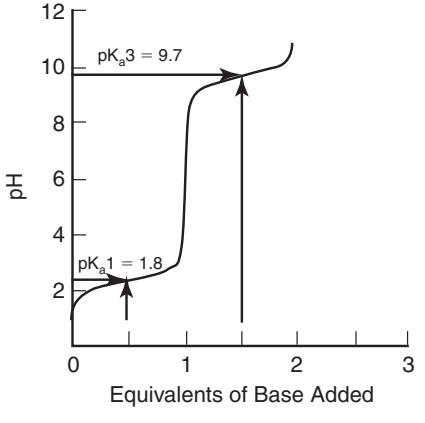
The presence of nearby charged groups can affect the pK_a of an ionizing group. For example, the pK_a of acetic acid (CH_3CO_2H) is 4.6. However, the pK_a of the carboxyl group in glycine ($^+NH_3$–CH_2–CO_2H) is 2.4. The reason lies in the effect of the protonated amino group. The positive charge of this group makes it easier to abstract the proton from the carboxylic acid since the negative charge of the carboxylate product is stabilized by having the positive charge of the amino group nearby. The effects of nearby charge can be even more dramatic when the ionizable side chain is part of a protein.



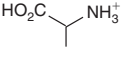
(1.8) (9.2)

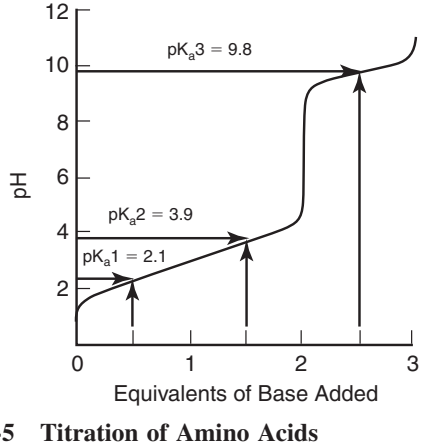


(6.0)

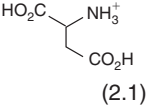


(1.8) (9.7)





(2.1) (9.8)



(2.1)

Figure 23-5 Titration of Amino Acids
Multiple ionizable groups titrate separately and in order of increasing pK_a.

p*I*—ISOELECTRIC POINT

pH = p*I* means no net charge.
pH > p*I* means negative charge.
pH < p*I* means positive charge.

The p*I* is a fake little-p function and does not represent the $-\log [I]$. It represents the pH at which a molecule has no net charge. When fully protonated, glycine has a net $+1$ charge, a charged amino group, and an uncharged, protonated carboxylic acid group. About halfway between the titration of the carboxyl and the amino group, the molecule must have no net charge—the amount of positive charge on RNH_3^+ is exactly matched by the amount of negative charge on $RCOO^-$. If an amino acid (or protein) has more basic groups (Arg, Lys, His) than acidic groups (Glu, Asp), the p*I* is greater than 7. If an amino acid or protein has more acidic groups, the p*I* is less than 7. The same considerations apply (but in a more complicated way) to proteins (Fig. 23-6).

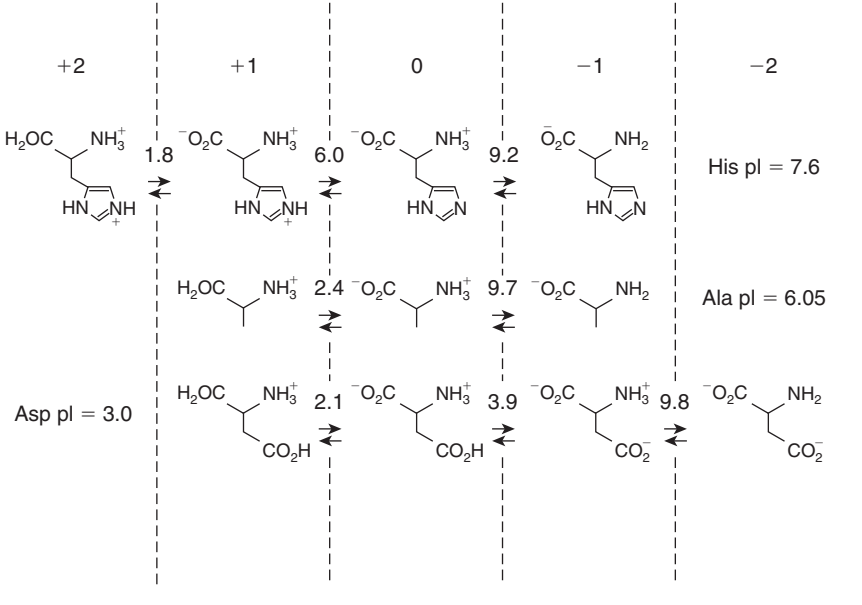


Figure 23-6 Figuring out the p*I*
Average the two pK_a's that convert the charge from $+1$ to 0 and from 0 to -1. This will give you an estimate of the p*I*.

At the p*I*, the molecule is neutral. [H^+] is positively charged, and adding it to another molecule must make that molecule more positively charged. As the pH decreases below the p*I*, the amount of positive charge on the molecule increases (protonating a $-COO^-$ makes the compound more positive, just like protonating an RNH_2 group). When the pH is less than the p*I*, the molecule is positively charged. When the pH is greater than the p*I*, the molecule must be negatively charged.

THE BICARBONATE BUFFER

$[H^+] = 24\ pCO_2/[HCO_3^-]$

The CO_2–bicarbonate buffer is a little different from buffers using the usual kind of acids and bases, but it is extremely important in maintaining the acid–base balance of the blood. The acid form of the bicarbonate buffer is actually a gas dissolved in water. Dissolved CO_2 is turned into an acid by hydration to give H_2CO_3. Hydrated CO_2 is then much like a carboxylic acid. It gives up a proton to a base and makes bicarbonate, HCO_3^-.

$$CO_2 + H_2O \rightleftharpoons H_2CO_3 \rightleftharpoons H^+ + HCO_3^-$$

When CO_2 is dissolved in water, there is never very much H_2CO_3, so we can ignore it and count CO_2 as the acid and HCO_3^- as the base.

There are two ways of dealing with the bicarbonate buffer system. The first uses the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation and an effective pK_a of 6.1. If there is more base (HCO_3^-) than acid (CO_2), the pH will always be bigger than the pK_a. This is usually the case physiologically (pH = 7.4; pK_a = 6.1) so that on a molar basis there is always more than 10-fold more HCO_3^- than CO_2.

You might be wondering why the bicarbonate buffer can buffer effectively at pH 7.4 when its pK_a is 6.1. The answer is that it doesn't buffer all that well. What makes it unique and the major buffer system of the blood is that CO_2, being a gas, can be exhaled by the lungs. Exhaling CO_2 is equivalent to exhaling protons.

$$H^+ + HCO_3^- \rightleftharpoons CO_2 + H_2O$$

It's not that a proton is exhaled; it's just left behind and turned into water. This gives the body control over the concentration of the CO_2 by controlling the breathing rate.

The other way to think about the CO_2–bicarbonate buffer is *not* to use logarithms. One reason this can be done is that the pH of the body doesn't change all that much (at least under conditions compatible with life), and so you don't have to deal with very small numbers. The penalty for not using logarithms is that you have to worry about the units of things. The concentration of CO_2, being a gas, is usually expressed in terms of the partial pressure of CO_2 in the gas above a liquid containing a given concentration of CO_2 (sounds obscure, doesn't it?). The CO_2 "concentration" is generally expressed in pressure units of millimeters of mercury and is denoted pCO_2. This is not a little-p function. The little p just stands for pressure (as in pO_2). A typical CO_2 partial pressure is about 40 mmHg. Atmospheric pressure is 760 mmHg. This means that the CO_2 represents 40/760 of the total pressure of the gas above the liquid, or about 5%. The actual concentration of dissolved CO_2 (dCO_2; in millimoles per liter) is given by

$$dCO_2 \quad (\text{mmol/L, or m}M) = 0.03\ pCO_2 \quad (\text{mmHg})$$

Starting the same place as the Henderson-Hasselbalch equation

$$K_a = \frac{[H^+][dCO_2]}{[HCO_3^-]}$$

we know that $K_a = 10^{-6.1} = 7.94 \times 10^{-7}\ M$, and that $dCO_2 = 0.03\ pCO_2$. Putting these things together and rearranging things results in a bit of magic:

$$[H^+]\ (\text{neq/L}) = \frac{24\ pCO_2 \quad (\text{mmHg})}{[HCO_3^-] \quad (\text{m}M)}$$

Here's the magic part. Divide pCO_2 in millimeters of mercury by $[HCO_3^-]$ in millimoles per liter (mM) and multiply by 24 (2 dozen). The answer you get is the $[H^+]$ concentration in units of nanoequivalents per liter (neq/L) (n$M = 10^{-9}\ M$). An equivalent (equiv) in the bicarbonate system is the same as a mole, and the terms neq/L, nmol/L, nM, and $10^{-9}\ M$ all mean the same thing.

To get $[H^+]$ in molar units (M) (that's what is needed to determine pH), multiply the $[H^+]$ in neq/L by 10^{-9}. Take the $-\log$ of this and you have pH. Whichever way you use, the important thing to remember is that when pCO_2 increases, the $[H^+]$ increases (the pH decreases)—after all, CO_2 is an acid.

IMBALANCE IN BLOOD pH

CO_2 concentration is regulated by the lungs.
$[HCO_3^-]$ is regulated by the kidneys.

By changing the breathing rate and depth, the lungs can control the concentration of CO_2 in the blood. CO_2 is a gas, and when it leaves the body it essentially turns protons into water. The trick is that the actual acid form of this buffer, H_2CO_3 (which you get by adding protons to HCO_3^-), can lose water (not protons—water) and give CO_2, which can then leave the body. This process doesn't leave the protons behind, it just converts them into water. By breathing fast and deeply (hyperventilating), one causes more CO_2 to leave the body than normal, and the pCO_2 in the blood drops. Shallow and slow breathing (hypoventilation) causes the blood pCO_2 to rise.

The kidney exerts control over the concentration of bicarbonate. The initial filtrate of the kidney has the same buffer composition (except for the proteins) as serum. Based on the pH of the initial filtrate, the kidney can decide to reclaim the initially filtered bicarbonate and place it back in the serum, or it can decide to just let it go out of the body. If the kidney does not reclaim bicarbonate, the serum bicarbonate concentration falls. If the kidney reclaims more bicarbonate than normal, the bicarbonate concentration rises.

Normally, everything is balanced, CO_2 and bicarbonate are removed at exactly the same rate that they're formed, and the pH of the serum remains very close to 7.4. If for some reason the lungs blow off too much CO_2 by hyperventilating (breathing too fast), the numerator of the magic equation (pCO_2) decreases, and, as long as $[HCO_3^-]$ remains constant, the $[H^+]$ must decrease (pH increases).

$$[H^+]\downarrow = \frac{24pCO_2\downarrow}{[HCO_3^-]}$$

Hypoventilating (breathing too slowly) increases the pCO_2 (numerator of the magic equation), and, as long as $[HCO_3^-]$ remains constant, the $[H^+]$ must increase (pH decreases).

$$[H^+]\uparrow = \frac{24pCO_2\uparrow}{[HCO_3^-]}$$

If you just remember that CO_2 is an acid, it's easy to see that if you increase the amount of the acid component of the buffer, the pH must fall.

Kidneys can secrete $[H^+]$ (by an energy-dependent proton pump) directly into the filtrate, lowering the pH of the urine. Because of the lowered pH, more of the initially filtered bicarbonate exists as the gas, CO_2, which can freely cross membranes. Diffusion of this acidic gas back to the blood (through the epithelial cells) and hydration and loss of the proton to form bicarbonate results in reclaiming the initially filtered bicarbonate. The kidney reclaims bicarbonate by actually reclaiming the acid form (CO_2), and the net effect is reclaiming bicarbonate and a proton. The excess protons must actually exit the body on another buffer in the urine (usually phosphate). The net results is that as the pH of the urine falls, the kidney reclaims more and more of the bicarbonate. Reclaiming more HCO_3^- in response to a decreased serum pH ($[H^+] \uparrow$) causes the $[HCO_3^-]$ to rise, restoring the pH to normal.

$$[H^+] = \frac{24pCO_2 \uparrow}{[HCO_3^-] \uparrow}$$

The kidneys, by reclaiming bicarbonate, can compensate for an increased pCO_2 caused by a problem with the lungs.

ACIDOSIS AND ALKALOSIS

Acidosis: $pH < 7.4$
Alkalosis: $pH > 7.4$
Respiratory acidosis: $pCO_2 \uparrow$
Respiratory alkalosis: $pCO_2 \downarrow$
Metabolic acidosis: $[HCO_3^-] \downarrow$
Metabolic alkalosis: $[HCO_3^-] \uparrow$

Normally everything is in balance. The lungs have the numerator (pCO_2), and the kidneys have the denominator ($[HCO_3^-]$). The amount of CO_2 produced by metabolism is balanced by the amount of CO_2 blown off by the lungs and let go by the kidney. It's the same way with the other metabolic acids—they leave the body as CO_2 or they are excreted by the kidneys. If everything always stayed in balance, you wouldn't have to learn all this—but as usual it doesn't, and you do.

When blood pH is not normal, something must not be working correctly or the capacity of the system must have been exceeded. Using the magic equation

$$[H^+] = \frac{24pCO_2}{[HCO_3^-]}$$

we can see that there are two things that might cause the $[H^+]$ to be abnormal: a change in pCO_2 or a change in $[HCO_3^-]$. The 24 never changes. If the $[H^+]$ is abnormally high (low pH), the condition is called *acidosis*. If the $[H^+]$ is abnormally low, the condition is called *alkalosis*.

For each type of $[H^+]$ imbalance (too high or too low), there are two possible causes. An abnormally high $[H^+]$ could have been caused either by an abnormally high pCO_2 (increased numerator of the magic equation) or by an abnormally low $[HCO_3^-]$ (decreased denominator). Since pCO_2 is regulated by the lungs, the label *respiratory* is attached to effects that cause the pCO_2 to change. An acid–base imbalance caused by a change in pCO_2 is termed *respiratory acidosis* or *alkalosis* depending on whether the pCO_2 is increased or decreased. The bicarbonate concentration is the province of the kidney and is determined by how much bicarbonate the kidney reclaims. Changes in the bicarbonate concentrations are labeled *metabolic*.

When something goes wrong with acid–base balance, something is not working right. If the lungs are at fault and the pCO_2 changes, it is called *respiratory acidosis* if pCO_2 increases ($[H^+]$ increases) or *respiratory alkalosis* if the pCO_2 decreases ($[H^+]$ decreases). When the kidneys are at fault, and $[HCO_3^-]$ is too high or low, it's called *metabolic alkalosis* or *acidosis*. If the bicarbonate concentration drops, then its called *metabolic acidosis*, and if the bicarbonate concentration rises, it's called *metabolic alkalosis*, because the change in $[H^+]$ must be opposite that of the bicarbonate (look at the magic equation again). Thus, we have four possible causes of acid–base imbalance: respiratory acidosis, respiratory alkalosis, metabolic acidosis, and metabolic alkalosis. The simple thing to remember is cause (metabolic or respiratory) and direction (acidosis or alkalosis).

The body has two options when acid–base balance breaks down—fix the original problem or do something else to provide a temporary fix until a more permanent fix can be implemented. If a person hypoventilates (breathes out too little CO_2), blood pCO_2 rises and the pH decreases ($[H^+]$ increases). This is respiratory acidosis. Obviously, if the body could increase respiration, there wouldn't be a problem. Since that doesn't seem to be an option, the next strategy would be to change the bicarbonate concentration to get the pH back to normal. Which direction should it go? Look at the magic equation. If pCO_2 is increased (numerator), the only way to get the $[H^+]$ back to normal is also to increase $[HCO_3^-]$—metabolic alkalosis.

$$[H^+] = \frac{24pCO_2 \uparrow}{[HCO_3^-] \uparrow}$$

The conclusion—respiratory acidosis must be compensated by metabolic alkalosis in order to return the pH to normal. The following table summarizes all the possibilities. Note that the directions of the arrows are always the same for pCO_2 and $[HCO_3^-]$. Metabolic is always compensated by respiratory (and vice versa), and acidosis is always compensated by alkalosis.

CAUSE		RESULT		COMPENSATION
Respiratory acidosis	$pCO_2 \uparrow$	$[H^+] \uparrow$	$[HCO_3^-] \uparrow$	Metabolic alkalosis
Respiratory alkalosis	$pCO_2 \downarrow$	$[H^+] \downarrow$	$[HCO_3^-] \downarrow$	Metabolic acidosis
Metabolic acidosis	$[HCO_3^-] \downarrow$	$[H^+] \uparrow$	$pCO_2 \downarrow$	Respiratory alkalosis
Metabolic alkalosis	$[HCO_3^-] \uparrow$	$[H^+] \downarrow$	$pCO_2 \uparrow$	Respiratory acidosis

• CHAPTER • 24 •

THERMODYNAMICS AND KINETICS

•

Thermodynamics

Free Energy

Adding Free-Energy Changes

Coupling Free Energies

Thermodynamic Cycles

$\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S$

Driving Force

Kinetics

Velocity

Transition State Theory

Rate Constants

Rate Constants and Mechanism

• • • • • • • • • • • • •

THERMODYNAMICS

Alarms sound, eyes go blank, and a sigh can be heard.

The beauty of thermodynamics is that it can tell you whether or not a chemical reaction can occur and how much energy you can get out of it when it does. The beast of thermodynamics is that no one who really understands it can (or will) explain it to those of us who don't.

Take a generic chemical reaction:

$$A + B \rightleftharpoons P + Q$$

What will happen if we mix A, B, P, and Q together? There's some gray area here in that the answer depends somewhat on what we mean by *happen*. First, it depends on direction. A more appropriate way to ask the question is, Will the reaction happen in the direction written, that is, left to right? Second, it depends on the actual concentrations of A, B, P, and Q that you start with. Third, it really depends on the relationship between the initial concentrations of A, B, P, and Q and the equilibrium concentrations that will exist when the reaction finally comes to equilibrium. Finally, when A, B, P, and Q are mixed, they will take off toward the equilibrium position, whatever that is, but thermodynamics doesn't tell you how long it might take for the reaction to actually get to equilibrium. The *How fast*? is kinetics. So the real answer is that when we mix A, B, P, and Q, the reaction will happen in the direction that takes you to equilibrium. When the reaction is actually at equilibrium, the concentrations of A, B, P, and Q will be equal to their equilibrium concentrations.

The equilibrium constant for a reaction is just the ratio of the products to the reactants at equilibrium:

$$K_{eq} = \frac{[P]_{eq}[Q]_{eq}}{[A]_{eq}[B]_{eq}}$$

If the initial ratio of products to reactants,

$$\frac{[P][Q]}{[A][B]}$$

is different from the equilibrium ratio, the chemical reaction will proceed until the real product/reactant ratio equals the equilibrium product/substrate ratio, and then it stops at equilibrium.

If $([P][Q]/[A][B]) < ([P]_{eq}[Q]_{eq}/[A]_{eq}[B]_{eq})$, the reaction goes in the direction that increases P and Q and decreases A and B so that the product/substrate ratio increases to the equilibrium value. This is the same as saying that if the concentration of products is lower than their equilibrium values, the reaction goes in the direction that makes more products, or to the right.

If $([P][Q]/[A][B]) > ([P]_{eq}[Q]_{eq}/[A]_{eq}[B]_{eq})$, the reaction goes in the direction that decreases P and Q and increases A and B so that the product/

reactant ratio decreases to the equilibrium value. The reaction goes to the left.

If ([P][Q]/[A][B]) = ([P]$_{eq}$[Q]$_{eq}$/[A]$_{eq}$[B]$_{eq}$), the reaction is at equilibrium and there will be no net change in the products or substrates.

FREE ENERGY

ΔG is a measure of how far a chemical reaction is from equilibrium.

ΔG represents the amount of work that can be done by a chemical reaction.

You get more useful work (ΔG) out of a chemical reaction if it is far from equilibrium.

	$\Delta G = 0$	Reaction is at equilibrium, and the concentrations of products and reactants equal the equilibrium concentrations.
Exergonic reaction:	$\Delta G < 0$	Reaction happens in the direction written. Reactant concentrations are *higher* than the equilibrium concentration.
Endergonic reaction:	$\Delta G > 0$	Reaction happens in the direction opposite to that written. Product concentrations are higher than the equilibrium concentration.

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^0 + RT \ln \frac{[P][Q]}{[A][B]}$$

$$\Delta G^0 = -RT \ln (K_{eq})$$

$$\Delta G^0 = -1.36 \log_{10} (K_{eq})$$

A 10-fold difference in K_{eq} or the products/reactants ratio changes ΔG by 1.36 kcal/mol.

Another way to think about this involves the energies of the reactants and products. Chemical reactions occur in the direction written when the products of the reaction have less energy than the reactants. The reaction proceeds from a state of higher energy to one of lower energy—from a mountain to a valley. These are called exergonic reactions because they give off energy. Reactions don't proceed uphill, from a valley to a

mountain—unless there's a way to couple the unfavorable, uphill movement to a more favorable, downhill movement of something else.

The energy we're talking about is called the free energy G. The energy is not free as in no charge; the free energy is the energy that is available to use. The free energy of a molecule is something that cannot be measured; however, we can measure the change in free energy (ΔG) that accompanies a chemical reaction.

If the products have less G than the reactants (the reaction is downhill), the ΔG is less than zero ($\Delta G = G_{\text{products}} - G_{\text{reactants}}$). Thus, for a spontaneous reaction (one that occurs in the direction written), the ΔG is negative (<0). The more negative ΔG, the more favorable the reaction. Like most things biochemists do, this too initially seems backward (Fig. 24-1).

Just by looking at the value of ΔG, you can determine which way a reaction goes. If $\Delta G < 0$, the reaction goes to the right. If $\Delta G > 0$, the reaction goes to the left. And, if $\Delta G = 0$, the products and reactants are of exactly the same free energy (note that this does not mean that the products and reactants are at the same concentration), and the reaction is at equilibrium.

What's important in determining how much free energy is available from a given chemical reaction is how far the reaction is from its equilibrium position. One way to decide this is to take the ratio of the product/reactant ratio at equilibrium to the actual product/reactant ratio:

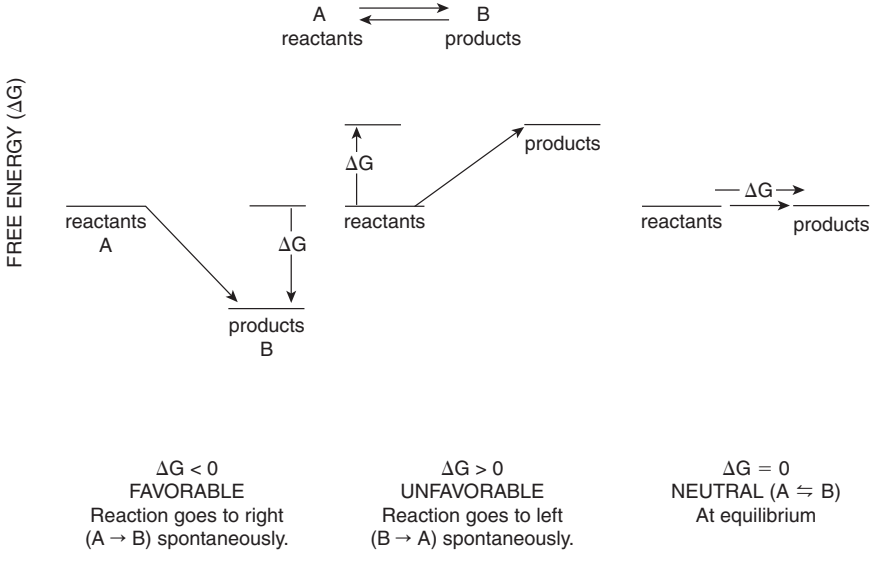


Figure 24-1 Reactions Don't Go Uphill

$$\frac{[P]_{eq}[Q]_{eq}/[A]_{eq}[B]_{eq}}{[P][Q]/[A][B]} = \frac{K_{eq}}{[P][Q]/[A][B]}$$

If this ratio is 1, the reactants and products are at equilibrium. If this ratio is large, the reaction has more reactants present (or less products) than at equilibrium and the reaction will go to the right, toward the products. The opposite is true if the ratio is small—the reaction will go toward the reactants.

Now, the definition—because that's all it really is. The ΔG is the negative natural logarithm ($-1n$) of the ratio of the equilibrium constant to the products/reactants ratio multiplied by the absolute temperature T in degrees Kelvin, and the gas constant R in calories per degree per mole. The reason for taking the natural logarithm is to take a simple, easily understandable ratio and make it difficult. The multiplication by the temperature and gas constant is to give it units of energy (calories/mol or kcal/mol).

$$\Delta G = -RT\ 1n\ \frac{K_{eq}}{[P][Q]/[A][B]}$$

or we can rearrange this to give

$$\Delta G = -RT\ 1n\ K_{eq} + RT\ 1n\ \frac{[P][Q]}{[A][B]}$$

ΔG is only a measure of how far a chemical reaction is from equilibrium. We also can make another definition

$$\Delta G^0 = -RT\ 1n\ K_{eq}$$

ΔG^0 is the free-energy change for a reaction under conditions where the product/reactant ratio is 1.[1] Don't get confused on this point—ΔG^0 is *not* the free-energy change at equilibrium (that's zero), it's the free energy change when the products/reactants ratio is 1. ΔG^0 is a way to compare different reactions to decide which one is intrinsically more favorable. The comparison is made, by convention, at a product/reactant ratio of 1. Just because a reaction has a negative ΔG^0 doesn't mean that it can't be made

[1] The product/reactant ratio may have units if there are more product terms than reactant terms, or vice versa. For example, if there are two products and one reactant, the product/reactant ratio will have molar units (*M*). In this case, a products/reactants ratio of 1 means that the products/reactants ratio is actually 1 *M*. The term *molar standard state* means that we're talking about a products/reactants ratio that has molar units.

to go in the reverse direction. If the actual product/reactant ratio is large enough to overcome the ΔG^0, the reaction can be made to go in the reverse direction. The ΔG^0 is just a convenient way to compare reactions under standard conditions. The position of some reactions also depends on temperature and pH. Since biochemists usually work at pH 7.0 and 25°C, pH and temperature effects can be ignored by adding a prime to ΔG^0 and calling it $\Delta G^{0\prime}$. This means that this is the ΔG^0 at pH 7.0 and 25°C.

When all the algebra is done,

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^0 + RT \ln \frac{[P][Q]}{[A][B]}$$

For the most part, equations don't tell most people much. But this one is different. It tells everybody exactly how to decide what's going to happen. There are just two things (and only two things) that go into this decision. First, there's how much ΔG is built into the system—certain chemical reactions are just intrinsically more favorable. This factor shows up in ΔG^0. Second, there's the size of the actual products/reactants ratio. If it's large enough, it can overcome even a large intrinsic free-energy difference.

To make it a little simpler to calculate ΔG from real numbers, it's useful to remember that natural logarithms (ln) can be converted to base-10 logarithms (log),[2] and that at 25°C, the value of RT is 0.591 kcal/mol. To calculate ΔG^0, for example, use the equation

$$\Delta G^0 = -1.36 \log_{10} (K_{eq})$$

For a K_{eq} of 1×10^4 (an intrinsically favorable reaction), $\log_{10} K_{eq} = 4$, and $\Delta G^0 = -1.36(4) = -5.44$ kcal/mol. For a K_{eq} of 1×10^{-6} (an intrinsically unfavorable reaction), $\log_{10} K_{eq} = -6$, and $\Delta G^0 = -1.36(-6) = 8.16$ kcal/mol.

• **UNITS** The products/reactants ratios may have units associated with them. For example, a reaction of the type A $\rightleftharpoons$ B + C has a products/reactants ratio that has molar units. What you do when you take the log of a products/reactants ratio with molar units is ignore the units. You've not really made them disappear, you've just ignored them. The way physical chemist types make this difficult is that they call ignoring the units an *assumption of standard state*. It does matter, though. If you assume the units are molar (M), the products/reactants ratio has one

[2] $\ln x = 2.303 \times \log_{10} x$.

value, but if you assume the units are millimolar (m*M*), or micromolar (μM), the products/reactants ratio can be very different. A molar standard state is different from a millimolar standard state. You must remember the units that have been used (even though you've just ignored them) and make sure that both K_{eq} and the products/reactants ratio are expressed in the same units.

Let's do a real example. The hydrolysis of ATP provides energy for virtually everything alive. The K_{eq} for this reaction ($ATP \rightleftharpoons ADP + P_i$) at 25°C and pH 7.0 is about 2.3×10^5 *M*. Notice that the concentration of water has also been ignored here. That's because it's large and relatively constant in biological systems, and putting it in would just change the numbers for everything by the same amount—so it was decided to ignore it.

With a K_{eq} of 2.3×10^5 *M*, the $\Delta G^{0\prime}$ is $-1.36 \log_{10} (2.3 \times 10^5) = -7.3$ kcal/mol. This would be the ΔG if the products/reactants ratio were 1, but it's not. Let's assume that the local concentration of ATP in a cell is 5 m*M*, [ADP] is 60 μM, and $[P_i]$ is 5 m*M* (these are approximately right, but they will vary from cell to cell and at any given time in a cell). Keep in mind that this also means the amount of free energy available from ATP hydrolysis will vary from cell to cell and from time to time.

With these concentrations, the products/reactants ratio becomes

$$\frac{[ADP][P_i]}{[ATP]} = \frac{(6 \times 10^{-5}\ M)\ (5 \times 10^{-3}\ M)}{(5 \times 10^{-3}\ M)}$$

or products/reactants $= 6 \times 10^{-5}$ *M*. Putting all those things into the equation for ΔG,

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^0 + RT\ 1n \frac{[P][Q]}{[A][B]}$$

$$\Delta G = \Delta G^0 + 1.36 \log_{10} (6 \times 10^{-5})$$

With $\Delta G^0 = -7.3$ kcal/mol

$$\Delta G = -7.3 \text{ kcal/mol} - 5.7 \text{ kcal/mol} = -13 \text{ kcal/mol}$$

Because there's so much more ATP than ADP in most cells, we can get more free energy (by -5.7 kcal/mol) out of ATP hydrolysis under physiological conditions than you would think just by looking at the value of $\Delta G^{0\prime}$.

ADDING FREE-ENERGY CHANGES

Free-energy changes for chemical reactions can be added and subtracted to give free-energy changes for other chemical reactions.

Free-energy changes, like some of the other thermodynamic properties, can be added and subtracted—sometimes to let you evaluate a chemical reaction that can't actually be observed. The reason these additions and subtractions of free-energy changes are possible is that the free-energy change observed for a chemical reaction doesn't depend at all on how the overall reaction was accomplished. The jargon is that free-energy changes are *path-independent*. All that matters is *that* you get from point A to point B, not *how*.

ATP hydrolysis can be accomplished directly:

$$\text{ATP} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightleftharpoons \text{ADP} + \text{P}_\text{i} \qquad \Delta G^0 = -7.3$$

or ATP can be hydrolyzed by the following series of chemical reactions:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{ATP} + \text{F-6-P} \rightleftharpoons \text{ADP} + \text{F-1,6-P}_2 & \Delta G^{0\prime} = -4.6 \text{ kcal/mol} \\ \text{F-1,6-P}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightleftharpoons \text{F-6-P} + \text{P}_\text{i} & \Delta G^{0\prime} = -2.7 \text{ kcal/mol} \\ \hline \text{Sum: ATP} + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightleftharpoons \text{ADP} + \text{P}_\text{i} & \Delta G^{0\prime} = -7.3 \text{ kcal/mol} \end{array}$$

If you want to prove to yourself that free energies sum, you can write the equilibrium expressions for the first and second reactions and multiply them together, and you'll get the equilibrium expression for the hydrolysis of ATP. Multiplication is equivalent to the addition of logarithms, so that when you multiply equilibrium constants, you're actually adding free energies (or vice versa).

COUPLING FREE ENERGIES

The free energy of a favorable chemical reaction can be used to make an unfavorable reaction happen.

The formation of a peptide bond (as in proteins) is not a favorable reaction. Hydrolysis of the peptide bond would be the spontaneous reaction:

$$\text{AA}_1\text{—CO}_2^- + {}^+\text{NH}_3\text{—AA}_2 \rightleftharpoons \text{AA}_1\text{—CONH—AA}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \quad \Delta G^{0\prime} - +0.5 \text{ kcal/mol}$$

If we guess that the intracellular concentrations of the amino acids are 1 m*M* each for AA_1 and AA_2, and the dipeptide concentration is also 1 m*M*, the ΔG would actually be +4.6 kcal/mol. This tells you that peptide bonds *cannot* be made under these conditions.

Biologically, the unfavorable formation of a peptide bond is driven by the hydrolysis of ATP and GTP so that the reaction can actually happen:

$$AA_1\text{—}CO_2^- + ATP + tRNA \rightleftharpoons AA_1\text{—}C(=O)\text{—}O\text{—}tRNA + PP_i$$

$$AA_1\text{—}COO\text{—}tRNA + 2GTP + {}^+NH_3\text{—}AA_2 \rightleftharpoons AA_1\text{—}CONH\text{—}AA_2 + tRNA + 2GDP + 2P_i$$

The reaction is pushed even further to completion by the hydrolysis of the pyrophosphate from the first reaction:

$$PP_i + H_2O \rightleftharpoons 2P_i$$

$$\text{Sum: } AA_1 + AA_2 + ATP + 2GTP \rightleftharpoons AA_1\text{—}AA_2 + AMP + 2GDP + 4P_i$$

The formation of a peptide bond with an estimated ΔG^0 of +4.6 kcal/mol is driven by coupling the process to the hydrolysis of 4 high-energy phosphate bonds [estimated ΔG^0 of $4 \times (-7.3$ kcal/mol)]. The overall ΔG^0 for the process would then be (+4.6 kcal/mol − 29.2 kcal/mol = −24.6 kcal/mol). There are numerous examples of the coupling of ATP hydrolysis to otherwise unfavorable reactions. Prime examples are the transport of ions from a compartment that has a low concentration of the ion to a compartment that has a high concentration of the ion. The movement of an ion (or other molecule) against a concentration gradient (from low concentration to high concentration) is not thermodynamically favorable. Ion pumps that concentrate ions against a concentration gradient require either the hydrolysis of ATP or the simultaneous transport of an ion down its concentration gradient. The sole reason for all these couplings of free energy is that if they weren't coupled, the reactions wouldn't happen. Nothing happens if the free-energy change is greater than zero.

THERMODYNAMIC CYCLES

The sum of the free-energy change around any cyclic path must be zero.

The product of equilibrium constants around any cyclic path of reactions must equal 1.

The additivity of free-energy changes can be extended by the idea that free energy doesn't depend on the pathway a chemical reaction takes, just on the identity of the products and the reactants.

Think about a reaction between a small molecule and a protein in which the small molecule (ligand) binds to the protein, forming a protein–ligand complex. Now, let's also suppose that when the protein has ligand bound to the active site, the conformation of the protein is different from when ligand is not bound. We'll call P* the form of the protein with the conformation that is found when the ligand is bound. If we were actually to measure an equilibrium constant for the association reaction (K_{obs}) or a ΔG^0 for the association reaction, we would be measuring the ΔG^0 for a reaction of a protein P with a ligand L to give a protein–ligand complex in which the structure of the protein was different from the structure when ligand was not bound:

$$P + L \overset{K_{obs}}{\rightleftharpoons} P^*L$$

But we can think about this process in two different ways. First, we could say that the ligand binds to the protein P and that this causes the protein to change its conformation to P*:

$$P + L \overset{K_1}{\rightleftharpoons} PL \overset{K_2}{\rightleftharpoons} P^*L$$

Alternatively, we could say that the protein exists in two forms, P and P*, even in the absence of ligand. The ligand picks out the form of the protein P* and binds to it:

$$P + L \overset{K_3}{\rightleftharpoons} P^* + L \overset{K_4}{\rightleftharpoons} P^*L$$

Without any more information, we can't say which of the two possibilities actually happens. The nice thing about thermodynamics is that it doesn't matter. Now let's see if you can be convinced of this. We know we can add free energies of individual reactions to get the free-energy change of another reaction.

	$P + L \rightleftharpoons PL$	ΔG_1	or	K_1
	$PL \rightleftharpoons P^*L$	ΔG_2	or	K_2
Sum:	$P + L \rightleftharpoons P^*L$	$\Delta G_1 + \Delta G_2$	or	K_1K_2

Now do the other path:

$P + L \rightleftharpoons P^* + L$	ΔG_3	or	K_3
$P^* + L \rightleftharpoons P^*L$	ΔG_4	or	K_4
Sum: $P + L \rightleftharpoons P^*L$	$\Delta G_3 + \Delta G_4$	or	K_3K_4

Hopefully, you will have noticed by now that when these two "different" pathways are followed, the overall reaction that has been accomplished is the same and is equal to the reaction we originally called K_{obs}. (If you haven't noticed this, then notice it now—it's the point of this whole section.)

What we've just shown is that

$$K_{obs} = K_3K_4 = K_1K_2$$

or

$$\Delta G_{obs} = \Delta G_1 + \Delta G_2 = \Delta G_3 + \Delta G_4$$

Another way of saying the algebra in words is that regardless of how we go from P + L to P*L, the free-energy change is the same. The ΔG for all paths is the same—so are the equilibrium constants. Free-energy change is independent of path. We can also show this on what is called a *thermodynamic box*. The top and right of Fig. 24-2 are one pathway, the left and bottom are another, and the diagonal is a third. For any ther-

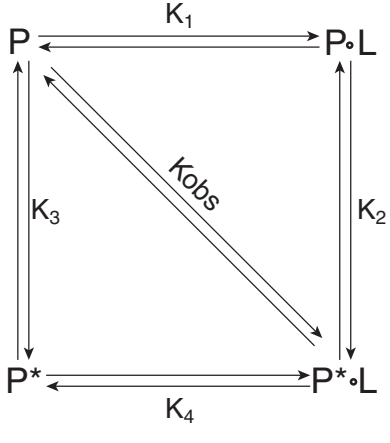


Figure 24-2
A THERMODYNAMIC CYCLE describing a change in the conformation of a protein that accompanies the binding of a substrate.

modynamic box, the sum of the free-energy changes going all the way around the box must be zero—you're starting and stopping in the same place. Since the sign of ΔG depends on direction, if you go through a step backward to the way it was defined, you need to change the sign of ΔG for that step or take the reciprocal of the equilibrium constant. Going completely around the box above using the equilibrium constants gives

$$K_1 K_2 \frac{1}{K_3} \frac{1}{K_4} = \frac{K_1 K_2}{K_3 K_4} = 1$$

The utility of thermodynamic boxes lies in using them as thinking tools—particularly in cases in which there are alternative ways of thinking about a particular chemical process. The preceding example for a protein structural change coupled to the binding of a ligand illustrates the point. Along the top and right of the box, we would argue that the ligand bound to the protein and caused the conformation change in the protein. By the left and bottom pathway we would argue that the ligand just trapped one of two normal conformations of the protein and pulled the equilibrium toward the ligand–protein complex. The two pathways along the edges of the box give different pictures of reality, both of which are thermodynamically equivalent. The other take-home message is that without additional experimental data, you can't really decide between the two alternative mechanisms. What the box tells you is that before you can really decide which mechanism is correct, you've got to find evidence for PL (top pathway) or P* (bottom pathway).

$\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S$

ΔG = free energy (<0 for favorable reactions). This is the useful energy that can be obtained from a chemical reaction.

ΔH = enthalpy. This is the net amount of energy available from changes in bonding between reactants and products. If heat is given off, the reaction is favorable and $\Delta H < 0$.

ΔS = entropy. This is the change in the amount of order during a reaction. Order is unfavorable ($\Delta S < 0$). Disorder is favorable ($\Delta S > 0$).

The free-energy change for a chemical reaction, ΔG, is a balance between two factors—heat and organization. Other things being equal, reactions that give off heat are more favorable than those that don't. Reactions that make more disordered products also tend to be more

favorable than reactions that make more organized products. Heat energy arises from chemical reactions by making and breaking chemical bonds. But not all the heat generated from a chemical reaction can be used. Some of the heat energy may have to be used to organize or order the products of the reaction.

• **ΔH (ENTHALPY CHANGE)** A reaction gives off or takes up heat because of changes in the chemical bonding that accompany the reaction. This can amount to forming more bonds in the products than in the reactants, or it can mean that the bonds in the reactants are more energetic than the bonds in the products. Reactions that give off heat (called *exothermic*) form more stable bonds in the products than in the reactants and tend to be more favorable than reactions that don't give off heat. A ΔH (enthalpy change) that is negative (heat given off) makes ΔG more negative and favors the reaction in the direction written. Heat can be considered a reactant or product in a chemical reaction. You can even write it down if you like.

• **ΔS (ENTROPY)** Most chemical reactions are also accompanied by a change in the organization of the reactants and products. For example, the protein-folding reaction takes a structureless, random protein and converts it into a folded and well-organized three-dimensional structure. The structure has become organized, and organization is unfavorable—it doesn't happen spontaneously. *Entropy* is the word given to disorder (the opposite of organized). High-entropy systems are disorganized, whereas low-entropy systems are organized. As before, it's products minus reactants. If the products are more organized (low entropy) than the reactants (high entropy), the ΔS is negative, but the contribution to the free energy, which is $-T\Delta S$, is positive—unfavorable. If organization accompanies a chemical reaction, it makes an unfavorable contribution.

DRIVING FORCE

The factor contributing the most to the negative ΔG. The driving force makes it happen.

Driving force is a term that is used to describe what provides most of the favorable free-energy change for a chemical reaction, that is, what makes it happen. We know that the ΔG for a chemical reaction that happens in the direction written must be less than zero. If, for example, there is a chemical reaction in which the net enthalpy change (ΔH) is zero or

positive and the reaction still happens, we know that the entropy contribution must be in the favorable direction (and positive). Otherwise, ΔG couldn't be negative. In this case, we would say that the reaction is entropically driven (i.e., the reaction occurs because of the increase in entropy—increased disorder—that accompanies the reaction).

Driving force can also be used to denote the physical interaction that provides the most negative free energy to an overall reaction. For example, the driving force for the folding of proteins is the hydrophobic interaction. Other forces contribute to a favorable protein-folding reaction; however, the largest contribution comes from the packing of the hydrophobic residues into the interior of the protein.

To make it more meaningful, let's take the reaction for the formation of a hydrogen bond in water:

$$\text{—C═O···HOH} + \text{H}_2\text{O···H—N—R} \rightleftharpoons \text{R—C═O···HN—R} + \text{H}_2\text{O···HOH}$$

The reactants, on the left, are a carbonyl oxygen atom that, in the absence of any other hydrogen-bond donor, forms a hydrogen bond to water, and a hydrogen from an amide that is also hydrogen-bonded to water. The reaction involves bringing the C═O and HN-groups together, breaking the two hydrogen bonds to water, and then forming a new hydrogen bond between the C═O and HN-groups and a new hydrogen bond involving the two water molecules. Will this reaction happen?

Let's look at the enthalpy change. We have two hydrogen bonds on the left and two hydrogen bonds on the right. They're between different species, but the overall reaction is just a rearrangement of hydrogen bonds without actually changing the number. One would think that the ΔH for this reaction should be near zero, and it is. But if we're talking about a hydrogen bond forming in a protein in which the carbonyl oxygen and the amide nitrogen are positioned at a good distance and angle for hydrogen-bond formation, or if the hydrogen-bond donor or acceptor is charged, one of the hydrogen bonds that's formed could be a little bit stronger than the ones involving water. The ΔH could be a little bit negative.

Now try entropy. On the left side of the reaction, the hydrogen-bond donors and acceptors are free to move through three-dimensional space independently. They are free. There is some restriction, however, because they are interacting with a water molecule. But water molecules are everywhere, and only a small number of the total water molecules have restricted motion. The left side of the reaction is reasonably disorganized. The right side of the reaction has the peptide hydrogen-bond donor and acceptor forming a hydrogen-bonded complex. In this complex, the

donor and acceptor must move through three-dimensional space together (that's what a complex is). Each molecule has lost some of its freedom to move independently (each can still vibrate and rotate some internal bonds). The two hydrogen-bonded water molecules are just plain water—comparable in organizational state to the hydrogen bonds on the left side of the reaction. Altogether, the right side of the reaction is considerably more organized than the left. The reaction, then, is accompanied by a decrease in entropy (an organization)—an unfavorable proposition.

In balance, the small decrease in enthalpy ($\Delta H < 0$) is more than offset by a large decrease in entropy ($\Delta S < 0$) so that the overall reaction is unfavorable. Thus, one would not expect to see the formation of single hydrogen bonds between two peptides in water. This is what is found.

In proteins and some small peptides, one does see hydrogen-bond formation. Intramolecular hydrogen-bond formation is not as entropically unfavorable as intermolecular hydrogen-bond formation, so that intramolecular hydrogen bonds (as in an α helix) are more likely to form on entropic grounds. In addition, hydrogen-bond formation in DNA and proteins is cooperative. It may be hard (entropically) to form the first hydrogen bond, but after it's formed it becomes easier and easier to form additional hydrogen bonds—less and less entropy loss is required for forming additional hydrogen bonds.

KINETICS

Alarms sound faster, eyes go blank quickly, and a long sigh can be heard.

Thermodynamics tells you *what* will happen—given enough time. Kinetics supplies the *when*. Don't get too bogged down by all of this. Look back at the trivia sorter to put it in perspective. However, if you really want to at least partially understand what kinetics is about, proceed.

VELOCITY

How fast
Change in concentration with time
M/min

Kinetics is all about change with time.

$$A \longrightarrow P$$

For a simple chemical reaction such as the conversion of A to P we can ask, How fast? *How fast* is measured in terms of velocity—the change in the concentration of substrate or product with time.

$$\text{Velocity} = v = \frac{\Delta[P]}{\Delta\text{time}}$$

Velocity, v, has units of M/min.

TRANSITION STATE THEORY

Free energy of activation: Energy required to raise the energy of the reactant to the energy of the transition state

Transition state: Highest-energy arrangement of atoms that occurs between the reactants and product

All chemical reactions don't occur with the same velocity; some are faster than others. Before a reaction can happen, the individual molecules of A must have enough thermal energy to break or make the chemical bonds that constitute the chemical reaction. A chemical reaction can be viewed as being blocked by a barrier (Fig. 24-3). This barrier keeps the reaction from happening instantaneously (if it weren't there, we would all be CO_2 and water). If the barrier is low, the reaction is fast, but if the barrier is high, the reaction is slow. The energy that a molecule of A must gain before it will undergo the chemical reaction (cross over the barrier) is called the *free energy of activation* ($\Delta G^{\ddagger}$). The energy (usually) comes from thermal vibration of the molecule. The activation energy determines how fast a given reaction happens.

Transition state theory tells us that when a molecule of substrate has enough energy to jump the barrier, its structure is intermediate between that of the substrate and that of the product. Some bonds are stretched, partially broken, partially formed, and so forth. The arrangement of atoms that has the highest energy between the substrate and product is called the *transition state*. Transition state theory assumes that the transition state doesn't exist for more than the time required for one bond vibration (about 10^{-15} s)—so the transition state really doesn't exist, but we can talk about it as if it did. The ΔG's of activation are always positive. The more positive, the slower.

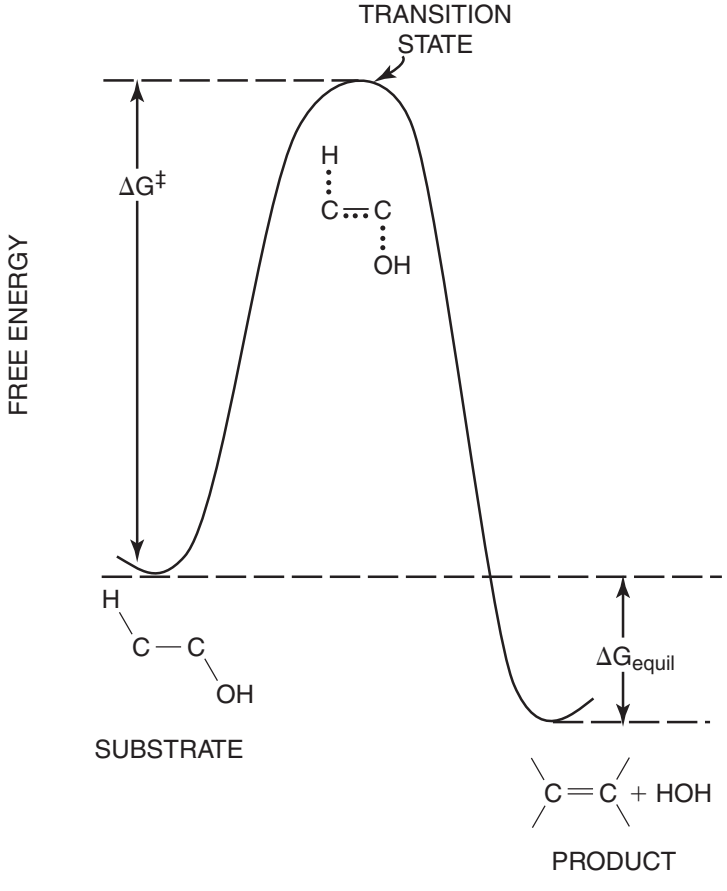


Figure 24-3
A **FREE-ENERGY REACTION COORDINATE DIAGRAM** shows the free energy of the substrate, product, and transition state of a chemical reaction. It tells you how favorable the overall reaction is (ΔG_{eq}) and how fast ($\Delta G^{\ddagger}$).

RATE CONSTANTS

First-order: $v = k$ [A]
k with units of time^{-1} (min^{-1} or s^{-1})
Second-order: $v = k$ [A][B]
k with units of concentration^{-1} time^{-1} (e.g., M^{-1} s^{-1})
Zero-order: $v = k$
k with units of concentration time^{-1} (e.g., M s^{-1})

Rate constants are numbers that tell us how fast a reaction happens. They come in a few different flavors and have different units depending on the type of reaction they're describing.

• FIRST-ORDER REACTIONS The velocity, or rate, of a reaction is the change in substrate concentration per unit time. For a simple reaction of the type A → P, the velocity of the formation of P or the disappearance of A is found (usually) to be proportional to the concentration of A that is present at the time the velocity is measured:

$$v = \frac{-d[\mathrm{A}]}{d\mathrm{t}} = k\,[\mathrm{A}]$$

This equation is known as a *rate law*. It tells you how the rate of the reaction depends on the concentration(s) of the substrate. The order of the reaction is defined as the power to which the substrate concentration is raised when it appears in the rate law. In the preceding case, [A] is raised to the first power ($[\mathrm{A}]^1$), so the reaction is said to be first-order with respect to the A concentration, or simply *first-order in A*. The rate constant k is a proportionality constant thrown in so that the equation works and so that the units work out. Since v must have units of molar per second (*M*/s) and [A] has molar units (*M*), then k must have units of reciprocal seconds (1/s or s^{-1}).

For reactions that are first-order, the rate of the reaction depends on how much substrate is present at any time ([A]) (Fig. 24-4). As the reaction proceeds, substrate is used up and converted to product. As the substrate is used up, the velocity decreases. The rate is not constant with time. The fraction of A molecules that have sufficient energy to react is constant under a given set of reaction conditions. If 100 out of 1000 molecules have enough thermal energy to react, after the reaction of these molecules has occurred, there will be 90 molecules out of the remaining 900 that have enough energy to react. Since the velocity decreases as the substrate is used up, a plot of [A] against time is a curved line; the slope decreases with time. As you can see, as the reaction proceeds, the slope (velocity) decreases. To actually find out how the concentration of substrate changes with time (so we can actually draw the graph), we've got to do a little bit of calculus (just kidding). Let's just write down the answer:

$$A = A_0 e^{-\mathrm{kt}}$$

Here A is the concentration of substrate A at any time t, A_0 is the initial concentration of A at time zero, and k is the first-order rate constant. The

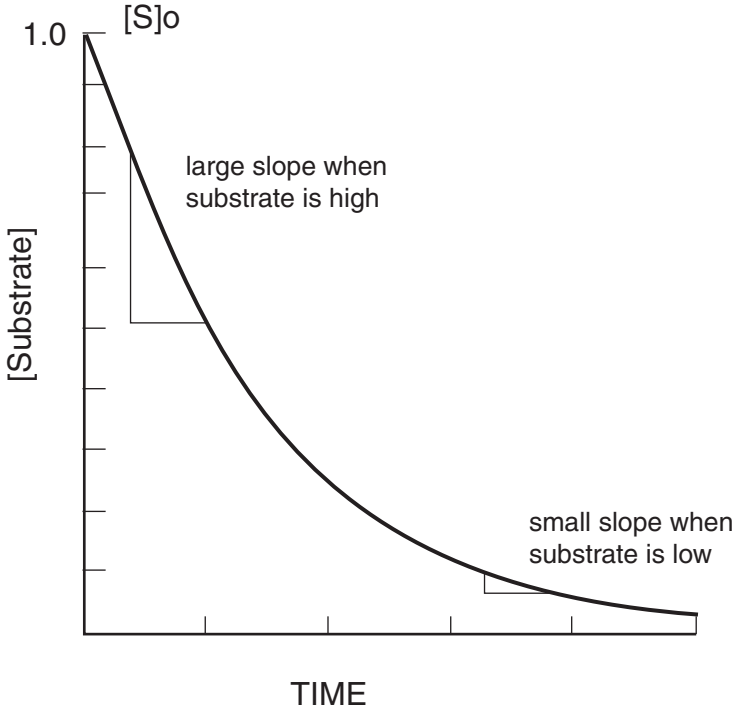


Figure 24-4
For a **FIRST-ORDER REACTION**, the velocity decreases as the concentration of substrate decreases as it is converted to product. As a result, a plot of substrate concentration against time is a curved line.

concentration of A at any time is an exponential function of time. At short times ($t = 0$), $e^{-kt} = 1$ ($e^0 = 1$), and $A = A_0$.

One consequence of a first-order reaction is that it takes a constant amount of time for half the remaining substrate to be converted to product—regardless of how much of the reactant is present. It takes the same amount of time to convert 100,000 A molecules to 50,000 P molecules as it takes to convert 10 A molecules to 5 P's. A first-order reaction has a constant half-time $t_{1/2}$.

When half the initial amount of A has disappeared,

$$A = 0.5A_0$$

Putting this into the exponential equation,

$$0.5A_0 = A_0\, e^{-kt_{1/2}}$$

Cancelling the A_0,

$$0.5 = e^{-kt_{1/2}}$$

Taking the ln of both sides,

$$\begin{aligned} \ln 0.5 &= -kt_{1/2} \\ \ln \tfrac{1}{2} &= -kt_{1/2} \\ -\ln 2 &= -kt_{1/2} \\ \ln 2 &= kt_{1/2} \\ 0.692 &= kt_{1/2} \\ \frac{0.692}{\mathrm{k}} &= t_{1/2} \end{aligned}$$

All that arithmetic is just to show you that the half-time for a first-order reaction depends only on k, not on how much A you have to start with. The whole point is that the bigger the k, the shorter the half-time, the faster the reaction.

An exponential function that describes the increase in product during a first-order reaction looks a lot like a hyperbola that is used to describe Michaelis-Menten enzyme kinetics. It's not. Don't get them confused. If you can't keep them separated in your mind, then just forget all that you've read, jump ship now, and just figure out the Michaelis-Menten description of the velocity of enzyme-catalyzed reaction—it's more important to the beginning biochemistry student anyway.

• **SECOND-ORDER REACTIONS** For a second-order reaction, the velocity depends on the concentration of two molecules. Reactions of the type

$$\mathrm{A} + \mathrm{B} \longrightarrow \mathrm{P}$$

usually (not always—but don't worry about the exceptions) follow a rate law of the type

$$v = k\,[\mathrm{A}][\mathrm{B}]$$

where the velocity at any time depends on the concentrations of both the reactants. Change either of them and you change the rate of P formation. The reason is that both A and B have to have enough energy to react with each other and only a fraction of each has the necessary energy.

We say that the reaction is first-order with respect to the concentration of A, first-order with respect to the concentration of B, and second-

order overall. The overall reaction order is the sum of all the individual reaction orders of the substrates that appear in the rate law. If the rate law were $v = k[A]^2[B]$, the rate would be second-order in A, first-order in B, and third-order overall. The units of k for a second-order reaction are reciprocal molar seconds (M^{-1} s^{-1}), again to make the units match.

Just as with the first-order case, the velocity (rate) of product appearance (or substrate disappearance) changes as the reaction proceeds. Most of the time, one of the reactants (A or B, it doesn't matter which) will be present in large excess over the other reactant. For example, let's say we start a reaction between A and B in which the A concentration is 5 μM but the B is 0.5 mM (100 times higher than A). At the beginning of the reaction the concentration of B is 0.5 mM; after the reaction is over and all the A is used up (converted to P), the concentration of B is 0.495 mM. Over the entire reaction, B has changed only 1%, an insignificant amount. The concentration of B has remained constant over the entire reaction, and all the changes in velocity that have occurred resulted from the decrease in the A concentration during the reaction. Since k[B] is a constant, the disappearance of A appears first-order (i.e., exponential) and the observed first-order rate constant (k_{obs}) will be given by $k[B_0]$, where k is the second-order rate constant (units of M^{-1} s^{-1}) and $[B_0]$ is the constant concentration of B that is present. A plot of the observed first-order rate constant for the disappearance of A (or appearance of P) against the concentration of B is a straight line whose slope is k, the second-order rate constant (Fig. 24-5).

• ZERO-ORDER REACTIONS Reactions that are zero-order in everything follow the rate law

$$v = k$$

In contrast to the other reaction orders, the velocity of a zero-order reaction does not change with the concentration of the substrate or with time (Fig. 24-6). The velocity (slope) is a constant and k has the units molar per minute (M/min, or M min^{-1}). Reactions that are zero-order in absolutely everything are rare. However, it is common to have reactions that may be zero-order in the reactant that you happen to be watching. Let's think of a two-step reaction.

$$A + B \underset{k_{-1}}{\overset{k_1}{\rightleftharpoons}} \text{Intermediate} \xrightarrow{k_2} P$$

where we are measuring the appearance of P. Both k_2 and k_{-1} are first-order while k_1 is second-order, first-order in A and first-order in B.

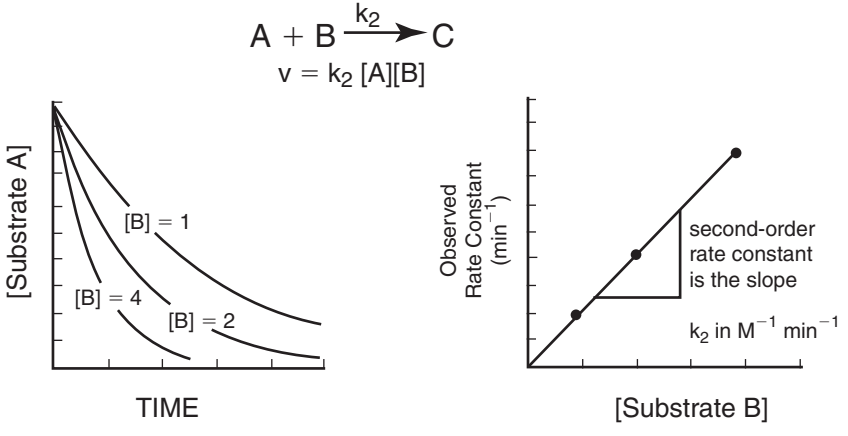


Figure 24-5
The rate of **SECOND-ORDER REACTIONS** depends on the concentration of both substrates. If the concentration of B is constant. A disappears in a first-order fashion, but the rate constant for A disappearance depends on the concentration of B.

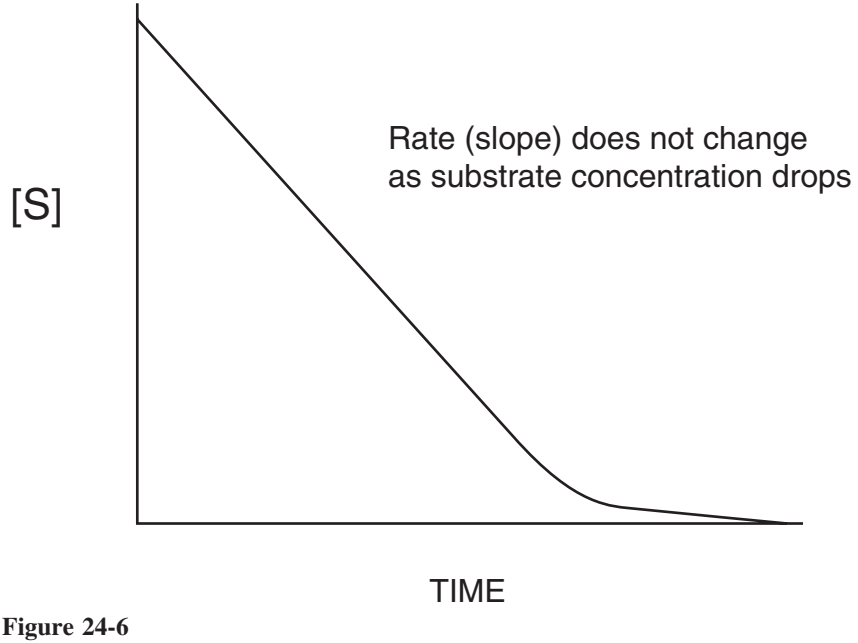


Figure 24-6
The rate of a **ZERO-ORDER REACTION** does not change as the substrate concentration changes. As a result, a plot of substrate concentration against time is a straight line (the velocity is constant with time).

Suppose that the reaction between A and B to give the intermediate is very fast and very favorable. If we have more B than A to start with, all the A is converted instantly into the intermediate. If we're following P, what we observe is the formation of P from the intermediate with the rate constant k_2. If we increase the amount of B, the rate of P formation won't increase as long as there is enough B around to rapidly convert all the A to the intermediate. In this situation, the velocity of P formation is independent of how much B is present. The reaction is zero-order with respect to the concentration of B. This is a special case. Not all reactions that go by this simple mechanism are zero-order in B. It depends on the relative magnitudes of the individual rate constants. At a saturating concentration of substrate, many enzyme-catalyzed reactions are zero-order in substrate concentration; however, they are still first-order in enzyme concentration (see Chap. 8).

RATE CONSTANTS AND MECHANISM

Complex mechanisms can show simple kinetic behavior.

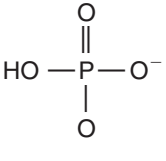
Even relatively complex reactions can behave very simply, and 99 percent of the time, understanding simple first-, second-, and zero-order kinetics is more than good enough. With very complicated mechanistic schemes with multiple intermediates and multiple pathways to the products, the kinetic behavior can get very complicated. But more often than not, even complex mechanisms show simple kinetic behavior. In complex mechanisms, one step (called the *rate-determining* step) is often much slower than all the rest. The kinetics of the slow step then dictates the kinetics of the overall reaction. If the slow step is simple, the overall reaction appears simple.

· A P P E N D I X ·

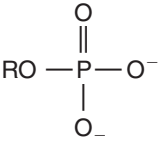
CHEMICAL STRUCTURE AND FUNCTIONAL GROUPS

Functional Groups

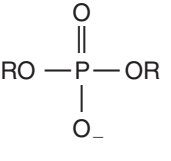
RNH_2 amine	$R_2C{=}NH$ imine	R-C(=O)NH-R amide	
ROH alcohol	R-C(=O)-H aldehyde	R-C(=O)R ketone	R-C(=O)-OH carboxylic acid
R-C(=O)-OH ester			
RSH thiol	RSR sulfide	RSSR disulfide	R-(C=O)-SR thiol ester
CH_3CH_3 alkane	$CH_2{=}CH_2$ alkene	HC=CH alkyne	



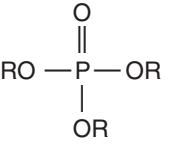
phosphate



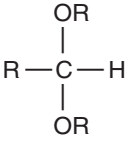
phospho-
monoester



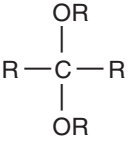
phospho-
diester



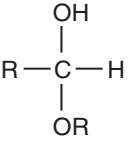
phospho-
triester



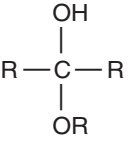
acetal



ketal

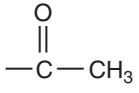


hemiacetal

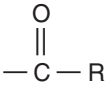


hemiketal

R-groups



acetyl

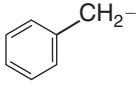


acyl

hydroxyl

amino

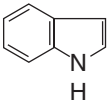
carboxyl



benzyl

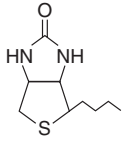
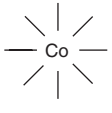
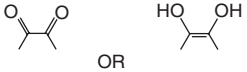
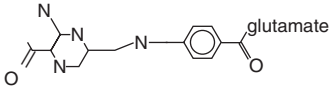
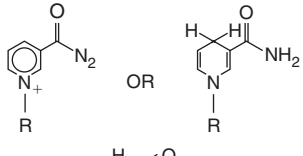
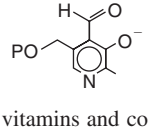
phenyl

imidazole



indole

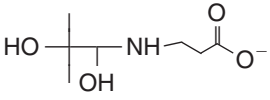
VITAMINS[1]

Name	Structural Feature	Reactions
Biotin		most transfers of CO_2 pyruvate carboxylase
Cobalamins (B_{12})		methylmalonyl-CoA mutase (odd-chain fatty acid metabolism) methionine synthesis
Ascorbic acid		hydroxylation of proline and lysine in collagen/elastin synthesis nor-adrenaline synthesis
Folic acid		deoxy-TMP synthesis from deoxy-UMP; required for DNA synthesis purine and pyrimidine synthesis one-carbon metabolism
Nicotinamide		oxidations and reductions throughout metabolism (NADH, NADPH)
Pyridoxal (B_6)		transaminases, decarboxylases, epimerases; almost everyting to do with amino acid metabolism

[1] The structures of the vitamins and cofactors shown in this table are not complete structures. Only the functional parts of the molecules are shown.

VITAMINS (*Cont.*)

Pantothenate



a part of coenzyme A;
you'll never see it alone

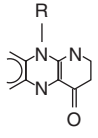
Coenzyme A

BIG STRUCTURE—SH

fatty acid synthesis and oxidation; carries groups at acyl (acid) oxidation state

(i.e., CoA-S–C(=O)–R)

Riboflavin

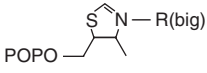


cofactor for oxidation and reduction

succinate dehydrogenase – TCA

transfer of

Thiamine



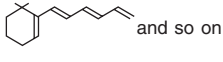
pruvate dehydrogenase
α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase (TCA)

HMP-pathway—transaldolase and transketolase

Lipoic acid

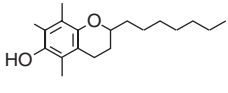
oxidations and reductions and acyl transfer – pyruvate dehydrogenease
α-ketoglutarate dehydrogenase

Vitamin A
(retinoic acid)



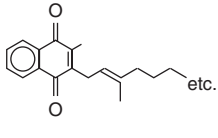
visual pigment and other, unknown functions

Vitamin E
(α-tocopherol)



lipid-soluble antioxidant to protect membranes

Vitamin K



carboxylation at glutamate residues in proteins of blood clotting system to create Ca^{2+} binding site

INDEX

A

acetal, 284
acetoacetate, 223
acetoacetyl-CoA and ketone bodies, 223–224
acetyl group
  structure, 284
acetyl-CoA, 156
  no connection to glucose, 200
  TCA-cycle and, 154
  tracking carbon atoms in, 238–240
  transport from mitochondria, 158
acid
  definition, 242
  dissociation constant, 244
  dissociation constants-table, 243
  weak, 244
acid-base
  behavior, 241–260
  catalysis, 94
  equation, 249
  imbalance, 258–260
  imbalance table, 260
  stoichiometry, 245–246
  titration, 245
acidic groups on proteins, 254
acidosis, 258
aconitase, 239
  geometry of, 240
  recognition of citrate, 240
actinomycin D, 38
activation energy, 82, 276
active site, 81, 97
active site residues, 81
active transport pumps, 29
acyl group structure, 284
adenylate cyclase, 196
adipose tissue
  metabolic role of, 212–213
  response to metabolic signals, 212–213
agarose, 65
alanine cycle, 222–223
aldoase, 236–237
aligned recombination, 47
alkalosis, 257–260
alkane, structure of, 284
alkene, structure of, 284
alkyne, structure of, 284
allosteric effectors, 121
allosterism, 117
  concerted model, 119
alternative splicing, 54
amide, structure of, 284
amine
  pK_a, 243
  structure of, 284
amino acids
  acidic, 254
  acidic and basic, 7
  apolar, 8
  degradation, 187
  essential, 187
  glucogenic, 187, 210–211
  hydrophilic, 8
  hydrophobic, 7
  ketogenic, 187, 211
  metabolism, 186–189
  nitrogen disposal from, 211
  nonessential, 186
  polar, 8
  sidechains, 7
  synthesis, 186
amino group, structure of, 284
aminoacyl tRNA, 57
aminoacyl tRNA synthetases, 59
amounts, 96
amphipathic, 14
amplifiers, 125, 136–137
anaerobic glycolysis, 192
anaplerotic reactions, 192–193
annealing, 38
antibody
  diagram, 50–51

antibody *(Continued)*
recombination in, 47–49
Western blots and, 67
antimycin, 181
antiparallel, 19
antisense strand, 41, 53, 55
apolar, 8
APRTase, 228
arginine in urea cycle, 226
arginosuccinate, 226
arsenate, 144
ascorbic acid
function, 285
structure, 285
aspartate transcarbamoylase, 231
assay, 98
curvature in, 100–101
ATP
fatty acid synthesis cost, 157
gluconeogenesis cost, 145–146
glycogen cost, 150
glycogen yield, 150
glycolysis yield, 144
metabolism, 192
β-oxidation yield, 166
synthesis, 176, 192
ATPase, 176
as membrane pumps, 31–32
atractyloside, 181
autophosphorylation, 129
autoradiography, 66

B

B_6. *see* pyridoxal
B_{12}, 172
function, 285
and one-carbon metabolism, 234
structure, 285
base pairing, 35
bases, pK_a, 245
basic amino acids, 254
basic groups on protein, 254
benzyl group, structure, 284
bicarbonate
reclamation by the kidney, 258
bicarbonate buffer, 254
equation, 256
binding, ligand, 20
biotin, 172
function, 285
and pyruvate carboxylase, 193
structure, 285
blood pH, 257
blotting, 67
diagram, 68
Northern, 67
Southern, 67
Western, 67
bongkrekate, 181
brain
metabolic role of, 213
response to metabolic signals, 213
buffers, 248
capacity, 251
example, 249

C

calcium, 134–136
cAMP, 133–134
glucagon and, 196
glycogen and, 149
protein kinase activation by, 197
synthesis by adenylate cyclase, 197
capping mRNA, 53, 55
carbamoyl phosphate, 226
and pyrimidine metabolism, 231
carbamoyl phosphate synthetase, 226
carbon dioxide, 254
breathing and, 256
dissolved, 256
pK_a, 243
carbon oxidation states, 233
carboxyl group structure, 284
carboxylic acid
pK_a, 243
carnitine shuttle, 164
diagram, 166
CAT (RNA polyermase promoter), 55
catalysis, 83
acid-base, 94
chemical, 93
electrostatic, 93
cDNA, 71

cDNA library, 71
chemical catalysis, 93
chemical structures, 284
chimera, 72
cholesterol, 24
  effect on membrane fluidity, 27–28
citrate
  source of cytosolic acetyl-CoA, 158–159
  symmetry of, 240
citrulline, 226
cloning, 70
  screening, 71
  selecting, 71
  steps in, 70
  vector, 71–72
Cobalamin. *see* B_{12}
  structure, 285
codon, 59
codon table, 59
coenzyme A
  function, 286
  structure, 286
concentration, 96
concentration gradient, 29
concepts, 2
concerted allosteric model, 119
conformation change, 84
conjugate acid and base, 244–245
connection of storage pools, 213
consensus sequence, 56
cooperation of tissues, 211
cooperativity in enzymes, 117–118
  negative, 117–118
  positive, 117–118
Cori cycle diagram, 221
coupling free energies, 268
cyanide and electron transport, 181
cyclase, 134
cystathionine, 234
cysteine synthesis, 234
cytoplasm, 26

D

decarboxylation, 188
deletion mutagenesis, 75
ΔG. *see* free energy
denaturation
  DNA, 37
  protein, 15
de novo purine synthesis, 228
deoxynucleotide synthesis, 228–229
diabetes, 194–196
dideoxynucleotide sequencing, 73–74
dielectric constant, 8
dihydroxy acetone phosphate, 236
dinitrophenol, 180
directionality in DNA/RNA synthesis, 41
disulfide structure, 284
DNA
  antisense strand, 41, 53, 55
  base pairs, 35
  B-form, 36
  chimeric, 72
  codon, 59
  consensus sequence, 56
  directions, 19, 28
  gels, 65
  major groove, 37
  metabolism, 40
  methylation, 55
  mutagenesis, 72, 75
  pitch, 38
  polymerase, 43
  probe, 67
  promoter, 55–56
  replication, 42–43
  sense strand, 41, 53, 55
  sequencing, 73–74
  stability, 35–37
  structure, 35
  supercoiling, 44
  Z-form, 36
DNA polymerase
  from prokaryotes and eukaryotes, 46
  types, 45
DNP (dinitrophenol), 180
driving force, 273–274

E

Eadie-Hofstee plot, 111–112
effector-allosteric, 121

effectors, 125
effectors of metabolism, 198
electrochemical gradient, 180
electron transport. *see also* oxidative phosphorylation, 173–182
  ATP yield from, 173–174
  connections, 176
  diagram, 175
  flavin-linked substrates, 176
  inhibitors, 180–182
  P/O rations, 178
  regulation, 178
  sites of ATP synthesis, 176–177
  substrate shuttles, 177
  uncouplers, 179
electroporation, 73
electrostatic catalysis, 93
elongation factor, 58
endergonic reactions, 263
enhancer, 49–50
enthalpy, 273
  and free energy, 273
entropy, 10, 87–88
  ad free energy, 273
  and organization, 273
enzyme
  active site, 81, 97–98
  active-site residues, 81
  allosterism and cooperativity, 117
  assay, 98
  catalysis, 83
  conformation change, 84
  hyperbolic kinetics, 104
  inhibition, 113
  initial velocity, 100
  interaction with substrate, 81
  kinetic constants, 105–107
  kinetic plots, 111–112
  kinetics, 96
  mechanism, 80, 101–102
  Michaelis-Menten equation, 103
  nomenclature, 96
  proteolytic, 92
  rate acceleration, 108
  restriction, 62
  saturation, 104–105
  specific activity, 97–100
  steady-state, 109
  transition state binding, 91
  transition state stabilization, 88
  units, 97
  velocity *vs.* substrate, 105
epinephrine, 197–198
  and protein phosphorylation, 197–198
equilibrium constant, 262
  relation to ΔG, 263
  and thermodynamics, 262
ester structure, 284
ethidium bromide, 38, 66
exams, 2
excitement, 194–196
  metabolic movements in, 217–219
  metabolic pathways during, 220
  metabolic signals in, 217
exergonic reactions, 263
exon, 55
exothermic reaction, 273
expression vector, 72

F

facilitated diffusion channels, 29
farnesyl, 26
fasting, 194–196
  diagram, 216
  metabolic movements in, 216
  metabolic responses to, 214
fat
  can't be converted to carbohydrate, 207
  as energy storage, 207
  metabolic movements, 207
  metabolic pathway, 207–209
  metabolic scheme, 208
  organ utilization, 207
  as a storage molecule, 193
fatty acids
  delta nomenclature, 160
  desaturation, 160
  elongation, 160
  naming, 161–162
  nomenclature, 160–162
  numbering, 160
  omega nomenclature, 160
  oxidation, 164–172. *See* β-oxidation

fatty acid synthase, 156
  reactions, 160
fatty acid synthesis
  citrate and, 158
  connections, 157
  diagram, 156
  energy costs, 157
  equation, 159
  function, 156
  location, 156
  regulation, 157
2,6-FBP. *see* fructose-2,6-bisphosphate
feeding, 194
  metabolic diagram, 215
  metabolic movements during, 214
  metabolic response to, 214
  metabolic signals in, 214
F_1F_0 ATPase, 176
first-order reaction, 8, 278–279
  equation, 278
  half-time, 279
  time course—diagram, 279
  velocity of—diagram, 279
fluid-mosaic model, 26
folding of proteins, 18
folic acid
  and amino acid metabolism, 188
  function, 285
  oxidation states, 235
  structure, 285
formyl tetrahydrofolate, 235
free energy (ΔG), 263
  of activation, 276
  adding, 268
  calculating, 266
  calculating-example, 266
  coupling, 268
  definition, 264–266
  ΔG^0, 265
  $\Delta G^{0'}$, 266
  diagram, 264
  equation, 263
  example, 266
  and protein synthesis, 268–269
  relation to enthalpy and entropy, 273
  relation to equilibrium constant, 263
  standard state, 265
  units, 266–267
  useful work and, 264
fructose-1,6-bisphosphatase, 142, 201
fructose-2,6-bisphosphatase, 204
  effects of phosphorylation, 204
fructose-1,6-bisphosphate, 142
fructose-2,6-bisphosphate, 198
  during excitement, 219
  effects on glycolysis and gluconeogenesis, 203–204
  liver, 204
  muscle, 204
  synthesis and degradation, 203
functional groups structure, 284
futile cycle, 200–201

G

gels
  agarose, 65
  DNA, 65
gene
  deletion, 47
  duplication, 47
  expression-regulation, 49–50, 53
  regulation, 49–50, 53
genomic library, 71
geranylgeranyl, 26
glossary, 287–318
glucagon, 196–197
  and cAMP, 197
  and increased protein phosphorylation, 196–197
gluconeogenesis, 145–146
  absence in muscle, 145
  alanine as source, 145–146
  ATP costs, 146
  connections, 145
  diagram, 142
  effect of fructose-2,6-bisphosphate, 198
  equations, 146
  fructose-2,6-bisphosphate regulation, 146
  function, 145
  glucagon effect, 145–146
  glycerol and, 145–146
  insulin effect, 145–146

gluconeogenesis *(Continued)*
location, 145
regulation, 145–146
glucose
conversion to pyruvate, 236
effect of glucagon, 196–197
effect of insulin, 195–196
epithelial cells and, 32
lack of synthesis by muscle, 205
maintaining supplies, 192
metabolism of labeled molecule, 236
molecular signals for, 198
numbering, 236
glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase, 184
glutathione, 184
glycerol, 146
glycerol phosphate shuttle, 177
glycogen
ATP cost for synthesis, 150
ATP yield, 150
branch points, 151–152
branching, 152
connections, 148
debranching, 151–152
degradation diagram, 149
depletion, 213
enzymes and, 149
function, 147
glucose-6-phosphate effect, 150
insulin and glucagon and, 205
location, 147
metabolic diagram, 206
metabolic movements, 205
metabolic regulation, 204
regulation, 148
regulation by phosphorylation, 148
as storage form of glucose, 204
as a storage molecule, 193
structure, 151–152
synthase, 148
synthesis diagram, 149
glycogen debrancher, 151–152
glycogen phosphorylase, 148
glycolipid, 24–25
glycolysis, 141, 145
anaerobic, 143, 145
arsenate effect, 144
ATP from, 144
connections, 143
diagram, 142
effect of fructose-2,6-bisphosphate, 198
enzymes, 142
epinephrine, 143
equations, 144
fructose-2,6-bisphosphate, 143
function, 143
glucagon, 143
insulin, 143
lactate from, 144–145
phosphorylation, 143
pyruvate from, 145
red cells and, 192
regulation, 143
tracing labeled carbons, 236
G protein, 131–132, 136, 196
gradient
membranes and, 28
guanine nucleotide exchange factors, 132
guanine nucleotide release proteins, 132

H

hairpin, 38
half-time, 279
Hanes-Wolf plot, 111–112
helix, 12
hemiacetal structure, 284
hemiketal structure, 284
Henderson-Hasselbalch equation, 249
deriving, 251
heterotropic effectors, 117
hexose monophosphate pathway, 183–185
HGPRTase, 228
high energy signals, 198
HMP pathway, 183–185
equations, 183
regulation, 183
hnRNA, 55
homocysteine, 234
homologous recombination, 47
homotropic effectors, 117
hydrochloric acid pK_a, 243
hydrogen bonding, 11
cooperativity, 275
DNA, 35

enthalpy changes in, 274
entropy changes in, 274
thermodynamics of, 274
hydrophobic interaction, 9
3-hydroxyacyl-CoA, 169
hydroxybutyrate, 223–224
hydroxyl group structure, 284
hydroxymethylglutaryl-CoA, 224
hyperbolic kinetics, 103–104
hyperchromicity, 38
hyperventilation, 257
hypoventilation, 257
hypoxanthine, 229
hypoxanthine-guanine phosphoriboxyltransferase (HGPRTase), 228

I

imidazole structure, 284
imine, 284
indole, 284
induced fit, 83
diagram, 86
inducible, 49
information metabolism regulation, 52
inhibition
competitive, 113–114
noncompetitive, 113–114
product, 100–101
slope and intercept effects, 113–114
uncompetitive, 114
inhibitor
electron transport ad, 180–181
transition state analog, 91–92
inhibitors, 125, 138–139
initial velocity, 100
initiation factor, 58
inosine, 229
insertion mutagenesis, 75
instructions, 1–2
insulin, 195–196
integration of metabolism, 190–224
makes sense, 191
understanding, 191
integrators, 125, 137–138
diagram, 138
interactions in protein folding
bad, 17
good, 17
intercalating agents, 38
interorgan cycles, 220
intron, 53, 55
ionophore, 180
isoelectric point, 254
estimating, 254

K

KdaD, 244
kdcatD, 106
kdcatD/KdmD, 107
KdmD, 107
ketal structure, 284
ketone bodies, 223–224
metabolism, 223–224
synthesis, 223–224
utilization, 223–224
kidney's role in pH balance, 257
kinetics, 275–283
allosteric, 117
diagram, 105
enzyme, 95
sigmoid, 117
Krebs cycle. *see* TCA cycle, 153

L

labeled carbons and metabolism, 236–240
lactate
anaerobic glycolysis and, 145
Cori cycle and, 221
recycline to glucose by liver, 221
lagging strand, 42
leading strand, 42
library, 71
ligand, 20
ligand binding and thermodynamic cycles, 270
ligase, 72
Lineweaver-Burk plot, 111–112
lipids, 23
acidic, 23
neutral, 23

lipoic acid
  function, 286
  structure, 286
liver
  metabolic function, 212
  metabolic responses to signals, 212
lock and key, 83
  diagram, 84
logarithms, 245–248
London forces, 11
low energy signals, 198
lung's role in pH balance, 257

M

major groove in DNA, 37
malate-aspartate shuttle, 177
malic enzyme, 193
malonyl-CoA, 156
mechanisms of enzyme catalysis, 80–94
melting
  DNA, 37
  protein, 19
membrane potential, 29, 33
membrane proteins
  integral, 25–26
  peripheral, 25
membranes
  channels, 29–30
  composition, 23
  diffusion, 28
  fluidity, 27–29
  general function, 22–23
  membrane proteins and, 22–34
  movement of ions and molecules, 28–29
  structure, 25
  transport, 29–31
metabolic acidosis/alkalosis, 258
metabolic regulation secondary signals, 198
metabolic signals, 194
  for glucose, 198
metabolic states, 194
metabolism
  during feeding, 213–214
  generalities, 199
  integration, 190–224
  storage pools, 213
methenyl tetrahydrofolate, 235
methionine and one-carbon metabolism, 234–235
methylene tetrahydrofolate, 229, 235
7-methyl guanosine, 53, 55
methyl-malonyl-CoA, 171
methyl-malonyl-CoA mutase, 171
Michaelis-Menton equation, 103
  assumptions, 109–110
  derivation, 110–111
  diagram, 105
  transformation and graphs, 111
minor groove in DNA, 37
Monod-Wyman-Changeaux, 119
muscle
  metabolic responses to signals, 212
  metabolic role of, 212
mutagenesis, 72
  deletion, 75
  random, 75
  site-directed diagram, 72, 75, 77
mutations, temperature sensitive, 19

N

NADH and glycolysis, 145
NADPH
  in GSSG reduction, 184
  reduction, 184
negative cooperativity, 117
Nernst equation, 31
  example, 32–34
nicotinamide
  function, 285
  structure, 285
nonaligned recombination, 47
nonhomologous recombination, 47
nonreproductive binding, 85
  diagram, 87
Northern blot, 67
nucleoside phosphorylase, 231

O

oligomycin, 181

one-carbon metabolism, 233–235
  diagram, 234
operon, 53
organization, 1–5
  and entropy, 273
origin of replication, 42–43
origin, 43
ornithine, 226
orotate, 231
oxidation, 173
β oxidation, 164–172
  ATP yield, 166
  connections, 164
  diagram, 165
  equation, 167
  location, 164
  malonyl-CoA and, 164
  odd-chain-length fatty acids, 172
  reactions, 167–168
  regulation, 164
  unsaturated fatty acids, 168
oxidation states of carbon, 233
oxidation states of folic acid, 235
oxidative phosphorylation, 173–182. *see also* electron transport
  diagram, 175
  inhibitors, 180–181
  regulation, 178

P

palindrome, 64
pantothenate
  function, 285
  structure, 285
partial pressure, 256
pCO_2, 256
PCR, 76, 78
pentose phosphate pathway, 183–185
PFK-2, 203
pH, 246, 248
  imbalance, 257
  relation to buffer pK_a, 249
phenol pK_a, 243
phenyl group structure, 284
phosphate, 284
phosphatidic acid, 163
phosphodiesterase, 197
phosphodiesterases, 134
phosphodiester structure, 284
phosphofructokinase-1
  activation by fructose-1,6-bisphosphate, 198
  futile cycle and, 201
  glycolysis and, 142
phosphofructokinase-2, 203
phosphofructo-2-kinase
  effects of phosphorylation, 204
phosphogluconate pathway, 183–185
phospholipid bilayer, 24
phospholipids, 163
  structure, 23–24
  types, 23
phospholipid synthesis, 163
phosphomonoester structure, 284
phosphopantetheine, 159
phosphoric acid pK_a, 243
phosphorylase, 148
phosphorylase kinase, 148
phosphorylation
  diagram, 139
  effect on enzyme activities, 202
  metabolic regulation by, 196, 202
  remembering, 203–204
phosphotriester structure, 284
p*I,* 254
pitch, 38
pK_a, 244, 248
polar, 8
poly A tailing, 55
polylinker, 72
polymerase chain reaction, 76
  diagram, 78
polymorphism, 69
P/O ratios, 178
positive cooperativity, 117
posttranslational modification, 26
primary transcript, 53, 55
primase, 44
primer, 44
probe, 67
product inhibition, 100–101
product/reactant ratio, 262
promoter, 55–56

proofreading, 59
propionyl-CoA, 171
propionyl-CoA carboxylase, 172
protein
  binding, 20
  denaturation, 19
  folding, 16
  glucose ad energy storage in, 209
  interactions with ligands, 20
  metabolic movements, 209–210
  metabolic pathway, 209–210
  stability, 15, 18
  synthesis, 57, 59
protein kinase, 136–137, 196–197, 202
  cascade, 197
  metabolic role, 196–197
protein phosphatases, 197
protein synthesis, 57–59
  ATP requirement, 60
  free energy and, 269
  GTP requirement, 60
proton, 242
proton concentration and pH, 248
proton gradient, 180
pseudoknot, 38
purine degradation, 229
purine metabolism, 227–229
purine salvage, 228
  pathway, 229
purine synthesis
  pathway, 229
pyridoxal
  function, 285
  structure, 285
pyridoxal phosphate, 188
pyrimidine degradation, 232
pyrimidine salvage, 231
pyrimidine synthesis, 230–231
pyruvate
  carbon atoms from glucose in, 237
  conversion to malate and oxaloacetate, 193
  numbering, 236
pyruvate carboxylase, 193

R

Ras pathway
  diagram, 131
rate, 98
  definition, 275
rate constants, 102–103, 277
  mechanism related to, 283
rate law, 278
reaction coordinate diagram, 80–82, 277
receptors, 125–127
  acetyl choline, 133
  enzyme coupled, 128–130
  G protein coupled, 131–132
  ion-channel coupled, 132–133
  soluble intracellular, 127
  transmembrane, 128
reciprocal control of synthesis and degradation, 200
recombination, 47
reducing sugar, 151
reduction, 173
regulation
  information metabolism, 52
  integration of metabolism, 190–224
replication, 42
replication fork, 44
repressible, 49
repressor, 49
respiratory acidosis/alkalosis, 258
restriction enzymes, 62
  cleavage, 64
  ends, 64
  mapping, 63
  orientation, 65
  sequence, 63
restriction fragment-linked polymorphism (RFLP), 69
restriction fragments, joining, 66
restriction mapping, 48–49
RFLP, 69
riboflavin
  function, 286
  structure, 286
ribonucleotide reductase, 228
ribose synthesis, 184
ribsome, 58
RNA
  capping, 53, 55
  metabolism, 40

poly (A) tailing, 56–57
polymerase, 53, 55
primary transcript, 53, 55
secondary structure, 38
splicing, 53, 55
RNA polymerase, 53, 55
RNAse H, 44
rotenone, 181
R state, 119
RT-PCR, 77

S

saturation, 105–106
saturation kinetics, 103, 105–106
screening, 71
secondary metabolic signals, 198
secondary structure, 12
and hydrophobic interaction, 14
RNA, 38
stability, 13–14
second messengers, 125, 133–136
second-order reactions, 102, 280
diagram, 282
rate law, 280
selection, 71
sense strand, 41, 53, 55
sequencing DNA, 73
serine, 137
serine phosphorylation, 202
serine transhydroxymethylase, 234
serum pH, 257
SH2 domain, 130
SH3 domain, 130
β-sheet, 12
sigmoid kinetics, 117
signals, 125
common, 126
metabolic, 198
transduction pathways and, 125
signal transduction pathways, 123–140
common signals and pathways, 140
model, 123–124
organization, 124
single-strand binding protein, 43
site-directed mutagenesis, 72–73, 75, 77
solvation, 13
Southern blot, 67
specific activity, 97–100
specificity, 20
sphingomyelin, 24
splicing, 53, 55
alternative, 54
stability
DNA, 35, 37
energetics, 18
protein, 15
standard state, definition, 265
starvation, 194–195
diagram of metabolism, 218
metabolic movements, 217–218
metabolic signals in, 217
stoichiometry of acid-base reactions, 245
storage molecules, 191, 193, 213
strain and distortion, 88–89
stringency, 67
structure
amino acids, 6–7
DNA, 35
protein, 6–21
protein, secondary, 12
studying, 2
succinate, 239–240
symmetry of, 240
succinate dehydrogenase and labeled carbons, 212–213
sulfide structure, 284
supercoiling, 44
surface area, 11
synthase definition, 159
synthetase definition, 159

T

TATA box, 56
TCA cycle
acetyl-CoA entry, 153
ATP from, 153
connections, 153
diagram, 154
equations, 153
function, 153
location, 153
pyruvate and, 153

TCA cycle *(Continued)*
regulation, 153
tracking carbon atoms, 238
telomere, 44
termination factor, 58
tetrahydrofolate, 235
thermodynamic box, 271–272
thermodynamic cycles, 269–270
thermodynamics, 261–283
thiamin
function, 286
HMP pathway and, 184–185
structure, 286
thiol
pK_a, 243
structure, 284
thiol ester, 284
thioredoxin, 228–229
threonine, 137
threonine phosphorylation, 202
thymidylate synthase, 229
time, not wasting, 4–5
tissue cooperation, 211
titration
amino acids, 253
curve of acetic acid, 251–252
example, 251
stoichiometry, 245–247
topoisomerase, 44
tracking carbon atoms through metabolism, 236–240
transaldolase, 184
transamination, 188
in alanine cycle, 222–223
transcript, primary, 53
transcription, 53, 55
activation of, 127
transcription factor, 55–56
transducers, 125
transition state, 81–82, 279
stabilization, 88–89
theory, 276
transition state analog, 91–92
transketolase, 184
translation, 57–59
tricarboxylic acid cycle, 154
triglycerides and adipose, 163
triglyceride synthesis, 163
triose phosphate isomerase, 236–237
trivia, 2–5
tRNA, 57, 59
T state, 119
β-turn, 12

U

UDP glucose, 149, 152
uncouplers, 179–180
ATP synthesis and, 179–180
units of enzyme activity, 97
urea, 226
urea cycle, 225–226
diagram, 226
function, 226
uric acid, 229

V

valinomycin, 180
van der Waals interactions, 11
vector, 71–72
velocity, 98
change in, 101
definition of, 275
diagram, 99
vitamin A
function, 286
structure, 286
vitamin B_6, 188
in one-carbon metabolism, 234
vitamin B_{12}, 172
vitamin C structure, 285
vitamin E structure, 286
vitamin K structure, 286
vitamin structures, 285–286
V_{max}, 106
diagram, 105

W

water, 9
pK_a, 243

weak acid, 243–244
Western blot, 67
wobble hypothesis, 59

X

xanthine, 229

Z

zero-order reactions, 103, 281–282